点金训练

教师用书

英语

《点金训练》编写组　编

必修　第二册

配外研版

四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Food for thought

○单元概览 …… 1

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 3

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 7

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 12

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 18

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 24

Part 2 读后续写 …… 25

Unit 2 Let's celebrate!

○单元概览 …… 35

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 37

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 40

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 45

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 50

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 56

Part 2 读后续写 …… 57

Unit 3 On the move

○单元概览 …… 66

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 68

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 70

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 75

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 80

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 87

Part 2 读后续写 …… 88

Unit 4 Stage and screen

○单元概览 …… 105

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 107

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 110

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 115

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 120

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 127

Part 2 读后续写 …… 128

Unit 5 On the road

○单元概览 …… 139

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 141

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 144

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 148

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 153

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 158

Part 2 读后续写 …… 159

Unit 6 Earth first

○单元概览 …… 168

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 170

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 173

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 177

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 183

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 190

Part 2 读后续写 …… 191

Unit 1 Food for thought

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Society", whose topic is about eating cultures and healthy eating habits. This unit starts with the introduction of typical foods from different countries, and then you will read "A Child of Two Cuisines" to learn about an eating story of a Sino-British transnational family. You also have the chance to read "Cold Truths" to understand how different lifestyles can affect people's diet. You will listen to a conversation about persuading others to choose healthy food and write a recipe for your favourite dish. Through this unit, you are expected to know different eating cultures, think deeply about the relationship between healthy eating and lifestyles, and finally improve your own healthy eating habits.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"食物"主题相关的单词和词组。
		语法	能恰当地运用情态动词。
		语篇	能读懂网络点评等语篇并了解其结构特征及语言特点。
		语用	能正确使用情态动词给他人提建议。
	语言技能	听	听两个好友关于点餐的对话，探讨不健康的饮食会给人带来什么危害，并能用恰当的表达劝告朋友做到健康饮食。
		说	1. 能用自己的语言恰当表达食物的色、香、味等特征； 2. 能根据语境的需要，简要描述不同国家的餐桌礼仪； 3. 能就健康饮食给他人提出合理的建议。
		读	1. 阅读"A Child of Two Cuisines"，了解中英两国的代表性食物及不同的饮食习惯和文化； 2. 阅读"Cold Truths"，了解不同职业的不同饮食习惯，并对这些习惯进行评价，形成健康的饮食观念。
		写	能运用所学知识介绍中国的美食。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	1. 能读懂语篇内容，听懂并谈论与饮食相关的话题； 2. 能使用新学习的语言点描述健康的与不健康的饮食习惯； 3. 能恰当使用情态动词对他人的饮食提出合理的建议。
文化意识	1. 了解中外不同的饮食习惯和餐桌礼仪，丰富对饮食文化的认知； 2. 明确不健康的饮食习惯会给人带来的危害，形成健康的饮食观念。
思维品质	1. 能遵守餐桌礼仪，了解不同国家的餐桌礼仪； 2. 能正确看待不同国家的不同饮食习惯，尊重差异，开阔国际视野； 3. 能分辨健康的和不健康的饮食习惯，对不健康的饮食方式提出合理的建议，选择健康的食物，增强健康饮食的意识。

必备知识

必背单词	maple，pudding，snack，marriage，wedding，sort，super，butter，typical，suffer，horrible，gather，bite，poison，china，symbol，opinion，function，download，diet，addict，tip，custom，plate，slightly，recommend，attack，yoghurt，within，belong，honey，satisfying，convenient，identify，blog，originally，official，resist，adapt，handle，manners，construction
重点表达	take to，suffer from，come across，remind... of，feel at home，had better，put... to the test，in case，belong to，end up，catch up，bring up，pick up，more or less
重点知识	1. ever since 引导时间状语从句 2. each time 引导时间状语从句 3. too... to... 4. “否定词＋比较级”表示最高级含义
单元语法	情态动词(1)
单元写作	食品介绍类文章

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of this text by skimming.

2. Find out the family's opinions on different kinds of food by scanning.

3. Develop a cross-cultural attitude to different food cultures.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. maple *n*. 枫树,槭树

2. pudding *n*. 布丁

3. butter *n*. 黄油,牛油

4. marriage *n*. 婚姻

5. wedding *n*. 婚礼

6. super *adj*. 极好的,了不起的

7. horrible *adj*. 糟糕的

8. china *n*. 瓷,瓷料

9. sort *n*. 种,类

10. typical *adj*. 典型的,有代表性的

11. symbol *n*. 象征,标志

12. opinion *n*. 意见,看法

13. gather *v*. 聚集

14. suffer from 遭受;因……而蒙受损害

15. remind... of... 使……想起……

16. come across 偶遇;偶然发现;被理解

(二)阅读词汇

1. dare *modal verb* 胆敢,敢于

2. sausage *n*. 香肠

3. butcher *n*. 肉贩

4. poison *n*. 毒素,毒物,毒药

5. cuisine *n*. 烹饪(法)

6. toast *n*. 烤面包(片),吐司

7. cheese *n*. 干酪,奶酪

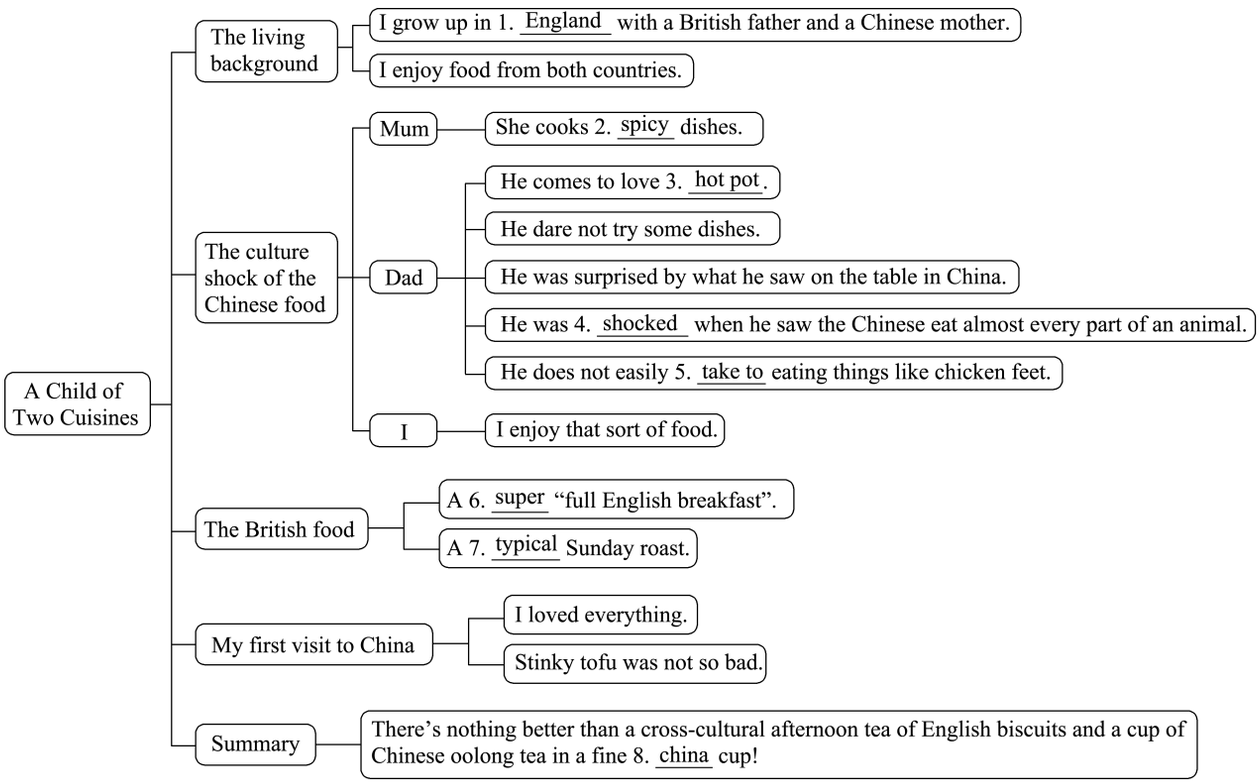
8. take to doing sth. 养成做某事的习惯

9. feel at home 舒适自在,不拘束

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What does "this" mean in the sentence "Thanks to this, Dad has come to love hot pot!" in Paragraph 2?
   A. Mum is a Chinese.
   B. Mum often cooks spicy dishes.
   C. Mum loves Dad.
   D. Mum loves hot pot, too.
2. What shocked the author's father when he first visited his parents-in-law?
   A. The wedding celebration.
   B. The spoken language.
   C. The Chinese tea.
   D. The Chinese food.
3. How did the butcher feel when the author went to buy pigs' ears?
   A. Unbelievable.
   B. Satisfied.
   C. Happy.
   D. Frightened.
4. What's the author's attitude towards food from the two cultures?
   A. He prefers to eat British food rather than Chinese food.
   B. He agrees with the proverb "One man's meat is another man's poison."
   C. He feels at home with food from the two cultures.
   D. He has taken to eating Chinese food.

答案：1～4 BDAC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries ever since I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!
   [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。I've enjoyed food from both countries 是主句；ever since...是时间状语从句，Growing up 是现在分词短语作状语。
   [尝试翻译]我在英国长大，爸爸是英国人，妈妈是中国人，从我能拿刀叉还有筷子开始，我就一直在享受这两个国家的食物！

2. He once told me he was surprised by what he saw on the table when he first visited my mother's parents in China.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。主句是 He once told me... on the table。在主句中，he was surprised by what he saw on the table 是宾语从句；在该从句中，又含有从句 what he saw on the table，作介词 by 的宾语；when he... China 是时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]他曾经告诉我，当他第一次去中国拜访我妈妈的父母时，他对餐桌上摆放的食物感到惊讶不已。

3. We all love roast beef and vegetables, but Mum says we'd better not eat too much roast food as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies, according to traditional Chinese medicine.

[句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句，but 前是简单句，其后是复合句。we'd better not eat too much roast food 为省略了 that 的宾语从句，as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies 是 as 引导的原因状语从句，according to traditional Chinese medicine 为介词短语作状语。

[尝试翻译]我们都喜欢烤牛肉和蔬菜，但是妈妈说我们最好不要吃太多的烤制食物，因为根据传统中医学的说法，这可能会使我们的身体遭受内热之苦。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What did the butcher mean by saying "just these ordinary ones"?

He thought the author was joking.

2. What food from other regions in China impressed you most? Please introduce it briefly.

略

Unit 1 课后素养评价（一）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Food can tell us much about society, history, and even our dreams. What is considered luxury (奢侈的) food changes over time. Let's find out how foods become popular and then go out of style.

History shows many foods' status (地位) has changed. In 18th-century Europe, pineapples were uncommon and expensive, grown in heated glasshouses. They were used at parties to show off wealth, not for eating. However, once steamships could transport them, they became common and lost their luxury status. Similarly, oysters were once a cheap food for the poor in the 18th and 19th centuries. But overfishing and pollution made them hard to find, increasing their value and turning them into a symbol of fine dining.

Some items like sugar, tea, coffee, and cocoa were once expensive gifts only the rich could afford. Europeans' desire for them led to control over foreign lands and the use of enslaved labour. As production grew, costs dropped, making them everyday items for everyone, though they still appear in luxury gift sets.

The story of lobster (龙虾) is also surprising. It was so common on the US East Coast that it was fed to prisoners. Railway companies started serving canned lobster to passengers, who turned out to enjoy it. This new demand made lobster a luxury item in restaurants.

Several factors make a food luxurious. Scarcity is key—if a food is hard to get, like the historical pineapple, it becomes more valuable. High cost, often due to skilled labour, also makes food limited, like Japanese Wagyu beef. Marketing plays a big role too. If famous people or social media advertise a food, it can quickly become a must-have item, even if it's not rare.

Looking ahead, climate change may make some foods luxurious again. Chocolate and coffee are becoming harder to grow, which may make them expensive in the future. A new idea of sustainable (可持续的) luxury is also appearing. People want food that is not only special but also good for the earth, so they care about how food is produced. The true luxury isn't just about how expensive or uncommon something is.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了龙虾等食物是如何从普通变得昂贵的。

1. Why were pineapples luxurious in the past?

A. Because they were easy to cook.

B. Because they were difficult to get.

C. Because they were good for health.
D. Because they were transported by steamships.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“In 18th-century Europe, pineapples were uncommon and expensive, grown in heated glasshouses. They were used at parties to show off wealth, not for eating. However, once steamships could transport them, they became common and lost their luxury status.”可知，过去菠萝之所以奢侈是因为它们难以获取。故选B。

2. What can be inferred from the lobster's story in Paragraph 4?
A. A food's status can rise with short supply.
B. A food's status can rise with increased demand.
C. A food's status can drop with lower production cost.
D. A food's status can change with new ways to market.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知，龙虾从一种给犯人吃的普通食物变成餐厅里的奢侈食品，其地位提升的直接驱动力是乘客喜爱所引发的新需求。由此可推断，一种食物的地位可以随着需求的增加而上升。故选B。

3. What does the last paragraph suggest?
A. Luxury foods will become cheaper.
B. People no longer care about the cost of food.
C. Sustainable luxury will become popular.
D. Climate change may have little effect on food prices.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“A new idea of sustainable (可持续的) luxury is also appearing. People want food that is not only special but also good for the earth, so they care about how food is produced.”可知，可持续的奢侈食品将会受到大众青睐。故选C。

4. Which can be a suitable title for the passage?
A. Climate Change Turns Some Foods Luxurious
B. From Prison to Palace: The Path of Luxury Foods
C. Modern Technology Makes Many Luxuries Affordable
D. From Common to Costly: Why Certain Foods Become Luxurious

D 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“What is considered luxury (奢侈的) food changes over time. Let's find out how foods become popular and then go out of style.”以及全文对多种食物从普通到昂贵的转变原因分析可知，文章的核心是说明部分食物为何会变得奢侈。选项D“从普通到昂贵：某些食物为何会变得奢侈”最全面、准确地概括了这一主题。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Usually, healthy diets and a healthy lifestyle fill you with fear because you imagine a simple green salad for lunch and countless hours of doing sports. **1** Here are some advantages of healthy eating.

* You'll feel alive and have more energy.

Healthy eating isn't just about keeping your body healthy, but also about allowing your body to turn what you eat into energy. **2** They can keep you full for longer, and turn you into an energetic person ready to take on the world, or at least go dancing once in a while!

* **3**

When you start eating healthy food, your body learns to act. This keeps you away from seasonal colds, and even if you catch a flu by accident, it won't cause as much harm, and you'll overcome it more easily.

* A happier mood becomes your everyday mood.

4 Sugar levels can lift or lower your mood, but proper blood sugar keeps you balanced. If you don't take in enough nutrition (营养), you will feel unhappy, so healthier food choices will make sure that your body and brain run well.

* The skin will regrow faster, and you'll look younger.

Unluckily, your skin really does show what you eat, drink, or smoke. Being the largest part of your body, your skin is possibly most influenced by your poor food choices. **5**

A. You will never be ill.
B. Illnesses and colds are a thing of the past.
C. The longer you keep your body healthy, the longer you will live.
D. But a healthy diet will make you look younger than you really are.
E. Proper nutrition means that your body has enough energy to go every day.
F. Adding vegetables and whole foods to your meals will increase your energy levels.
G. But you will change your opinions by learning what good proper meals and exercise do to you.

答案：1～5 GFBED

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Learn more words and expressions about feelings and opinions.
2. Learn and use some key words and expressions.
3. Master and use some important sentence structures.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It's not a good idea to miss meals or replace them with **snacks**. 小吃，点心
2. All the brides look beautiful on their **wedding** days. 婚礼
3. There are so many different **sorts** of mushrooms available these days. 种，类
4. Some people use "**super**" to mean "very nice or very good". 极好的，了不起的
5. In the evenings, we **gathered** around the fireplace and talked. 聚集
6. She took a couple of **bites** of the sandwich. (咬下的)一口
7. The rose is regarded as a **symbol** of love in both China and some Western countries. 象征，标志
8. The media play a major role in influencing people's **opinions**. 意见，看法

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
marriage *n*. 婚姻	marry *v*. 结婚；娶；嫁
	married *adj*. 已婚的
suffer *v*. (身体或精神上) 受苦	suffering *n*. (肉体或精神上的)痛苦，苦难，折磨
	sufferer *n*. 患者；受苦者
horrible *adj*. 糟糕的	horribly *adv*. 糟糕地
poison *n*. 毒素，毒物，毒药	poisonous *adj*. 有毒的
typical *adj*. 典型的，有代表性的	typically *adv*. 典型地，具有代表性地

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. come across 偶遇；偶然发现；被理解
2. remind... of ... 使……想起……
3. grow up 成长；长大
4. thanks to 多亏；由于
5. take to 喜欢上，对……产生好感；养成……的习惯
6. suffer from 遭受；因……而蒙受损害
7. according to 根据

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：现在分词短语作状语
   Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries ever since I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!
   我在英国长大，爸爸是英国人，妈妈是中国人，从我能拿刀叉还有筷子开始，我就一直在享受这两个国家的食物！
2. 句型公式：what 引导宾语从句
   He once told me he was surprised by what he saw on the table when he first visited my mother's parents in China.
   他曾经告诉我，当他第一次去中国拜访我妈妈的父母时，他对餐桌上摆放的食物感到惊讶不已。
3. 句型公式：must have done
   He must have thought I was joking.
   他一定以为我在开玩笑。
4. 句型公式："否定词＋比较级"表示最高级
   To me, there's nothing better than a cross-cultural afternoon tea of English biscuits and a cup of Chinese oolong tea in a fine china cup!
   对我来说，没有什么比由英式饼干和用精致瓷杯沏的中国乌龙茶组成的这种跨文化的下午茶更好的了！

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. marriage *n*. 婚姻

[教材原文]But there are still some dishes that Dad dare not try even after many years of **marriage** to my mother.

但是,尽管已经和妈妈结婚好多年了,爸爸还是不敢尝试一些菜。

[归纳拓展]

(1)marriage to sb. 与某人的婚姻

(2)marry *v*. 结婚;娶;嫁

(3)married *adj*. 已婚的

be married to 与……结婚(表状态)

get married to 与……结婚(表动作)

名师点拨

marry是及物动词,表示“与某人结婚”直接说marry sb.,不用在其后加介词with。但形容词married后可加to sb.,表示“与某人结婚”。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Her father will never approve of her marriage to Tom.

②They plan to get married (marry) in summer.

③The old couple have been married (marry) for 40 years and never have they quarrelled with each other.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信)我们计划为祖父母举办一个聚会,**庆祝他们结婚五十周年**。

We are planning to hold a party for our grandparents to celebrate their fiftieth anniversary of marriage.

2. take to 喜欢上,对……产生好感;养成……的习惯

[教材原文]Even today, he still does not easily **take to** eating things like chicken feet.

直到今天,他还是很难喜欢上吃鸡爪之类的东西。

[归纳拓展]

take off 脱下(衣服等);起飞

take down 拿下,取下;拆卸;记下

take back 退回;同意收回(退货);收回(说过的话);使……回忆起

take on 承担,从事;呈现;雇用

take up 开始从事;占用(时间或空间)

take apart 拆开

take in 吸收;领会,理解;接收,收留;欺骗

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2023·新课标Ⅱ卷)I once took up a challenge to create a painting every day for a month and post the works online.

②The lecturer had the feeling that a good deal of what he said had not been taken in by the students.

③(2025·浙江1月卷)As new technologies take on increasingly humanlike qualities, there's been a push to make them genderless.

④It took me a while to take to the new job, but now I'm enjoying it.

⑤The price of fashion has led to the rise of a new way of dressing, and it's beginning to take off in Australia, too.

(2)写作微练

(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷读后续写之动作描写)我拿出笔记本,问冈特的电话号码,**赶紧把它记了下来**,承诺我会给他回电话的。

I took out my notebook, asked Gunter's number and took it down hurriedly, promising I would call him back.

3. come across 偶遇;偶然发现;被理解

[教材原文]... I **came across** stinky tofu, a horrible grey thing that looked and smelt like a burnt sports shoe.

……我遇到了臭豆腐,一种可怕的灰色食物,样子和气味就像是烧焦的运动鞋。

[归纳拓展]

come about (=happen) 发生

come out (太阳、月亮等)出现;开花;出版,发表

come up (困难或问题)出现;被提出;长出地面;破土而出

come up with 找到或提出(答案、办法等)

when it comes to... 当谈到……时

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① There's no value in delivering any kind of communication if the message doesn't come across clearly.

②He has just finished writing his book and it will come out next month.

③The police have been looking into how the plane crash came about.

④(2025·全国二卷)Who came up with the idea of going rock climbing?

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之感谢信)我写信是为了表达我对你的衷心感谢,因为**每当我遇到困难时**,你总是帮助我。

I'm writing to express my heartfelt gratitude to you because you always help me whenever I come across difficulties.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)**说到环境保护**,植树也成为使我们的家乡变得更加干净的一个重要手段。

When it comes to environmental protection, planting trees has also become an important means by which our hometown becomes much cleaner.

4. ever since 引导时间状语从句

[**教材原文**]Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries **ever since** I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

我在英国长大,爸爸是英国人,妈妈是中国人,从我能拿刀叉还有筷子开始,我就一直在享受这两个国家的食物!

[**句式分析**]本句中的 ever since 意为"自从,自……以来",引导时间状语从句。

[**归纳拓展**]

(ever) since 意为"自从,自……以来",其后可以跟短语或从句;从句的时态常用一般过去时,主句的时态常用现在完成时或现在完成进行时。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① Ever since childhood, my sister and I have dreamed (dream) about taking a great bike trip.

②(2025·全国二卷改编)Since I bought(buy) a smartphone for Julia last summer, the phone has become an extension of her arm.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之通知)上周五我们开了一次班会,会上老师告诉我们一个消息,一个以"劳动最光荣"为主题的活动将会举行,从那以后我们都**情绪高涨**。

Last Friday we had a class meeting where our teacher told us the news that an activity with the theme of "Labor is the most glorious" would be held and we all have been in high spirits ever since.

②(读后续写之心理描写)**自从我和他失去联系**,我就一直面临着一种深深的失落感。

Ever since I lost contact with him, I have been faced with a deep sense of loss.

多义词汇 专练

1. take to A. 养成……的习惯 B. 喜欢上

① More and more students **take to** the new teaching method of the English teacher. B

②The writer had **taken to** jogging in the early morning before he became famous. A

2. There are two parks less than 10 minutes' walk from home where neighbourhood children **gather** to play. A

A. *v*. 聚集 B. *v*. 采集 C. *v*. 收拢,归拢

Unit 1 课后素养评价(二)

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. It's typical of our maths teacher to be very patient with us. Never have I seen her get angry with us.

2. Mary came into the house nervously, not daring (dare) to lift her head.

3. Thanks to your help, we accomplished the task ahead of schedule.

4. He is one of my old schoolmates, who I came acrossthe other day in the street.

5. They have taken to wandering (wander) through the streets arm in arm.

6. Nothing is more valuable (valuable) than time, but nothing is less valued.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

deal with; sort of; suffer from; feel at home; take to; make an impression on; come across; remind... of...

1. If you suffer from serious sleep problems, go to your doctor, who will help treat the problems.

2. He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.
3. Watching antelopes move slowly across the green grass, I'm attracted by the lovely animals. I'm also reminded of the danger they are in.
4. By the end of the year she was beginning to feel at home in her new school.
5. The writer has taken to getting up at 6 and going jogging ever since he was in university.
6. Although she had only met the old man once, his manners made an impression on her.
7. Learning to resolve conflicts can help students deal with friends, teachers, and parents.
8. To tell the truth, I sort of like this writer's new novel.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 生活在数字时代，我们理应好好利用网络。（现在分词短语作状语）
Living in a digital age, we are supposed to make good use of the Internet.
2. 从小时候起，我就一直保持着阅读的好习惯。（ever since 引导时间状语从句）
I have kept the good habit of reading ever since I was a child.
3. 我想强调的是日常生活中团队合作的重要性。（what 引导主语从句）
What I want to stress is the importance of teamwork in our daily life.
4. 你一定是付出了巨大努力才取得这么好的成绩的。（情态动词＋have done）
You must have made great efforts to achieve such an excellent result.
5. 面对困难时，没有什么比保持积极的心态更重要。（用比较级表示最高级含义）
Nothing is more important than keeping a positive attitude when facing difficulties.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

You can imagine how novel we found it when my school began offering cooking as part of the curriculum (课程). As a growing boy, I seemed to be __1__ all day long. And the good news was that we could __2__ what we cooked. I immediately signed up.

At the beginning of the first class, I __3__ slowly with a classic, boiled egg alone. To a teenage boy, the boiled egg might seem like a no-brainer. I was feeling __4__ and excited.

Then the class was divided into teams to __5__ the complex and challenging dish—Robed Stuffed Hot Dogs. The __6__ proceeded satisfactorily. Even the baking seemed to progress as __7__. But my team ran into __8__ when we turned on the broiler (烤炉) to brown our hot dogs. It really wasn't our __9__. The members of another group were busy __10__ their hot dogs out from the oven and placing them on the table to cool. They __11__ good, making our mouths water. We gathered closely together around those tasty hot dogs, and we were all __12__ until a cloud of black smoke rising from our oven suddenly __13__ our masterpieces.

All our previous efforts were wasted. __14__, we were regarded as that day's heroes. The sense of __15__ that came from creating a dish promoted a positive relationship with food and willingness to try new things.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者参加学校开设的烹饪课，课上他和小组成员一起制作热狗；起初一切顺利，但由于他们的疏忽，热狗烤焦了。虽然没能成功完成这道菜，但作者仍感谢烹饪带来的兴奋感。

1. A. proud　　B. sleepy
C. hungry　　D. greedy
C　根据下文的“And the good news was that we could __2__ what we cooked. I immediately signed up.”可知，得知“我们”可以吃“我们”做的菜，“我”立刻报名了。由此可知，“我”整天都很饿。想吃东西。故选C。

2. A. display　　B. exchange
C. market　　D. have
D　根据上文的“As a growing boy, I seemed to be __1__ all day long.”可知，作为一个成长中的男孩，“我”似乎整天都很饿。由此可知，“我”报名的原因是“我”可以吃“我”做的菜，缓解“我”的饥饿。故选D。

3. A. took off　　B. started off
C. called off　　D. put off

B 根据上文的“At the beginning of the first class”可知,“我”刚开始上烹饪课。由此可知,“我”开始独自做煮鸡蛋。故选B。

4. A. nervous B. confident
C. bored D. relaxed

B 根据上文的“To a teenage boy, the boiled egg might seem like a no-brainer.”可知,“我”认为煮鸡蛋是一件轻而易举的事。由此可知,“我”对此很有信心。故选B。

5. A. recommend B. appreciate
C. evaluate D. make

D 根据上文的“You can imagine how novel we found it when my school began offering cooking as part of the curriculum (课程).”可知,“我”参加的是烹饪课。由此可知,“我们”要制作复杂而富有挑战性的菜肴。故选D。

6. A. preparation B. cooking
C. competition D. course

A 根据下文的“Even the baking seemed to progress as 7 .”可知,句中描述的是烹饪过程。由此可知,先进行的是准备工作,即准备工作进展顺利。故选A。

7. A. involved B. intended
C. limited D. pictured

B 根据上文的“The 6 proceeded satisfactorily.”可知,烹饪准备过程进展顺利。由此可知,烘焙工作也按预期进行。故选B。

8. A. trouble B. pressure
C. confusion D. disagreement

A 根据下文的“until a cloud of black smoke rising from our oven suddenly 13 our masterpieces”可知,“我们”把热狗烤焦了。由此可知,“我”的团队遇到了麻烦。故选A。

9. A. dish B. task
C. fault D. cooker

C 根据下文的“until a cloud of black smoke rising from our oven suddenly 13 our masterpieces”可知,“我们”把热狗烤焦了。由此可知,“我”想说那真的不是“我们”的错。故选C。

10. A. pulling B. giving
C. putting D. working

A 根据下文的“placing them on the table to cool”可知,应该先把热狗从烤箱里拿出来,再放在桌子上冷却。pull... out from...意为“把……从……中拿出来”。故选A。

11. A. tasted B. felt
C. sounded D. smelled

D 根据下文的“making our mouths water”可知,“我们”流口水的原因是刚烤好的热狗闻起来很香。故选D。

12. A. taken B. cheated
C. perfected D. refused

A 根据上文的“They 11 good, making our mouths water.”可知,香气扑鼻的热狗让“我们”流口水。由此可知,“我们”都被吸引了。故选A。

13. A. defended B. ended
C. beaten D. saved

B 根据上文的“until a cloud of black smoke rising from our oven suddenly”可知,“我们”的热狗烤焦了。由此可知,一团黑烟结束了“我们”的杰作。故选B。

14. A. Moreover B. Therefore
C. Otherwise D. Still

D 根据上文的“All our previous efforts were wasted.”和下文的“we were regarded as that day's heroes”可知,虽然“我们”的努力都白费了,但“我们”仍然被视为那一天的英雄。故选D。

15. A. curiosity B. security
C. excitement D. responsibility

C 根据上文的“I was feeling 4 and excited.”可知,制作菜肴让“我”感到兴奋。由此可知,创造一道菜所带来的兴奋感让“我”与食物之间的关系变得更积极,也让“我”更愿意去尝试新事物。故选C。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Learn and use some key words and expressions.
2. Summarise the basic usage of *be able to do*, *dare*, *have to*, *had better* and *need*.
3. Use the words above to complete the tips for good table manners.
4. Know how to comment on food and how to eat healthily.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. As we all know, the **function** of the heart is to pump blood through the body. 功能;作用
2. Fresh fruit and vegetables are a very important part of our **diet**. 日常饮食
3. It is bad **manners** to talk with your mouth full. 礼貌,礼仪
4. The website gives new graduates **tips** on applying for jobs. 建议
5. The general massed (集结) his troops for a final **attack**. 攻击
6. The photos can be **downloaded** for free from our website. 下载
7. **Within** these old walls there was once a town. 在……里

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
related *adj*. 有关系的,相关的	relate *v*. 有关联;把……联系起来
addict *n*. 对……着迷的人	addicted *adj*. 上瘾的
	addiction *n*. 瘾;入迷
custom *n*. 风俗,习惯,传统	accustom *v*. 使习惯于,使适应
	accustomed *adj*. 习惯的
differ *v*. 不同,不一样,有区别	different *adj*. 不同的;个别的
	difference *n*. 差异,不同
slightly *adv*. 略微,稍微	slight *adj*. 轻微的,细小的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
incredibly *adv*. 极端地,非常地	incredible *adj*. 不能相信的,难以置信的
	credible *adj*. 可靠的,可信的
recommend *v*. 推荐	recommendation *n*. 推荐;建议

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. had better 最好
2. sort of 有几分;近似;有那么点儿
3. pick up 拿起,捡起
4. in case 以防万一
5. in different situations 在不同情况下
6. stay/keep healthy 保持健康
7. pay for 为……付款

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:until 引导时间状语从句
   You have to wait until everyone else has been served before you start eating.
   你必须等到所有人的食物上齐了才可以开始吃。
2. 句型公式:in case 引导条件状语从句
   Sometimes there are so many knives and forks that you dare not pick them up in case you get it wrong.
   有时有那么多的刀叉,以至于你不敢拿起来,以防弄错了。
3. 句型公式:each time 引导时间状语从句
   The sugar in soft drinks forms acid and attacks our teeth for about 20 minutes each time we drink them.
   软饮料中的糖会形成酸,每次我们喝它的时候,它们就会侵蚀我们的牙齿大约 20 分钟。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. addict *n*. 对……着迷的人;吸毒成瘾的人;瘾君子

[教材原文]So, if you're a sugar **addict** and aren't able to say no to chocolate or cola, you had better download it now!

因此,如果你是个对糖有瘾的人,而且不能拒绝巧克力或可乐,你最好现在就下载它!

[归纳拓展]

(1)a TV addict 电视迷

(2)addicted *adj*. 上瘾的

be/get/become addicted to (doing) sth. 对(做)某事入迷/上瘾

(3)addictive *adj*. 使人上瘾的,使人入迷的

(4)addiction *n*. 瘾;入迷

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Young people addicted (addict) to the Internet can go to the doctor to ask for some advice.

②I find jogging very addictive (addict).

③(2025·浙江1月卷改编)Manuela Ribeiro has a healthy addiction (addict) which is cooking.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之求助信)**我对电子产品如此上瘾,以致**出现了一系列健康问题。

So addicted to electronic products am I that a series of health problems are arising.(用过去分词短语作状语)

2. in case 以防万一

[教材原文]Sometimes there are so many knives and forks that you dare not pick them up **in case** you get it wrong.

有时有那么多的刀叉,以至于你不敢拿起来,以防弄错了。

[归纳拓展]

in any case 无论如何,不管怎样

in case of 万一,如果;防备

in no case 无论如何不(置于句首,句子用倒装语序)

in this/that case 在这/那种情况下;既然这样/那样

as is often the case 通常就是这样

名师点拨

(1)in case 可用作副词,也可用作连词,引导从句。

(2)case 常作定语从句的先行词,后面跟 where 引导的定语从句,表示抽象意义的地点。

Have you ever had such a **case where** you are vague about a person's name?

你有没有记不清楚别人名字的情况呢?

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①We'll discuss a case where the shortage of water is a serious problem due to population growth and water pollution.

② As is often the case, being addicted to electronic products makes it hard for you to concentrate on study.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之活动报道)在讲座中,消防员向我们展示了**万一发生火灾时**应该做什么,如何预防火灾,以及如何使用不同种类的消防设备。

In the lecture, the firefighter showed us what to do in case of a fire, how to prevent the fire and how to use different kinds of firefighting equipment.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)**在任何情况下我们都不应该违背自然规律**,否则我们会遭受很多痛苦。

In no case should we go against the law of nature, or we'll suffer a lot.(倒装句)

多义词汇 专练

1. tip: A. *n*. 小费 B. *n*. 提示 C. *n*. 尖端 D. *v*. 付小费 E. *v*. (使)倾斜

①Sorry, your name is just on the **tip** of my tongue. C

②The wage for the cleaner position ranges from $10 to $12 per hour plus **tips**. A

③The boat **tipped** to one side. E

④She **tipped** the waiter two dollars for his excellent service. D

⑤(2025·浙江1月卷)Here are some **tips** worth following in order to communicate more effectively. B

2. handle: A. *n*. 柄,把手 B. *v*. 处理 C. *v*. 拿

①Consider turning your travel plan over to a travel agent and letting him double-check all the details, make suggestions, and then **handle** the actual reservations. B

②The way you **handle** chopsticks is important to avoid annoying your companions. C

③She presses the button, pulls the **handle** and the door pops open. A

3. (2024·新课标Ⅰ卷)After Charlie had a heart **attack**, Tindale says, she was prepared to put him to sleep... A

A. *n*. 发作,侵袭 B. *n*. 攻击;袭击

C. *n*. 抨击,非难 D. *n*. (情感的)一阵突发

语法研习课

情态动词（1）

语法感知

①... I **was able to** hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

②But there are still some dishes that Dad **dare not** try even after many years of marriage to my mother.

③... Mum and I just **have to** find a way to get him into the kitchen!

④... we**'d better not** eat too much roast food as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies, ...

⑤"You **needn't** try it if you don't want to," Mum said, ...

1. 情态动词的基本特征是有一定的词义，不能单独作谓语，需和实义动词或系动词一起作谓语。情态动词后接动词原形。
2. 情态动词一般无人称和数的变化，个别情态动词有现在时和过去时两种时态变化。
3. 构成否定句时，not 放在情态动词后面。如句②④⑤。

语法精讲

一、概念理解

1. 情态动词有一定的词义，不能单独作谓语，需和实义动词或系动词一起作谓语。

   She **can** speak English though she is six.

   尽管她才 6 岁，但她会说英语。

2. 情态动词一般无人称和数的变化，个别情态动词有现在时和过去时两种时态变化。

   I **couldn't** get the tickets after all; they were sold out.

   我最终还是没能拿到票；票全部卖完了。

3. 构成否定句时，not 放在情态动词后面。

   The young man **can't** carry the big stone.

   这个年轻人搬不动那块大石头。

4. 情态动词后接动词原形。

   I'll see what I **can do** to help.

   我看看我能帮上什么忙。

二、部分情态动词的用法

1. can，could

(1)意为"能，会"，指拥有做某事的能力、机会、时间等。其中，can 表示现在的能力，could 表示过去的能力。

By the time she was five, she **could** read English.

她五岁时就能读英文了。

You never know what you **can** do till you try.

除非你亲自尝试一下，否则你永远不知道自己能做什么。

(2)表示请求、许可。在疑问句中，could 可以代替 can，此时 could 不是过去式，使用 could 可以使语气更委婉。

—**Can/Could** I speak to your manager?

—Yes, you **can.**/No, you **can't.**

——我能跟你们经理说话吗？

——是的，可以。/不，不可以。

(3)表示惊讶、怀疑等，常用于否定句和疑问句。

How **can** you be so careless!

你怎么会这么粗心！

You **can't** be serious!

你一定是在开玩笑！

2. need

(1)作情态动词

need 作情态动词时，其后跟动词原形，意为"需要，有必要"，无人称和数的变化，多用于疑问句、否定句或条件句中。其否定形式是在其后直接加 not，疑问形式是直接将 need 提到主语前。由 need 构成的一般疑问句，其肯定回答用 must 或 have to，否定回答常用 needn't。

—**Need** I finish the work today?

—Yes, you **must/have to.**/No, you **needn't.**

——我需要今天做完这项工作吗？

——是的，你必须做完。/不用，你不必做完。

There's plenty of time. You **needn't** drive so fast.

时间很充足，你不必开这么快。

(2)作实义动词

need 作实义动词时，后可接名词、动名词、不定式等，有人称、时态和数的变化，其否定形式、疑问形式都要通过加助动词 do 构成。物作主语时，need 后跟 doing 或 to be done。

There are always people who **need help** from others.

总会有人需要他人的帮助。

He didn't **need to set off** so early.

他不必这么早出发。

Do I **need to leave** my telephone number and address?

我有必要把电话号码和地址留下吗？

The bike **needs repairing.**

＝The bike **needs to be repaired.**

这辆自行车需要修理。

3. must 与 have to

(1)must 意为“必须”，语气强烈。have to 意为“不得不”，意义与 must 相近，但又有所区别。must 表示说话人的主观看法，have to 则强调客观需要；must 只有一种形式，而 have to 有人称、时态等方面的变化。

—Shall I inform him of the change of the schedule right now?

—I am afraid you **must**, in case he comes late for the meeting.

——日程改了，我该马上通知他吗？

——我想你必须(通知他)，以免他开会迟到。

I **have to** go now, because my mother is in hospital.

我现在得走了，因为我母亲在住院。

(2)must 意为“偏要，非要……不可”。

If you **must** go, at least wait until the storm is over.

如果你非要走，至少等到暴风雨停了。

(3)mustn't 表示禁止，意为“不得，不允许；一定不要”。

That car is my property; you **mustn't** use it without my permission.

那辆车是我的财产，没有我的允许你不能使用它。

(4)have to 意为“不得不”，有时态、人称和数的变化，其否定形式为 don't/doesn't/didn't have to。

It's too late. I **have to** go home now.

天色太晚了。我现在得回家了。

You don't **have to** finish the work now.

你没有必要现在完成这项工作。

4. will, would

(1)表示请求、建议等，多用于第二人称疑问句，would 比 will 语气更委婉。

Will/Would you pass me the ball, please? 请把球传给我好吗？

(2)表示意志、愿望和决心。

I **will** never do that again.

我再也不会那样做了。

She said she **wouldn't** be coming to the store any more.

她说她再也不会来这家商店了。

(3)表示习惯性的动作、必然趋势或固有属性，意为“就会，老是，总是”。

As is known to all, fish **will** die without water.

众所周知，鱼离开水就会死。

On summer evenings, they **would** sit outside, chatting.

夏日的夜晚，他们总会坐在外面聊天。

(4)表示物体的功能或倾向性。

The car **won't** start.

这辆车发动不起来。

5. shall

(1)shall 用于第一、第三人称疑问句，表示说话者征求对方意见。

Shall I wait for you at the gate?

我在门口等你好吗？

(2)shall 用于第二、第三人称陈述句，表示命令、威胁、警告、允诺等。

You **shall** suffer for this.

你会为此事吃苦头的。(表示威胁)

You **shall** be punished if you break the rules.

如果你违反规则，就会受到惩罚。(表示警告)

You **shall** have the book when I finish reading.

我读完之后你就能拿到这本书。(表示允诺)

(3)shall 用于规定、法令、条约等正式文件中，意为“必须”。

All payments **shall** be made in cash.

所有款项都必须以现金支付。

6. should

(1)should 表示义务、责任、劝告、建议等，意为“应该；应当”。

We **should** pay attention when crossing the road.

我们过马路的时候应该小心。

(2)should 表示惊奇、遗憾等，意为“竟然”。

It's surprising that he **should** have failed to pass such an exam.

真令人吃惊，这样的考试他竟然都没通过。

7. dare

(1)dare 既可以作实义动词，也可以作情态动词。作情态动词时，dare 多用于疑问句、否定句、条件状语从句以及表示怀疑的名词性从句中，意为“敢……”。

I **dare not** walk through the wood at night.

夜间，我不敢在小树林里走。

How **dare** you say that he's a thief?

你怎么敢说他是一个贼呢？

名师点拨

dare 作情态动词时没有第三人称单数形式，但有过去式。

He **dared** not tell people the truth.

他不敢告诉人们实情。

(2)dare 作实义动词时,在否定句、疑问句中不定式符号 to 也可以省略。

I don't **dare (to) climb first.**

我不敢第一个爬。

Does he **dare (to) go** out alone at night?

他晚上敢一个人出去吗?

8. had better

had better 后跟动词原形,表示"最好……",其否定式在 had better 后加 not。而构成疑问句式时,则通常将 had(而不是 had better)置于主语之前。

You'**d better get** there before it gets dark.

你最好天黑前到达那里。

We'**d better not** talk so loudly.

我们最好不要这么大声说话。

What **had** we **better** do?

我们最好怎么办?

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. You had better not talk (talk) with strangers.
2. —Need I hand in my homework today?
   —Yes, you must/have to.
3. Most of us love weekends, because we don't need to get (get) up early.
4. They had better not go there together, had they?
5. All the students have to hand in a composition once a week, don't they?

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. Can/Could you help me with this box?
   你能帮我搬一下这个箱子吗?
2. He had to ask for leave last week, because his sick mother needed taking care of/to be taken care of.
   上周他不得不请假,因为他生病的母亲需要照顾。
3. The king was so hot-tempered that no one dared (to) tell him the bad news.
   国王脾气极差,以至于没有人敢告诉他这个坏消息。
4. On Sundays, he would go fishing.
   星期天,他总是去钓鱼。
5. Shall we meet somewhere for lunch?
   我们约个地方一起吃午饭好吗?

Unit 1 课后素养评价(三)

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 词语填空

function; in case; custom; download; diet; attack; tip

1. You can download the file and edit it on your word processor.
2. I have learned a lot about robots, especially about their functions and shapes.
3. You should observe the local customs when you go abroad.
4. Do you have any ideas or tips on how to organise magazines?
5. When the enemy attacked, they were completely powerless against them.
6. In case you should need any help, here's my number.
7. People are advised to eat a diet with much less fat or oil.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. We had better not let him go there, had we?
2. The fire was very big, but all the people were able to escape (escape) from it.
3. The car is so dirty that it needs cleaning/to be cleaned (clean).
4. A secretary has to know shorthand (速记) and typing, doesn't he?
5. She is shy and dare not (to) say (say) what she thinks.
6. The students are also required to read the passage below and some related (relate) stories.
7. It's a pity that her child has got addicted (addict) to smoking.
8. That's why small differences (differ) in the conversational style can have a great effect on one's life.
9. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly (slight) different from that spoken in England.
10. The doctor recommended eating (eat) an apple every day to keep healthy.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. I will be able to speak English fluently in three years.
   三年后我将能流利地讲英语。
2. I'm afraid you dare not/daren't do such a thing.
   我恐怕你不敢做这样的事。
3. Do I need to leave my telephone number and address?
   我有必要把我的电话和地址留下吗?
4. Given his health condition, we had better not let him go there.
   考虑到他的身体状况,我们最好不要让他去那里了。
5. It is raining outside. We have to stay at home.
   外面在下雨,我们不得不待在家里。

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Have you ever felt full after a meal but still wanted dessert? Or taken a cookie just because it was there? Many of us find it hard to refuse sugar. In fact, a study showed that 94% of lab rats preferred sweetened water to cocaine (可卡因). While sugar is not as harmful, it influences our brain in a similar way, bringing us pleasure and making us want more.

It's natural for our bodies to ask for sugar. However, unlike fruits and vegetables, some foods have high amounts of sugar added to them. According to Dr Vera Tarman, this can make eating sugar addictive—similar to how coca leaves were safe, but cocaine was dangerous. "Signs include thinking about sweets all the time, eating even when full," Dr Tarman said. "Many people feel a meal isn't complete without dessert—it becomes a habit."

Too much sugar can harm your health, leading to heart problems, headaches, and low energy. What's worse, it can keep your blood sugar high, making you feel tired and unwell. To break the habit, Dr Tarman suggests stopping sugar completely rather than slowly cutting down on it. The first five days may be difficult—you might feel easily annoyed or have trouble sleeping. But by the second week, these feelings weaken. By the third week, you won't even miss sugar.

"Start family-wide dietary improvements by eliminating sugary food intake, developing healthier eating habits for all members. After a meal, do something else, like drinking tea or taking a walk, to avoid reaching for sweets," said Dr Tarman. "Keep telling yourself why you're quitting—maybe to build energy or lose weight, and ask a friend to support you."

Quitting sugar may seem impossible at first, but after a few weeks, your taste will change. An apple will taste sweeter, and you'll enjoy the freedom from sugar addiction.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了人们易对添加糖上瘾的现象、过量吃糖的危害,以及Tarman博士提出的彻底戒糖等相关建议。

1. According to Dr Tarman, what makes people addicted to sugar?
   A. Natural need for our bodies.
   B. High-added sugar in some foods.
   C. Thinking about sweets all the time.
   D. Eating sweets even when full.
   B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"However, unlike fruits and vegetables, some foods have high amounts of sugar added to them. According to Dr Vera Tarman, this can make eating sugar addictive—similar to how coca leaves were safe, but cocaine was dangerous."可知,一些食物中添加的高糖分让人们对糖上瘾。故选B。
2. What does Dr Tarman suggest doing to avoid sugar addiction?
   A. Quitting sugar from diet totally.
   B. Stopping eating sugar gradually.
   C. Weakening sugar influence slowly.
   D. Cutting down on sugar for two weeks.
   A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"To break the habit, Dr Tarman suggests stopping sugar completely rather than slowly cutting down on it."可知,Dr Tarman建议完全戒掉饮食中的糖。故选A。
3. Which may replace the underlined word "eliminating" in Paragraph 4?
   A. Making up. B. Applying for.
   C. Cutting out. D. Focusing on.
   C 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的"Start family-wide dietary improvements by eliminating sugary food intake, developing healthier eating habits for all members."以及下文的"Keep telling yourself why you're quitting"可知,

eliminating 意为“切断、消除”，与 cutting out 意思相近。故选 C。

4. What positive change can you expect after stopping eating sugar?

A. You can enjoy sweet foods freely.

B. Apples will not taste sweet to you.

C. You are sure to have a sweet tooth.

D. A better sense of taste may come along.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段的内容可知，停止吃糖后，你的味觉会变得更好。故选 D。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Get to know some words about food and how to eat healthily.
2. Understand the content of the text, evaluate the lifestyles of different characters and give suggestions.
3. Relate to your own life and have a deeper understanding of the relationship between eating habits and healthy lifestyles.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Honey** is a sweet, sticky, yellowish substance that is made by bees. 蜂蜜
2. A **chef** is a cook in a restaurant or hotel. 厨师
3. According to the report, she is now fifth in the world **rankings**. 排行，排名
4. An **official** is a person who holds a position of authority in an organisation. 高级职员

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
belong *v*. 属于	belongings *n*. 所有物；财产
construction *n*. 建造，建筑	construct *v*. 建造，构筑
salty *adj*. 含盐的，咸的	salt *n*. 盐
resist *v*. 忍住，按捺	resistant *adj*. 抵抗的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. belong to 属于
2. catch up 打听（不在时所发生的事情），别后叙谈；赶上
3. pick up 买，购买
4. end up（尤指经历一系列意外后）最终处于，到头来
5. bring up 抚养；提起；呕吐

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：too... to...

   My fridge is usually half empty and I'm often too tired to eat much anyway.

   我的冰箱通常都是半空的，不过反正我也经常累得吃不下太多东西。

2. 句型公式：“否定词＋比较级”表示最高级含义

   When I get back home, there's nothing more satisfying than a big meat dinner.

   当我回到家时，没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

3. 句型公式：否定前置

   I still don't think that anything can beat my mum's homemade sausages, though.

   不过，我还是觉得没什么能比得上我妈妈自制的香肠。

4. 句型公式：it 作形式主语

   What's more, it is easy to make and can be adapted to individual tastes.

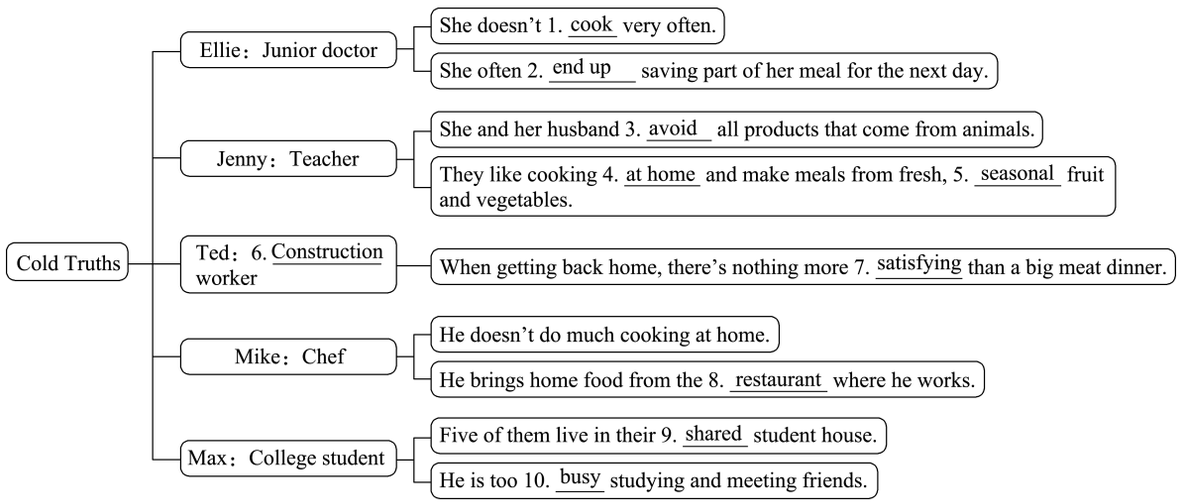
   更重要的是，它很容易制作，也可依据个人口味进行调整。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Who often leaves some food for the next day?

A. Jenny. B. Mike.

C. Ted. D. Ellie.

2. How does Ted feel about his mum's homemade sausages?

A. Very satisfied. B. Very tired.

C. Not mentioned. D. Very disappointed.

3. Why don't Mike and his wife do much cooking at home?

A. Because they are too lazy.

B. Because they like eating at restaurants.

C. Because they have not much time to cook.

D. Because they aren't good at cooking.

4. What does Jenny think of her lifestyle?

A. Healthy.

B. Unhealthy.

C. It needs to be changed.

D. It doesn't need to be changed.

答案：1～4 DACA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. As a doctor, I know I had better change the way I eat, but I just don't have the time or the energy right now.

[句子分析]本句是由 but 连接的并列复合句。but 前面是主从复合句，I know... 是主句，I had better change the way I eat 为省略了 that 的宾语从句，其中又有一个 way 作先行词引导的定语从句。but 后是一个简单句。

[尝试翻译]作为医生，我知道我最好改变我的饮食方式，但我现在完全没有时间或精力。

2. If we have children, I want to bring them up just like us, but my husband says that everyone should be able to make their own lifestyle choices.

[句子分析]本句是由 but 连接的并列复合句，but 的前面是主从复合句。If 引导条件状语从句，I want to bring... 是主句。but 后面也是个主从复合句，主句是 my husband says，其后是 that 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]如果我们有孩子，我想按照我们的生活方式养育他们。但我丈夫说每个人都应该有权选择自己的生活方式。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What dish do you like best? Describe it in your own words.

略

2. Whose eating habits are similar to yours? Give your reasons.

略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. satisfying *adj*. 令人高兴的，令人满意的

[教材原文] When I get back home, there's nothing more **satisfying** than a big meat dinner.
当我回到家时，没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

[归纳拓展]

(1)satisfy *v*. 使满意，使满足

(2)satisfied *adj*. 感到满意的

be satisfied with 对……感到满意

be satisfied to do sth. 对做某事感到满意

(3)satisfaction *n*. 满意；令人满意的事

to one's satisfaction 令某人满意的是

with satisfaction 满意地

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①From the satisfied smile on her face, we can see the performance was satisfying. (satisfy)

② Frankly speaking, none of the tourists was satisfied with the travel agency's service.

③(2025·全国二卷)People who live in plant-rich environments report a higher life satisfaction (satisfy) rating.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)**令我们感到既满足又兴奋的是**，我们看到自己的劳动果实被装上了卡车。

① To our satisfaction and excitement, we saw our fruits of labour were loaded onto the truck. (satisfaction)

② What made us satisfied and excited was that we saw our fruits of labour were loaded onto the truck.(satisfied)

2. convenient *adj*. 方便的，便利的；近便的，附近的

[教材原文]I know we should eat more fresh fruit and vegetables, but ready meals are so **convenient**.
我知道我们应该多吃些新鲜的水果和蔬菜，但即食餐太方便了。

[归纳拓展]

(1)It is convenient for sb. to do sth. 某人方便做某事。

if/when it is convenient 方便的话/方便的时候

(2)convenience *n*. 便利；舒适

for convenience 为了方便起见

at one's convenience 在某人方便的时候

(3)inconvenient *adj*. 不方便的；引起麻烦的

inconvenience *n*. [U]不便，麻烦 [C]麻烦事

v. 给……带来不便，添麻烦；打扰

名师点拨

convenient 不能用人作主语，可用事物作主语或用 it 作形式主语。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①I wonder if it would be convenient for you to pick me up at four o'clock and take me to the airport.

②(2025·浙江1月卷)It could be convenient (convenience) to employ bird-watchers to do the initial studies.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之申请信)**如果方便的话**，我们可以在本周五下午5点在你的公寓见面吗？

If it is convenient, could we meet in your apartment at 5 pm this Friday?

②(读后续写之情节描写)听到我的话，冈特脸上带着熟悉的微笑回答道："没关系，尽管去吧，你可以**在方便的时候**付钱给我。"

Hearing my words, Gunter replied with the familiar smile on his face, "That's OK, just go ahead, you can pay me at your convenience/when it is convenient for you."

3. adapt *v*.(使)适应，(使)适合

[教材原文] What's more, it is easy to make and can be **adapted** to individual tastes.
更重要的是，它很容易制作，也可依据个人口味进行调整。

[归纳拓展]

(1)adapt (oneself) to (doing) sth. (使某人)适应(做)某事

adapt... for... 将……改编成……

adapt... from... 根据……改编……

(2)adaptation *n*. 适应；改编本

(3)adaptable *adj*. 能适应的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Mr Smith has adapted the novel for television.

② All in all, successful businesses are highly adaptable (adapt) to economic changes.

③(2025·浙江1月卷改编)The birds' eating habits, adaptation (adapt) to life in the city, diseases, death rate, and such other information are not available.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之求助信)我和我的同学们**根据这个故事改编了**一个短剧,这颇具挑战性。

My classmates and I wrote a short play adapted from the story, which was quite a challenge.(用分词作定语)

4. end up (尤指经历一系列意外后)最终处于,到头来

[**教材原文**]I often **end up** saving part of my meal for the next day.

我常常会把一部分饭菜留到第二天吃。

[**归纳拓展**]

end up with... 以……结束/告终

end up doing sth. 最终做了某事

end up as... 最后成为……

end in... 以……结束/告终(多指不好的结局)

名师点拨

end 的相关短语:

bring sth. to an end 使某事结束

put/bring an end to sth. 结束某事

come to an end 结束

in the end 最后,终于

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①The party ended up with a beautiful song.

②The storm lasted for hours, but the arrival of the calm weather brought the chaos to an end.

③After several years of hard work, she ended up as a successful writer.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之心理描写)马克自言自语道:"我需要勇气和智慧来打败这只狼,否则我可能会**死在它的胃里**。"

Mac said to himself, "I call for courage and wisdom to defeat the wolf, otherwise I might end up in its stomach."

②(读后续写之动作描写)在比赛**结束**前,他踏上滑板,沿着斜坡加速下滑,在空中完成了一个漂亮的跳跃和旋转,**最终稳稳地落在草地上**。

Before the match came to an end, he stepped onto the skateboard, accelerated down the slope, performed a beautiful jump and spin in the air, and ended up landing steadily on the grass.

5. "否定词+比较级"表示最高级含义

[**教材原文**]When I get back home, there's **nothing more satisfying than** a big meat dinner.

当我回到家时,没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

[**句式分析**]本句中的 nothing more satisfying than... 是"否定词+比较级"结构,表示最高级的含义。

[**归纳拓展**]

形容词比较级与否定词连用,表达最高级的含义。常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等,其意义为"再也没有……比这更……的了"。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①Mr Smith is a great teacher—I really couldn't find a better (good) teacher.

②I had never spent a more worrying (worry) day than the day when I was waiting for the result of the college entrance examination.

③In my opinion, nothing is more pleasant than travelling.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之活动描写)**没有什么比**参加五千米越野比赛**更有意义的了**,它对我们的身心都有益处。

Nothing is more rewarding than taking part in the five-kilometre cross-country running race, which benefits us physically and mentally.

②(读后续写之动作描写)马克**从未见过比**这只狼**更可怕的动物**,因此他屏住呼吸,不敢挪动一步。

Mac had never seen a more frightening animal than this wolf, so he held his breath, not daring to make a movement.

多义词汇 专练

Students should **resist** the temptation to focus on exams alone. B

A. *v*. 使不受……的伤害

B. *v*. 抵制(诱惑)

C. *v*. 抵抗

Unit 1 课后素养评价（四）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. People coming from various countries lead quite different lifestyles（生活方式）.
2. The classroom doors swung（摆动）open, and the hallways filled up with students.
3. Please try some of this homemade（自制的）bread.
4. Updating my blog（博客）has become one of my habits.
5. He has improved his ranking（排名）this season from 10th to 5th.
6. Which is the official（官方的）language of this country, Mandarin or English?

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. China started construction (construct) of its national museum of marine archaeology in 2024 in Qingdao, Shandong Province.
2. The boy couldn't resist showing (show) off his being praised by the teacher on arriving home.
3. To his parents' satisfaction, he got full marks in the final exam.
4. I believe that you will soon adapt yourself to this new environment.
5. When I travelled here for the first time, my guide recommended some hot pot restaurants to me.
6. You'd better take more cash with you in case of any emergency.
7. It is widely acknowledged that education should not end up with the graduation.
8. In China, there is only about 7% of the land used (use) for growing crops, which feeds more than one fifth of the world's population.
9. It is clear that each product has a number for easy identification (identify).
10. I felt incredibly (incredible) ashamed of your treating him in such a rude manner.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

pick up; be similar to; end up; belong to; bring up; adapt to; catch up; for convenience

1. For convenience, people use plastic bags in their daily life when they go shopping.
2. After catching up, they found that both of them had changed a lot.
3. Reading some Chinese novels ahead of time will help you adapt to the Chinese language environment easily.
4. He was born and brought up in Australia, so he can speak English.
5. Paper-cutting has a history of over 1,500 years, and belongs to traditional art in China.
6. Did it ever occur to you that you would end up in prison if you continued behaving like that?
7. Studying the menu, I found that many of the dishes were similar to those of that restaurant.
8. Tom soon picked up some French when he went to live in France.

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 我记得你对我微笑的样子。(the way 作先行词的定语从句)
   I remember the way (that/in which) you smiled at me.
2. 一看到凶猛的狼，我吓呆了，不敢动弹。(too... to...)
   At the sight of the ferocious wolf, I froze with terror, too scared to move an inch.
3. 我认为他不会来看我了，这让我很难过。(否定前移)
   I don't think that he will come to see me, which makes me sad.
4. 在这个传统节日，没有什么比家人团聚更幸福的了。(用比较级表示最高级)
   Nothing is happier than family reunions on this traditional holiday.
5. 学习一门外语需要付出很多努力。(动名词短语作主语)
   Learning a foreign language requires a lot of effort.

Ⅴ. 语法填空

My Food Story

1. Growing (grow) up in a cross-cultural family, I have always been interested in different cuisines. My mother is from Sichuan, 2. which is famous for its spicy food. Thanks 3. to her, I learned to use chopsticks at a very young age. Last month, I decided to try making Gong Bao Chicken myself. I bought all the ingredients, but I forgot to buy peanuts. In the end, I used cashew nuts instead, and it still tasted delicious!

Healthy eating is also important. I seldom drink soft 4. drinks (drink) because they contain a lot of sugar. Recently, I read that about 30% of the world's population are overweight. This encouraged me 5. to have (have) more salads. However, my

father, whose favourite food is roast beef, **6.** thinks (think) that life is too short to worry about every bite.

Food is **7.** not just about nutrition; it also carries culture. **8.** Although/Though/While stinky tofu smells strong, I finally tried it last year and was surprised by its unique taste. Now, I often enjoy afternoon tea with English biscuits and Chinese oolong tea. To me, **9.** it is a perfect mix of my two cultures. This **10.** really (real) makes me feel at home with both.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华。你校英文报的美食栏目正面向全校学生征稿，请你写一篇英语短文投稿，介绍一道中国美食。

注意：词数 80 左右。

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When the night fell, James, a middle school student in London, dragged his tired body home. In order to save money to buy himself a new bike, he had been working at a restaurant for over a month during the summer vacation. He had already earned some money. With one more week, he would have his dream bike.

Entering the room, James found his younger brother Adam sitting on the edge of his bed with an uneasy expression on his face. James stared at Adam confusedly.

"Sorry, I did something wrong," Adam said, on the verge of tears.

"What's the matter with you?" James asked.

"This afternoon I went to play football on the road outside the house and accidentally hit our neighbour Mr Black's car. I was so scared and I hurried home in panic without telling him," Adam said, full of guilt.

"Is the car seriously damaged?" James couldn't wait to continue asking.

"The ball hit the car back and the tail light got broken," Adam said in a low voice.

"It's truly your fault. It's really dangerous to play football on the road. What's worse, you shouldn't have come back without telling Mr Black about it. You are such a naughty boy," James raised his voice. Hearing this, Adam lowered his head and bit his lip hard. James added, "Anyway, it's never too late to mend. I'll take you to his house tomorrow to apologise. Now it's time to sleep."

When Adam went to bed, James couldn't go to sleep himself. Father always told him to be honest, to be a boy admired by the people and to be an example of his brother. He was sorry for his brother's behaviour. He shouldn't have blamed his brother after he did something wrong. But he could understand him. Anyway, Adam was only a boy of seven and what had happened really scared him. But as his elder brother, he should pay for it though this might delay his plan of having the bike. "Nothing serious. At worst, I can take more summer jobs," he said to himself.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

James got up early the next morning. _____

_____

Mr Black was a little surprised to see the brothers. _____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节　应用文写作

In China, nothing can be compared with dumplings in terms of their popularity and significance.

Dating back to more than 1,800 years ago, dumplings are a famous traditional food in northern China. They consist of meat or vegetables wrapped in a thin piece of dough. The fillings can vary according to one's taste. And the cooking methods involve boiling, steaming, and frying.

Dumplings are eaten on many important occasions, especially at the Spring Festival, with good wishes for a better life.

第二节　读后续写

James got up early the next morning. He told Adam, "We should go to Mr Black's house as early as possible and explain to him what had happened." Before they went out, he took out all the money he had earned in the restaurant during the summer holiday. Adam knew that his dear brother wanted to pay for his fault. Tears filled his eyes because he knew very well how much his elder brother wanted to get a new bike and he was working on it.

Mr Black was a little surprised to see the brothers. "Mr Black, I'm here to make an apology," said James. Then he told Mr Black what had happened and drew out the money from his pocket. "This is all the money I have. I wonder if it can pay for your loss," he said sincerely. "Good boys, I truly appreciate your honesty. Just forget my car." Mr Black refused to get the money but accepted the brothers' suggestions of doing some work in his garden. What a good result! Adam regained his honesty and James could still have his dream bike.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——食品介绍类文章

○写作指导

本单元的写作目标是编写一份食谱。编写食谱前应仔细斟酌这道菜的名称，确保菜名为大众所接受。正文开篇先对这道菜做简单的描述(brief description)，然后列出做这道菜所需的食材(ingredients)及用量，最后写出说明(instructions)，也就是做这道菜的操作步骤。

○典题示例

在中国饮食文化中，红烧排骨很受欢迎，请编写一份食谱介绍红烧排骨的做法，要求至少包括两部分内容：ingredients 和 instructions。

参考词汇：猪肋排 pork rib；四川辣椒 Sichuan pepper；生/老抽 light/dark soy sauce；一汤匙的量 1 tablespoon；一茶匙的量 1 teaspoon；把……切成细条 shred；条 strip；姜 ginger；腌料酱汁 marinade sauce；淀粉 starch；冰糖 rock candy；醋 vinegar

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 简要说明 2. 所需食材 3. 操作指南

Step 2：要点补全

①Do you know how you can make home-style pork ribs tender (让家常排骨变嫩) without overcooking?

②I would like to recommend this popular dish (想推荐这道很受欢迎的菜) today.

③It is one of our favourite foods (最喜欢的食物).

④The recipe is super easy (食谱非常简单), and the added sweet and sour taste would make your mouth water.

⑤Then add the rest of the marinade sauce (加入剩下的腌料酱汁), dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup).

⑥Stir them a few times (搅拌几次), and cook over a medium heat with cover.

⑦One third of the sauce (三分之一的酱汁) is left.

Step 3：句式升级

①用“疑问词＋不定式”改写 Step 2 中的句①

Do you know how to make home-style pork ribs tender without overcooking?

②用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的句②③

Today I would like to recommend this popular dish which is one of our favourite foods.

③合并 Step 2 中的句⑤⑥⑦

Then add the rest of the marinade sauce, dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup), stir them a few times, and cook over a medium heat with cover until one third of the sauce is left.

Step 4：连句成篇

【参考范文】

Do you know how to make home-style pork ribs tender without overcooking? Today I would like to recommend this popular dish which is one of our favourite foods. The recipe is super easy, and the added sweet and sour taste would make your mouth water.

Ingredients

pork ribs cut to small pieces (2 inches) …… 300g
baby carrots …… about 8g
onion shredded …… 2/3 cup
yellow or green peppers cut to strips …… 1/2 cup
rock candy …… 2 tablespoons
starch …… 1 tablespoon

Seasonings and Sauces

Marinade sauce:
Chinese cooking wine …… 2 tablespoons

Chinese vinegar …… 2 teaspoons
ginger …… 1 piece
Sichuan pepper …… 6—8 pieces
dark soy sauce …… 3 tablespoons

Instructions

1. Combine the pork ribs with the marinade sauce. Set about 10 minutes.
2. Mix the pork ribs with the starch (1 tablespoon). Set about 1 minute.
3. Heat 2 tablespoons of oil in the pan at a medium-high heat. Add the ginger first and then the onion. Stir them together for half a minute.
4. Add the pork ribs and continue stirring them for about 2 minutes until the pork ribs turn lightly brown on both sides.
5. Add the rest of the marinade sauce, dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup), stir them a few times, and cook over a medium heat with cover until one third of the sauce is left.
6. Add the carrots and peppers, stir them a few times, cover and cook until the meat is tender and the sauce starts to thicken slightly.
7. Put the dish on a plate and enjoy the meal.

○学以致用

假定你是李华，你的英国朋友 Peter 来信称他准备到中国旅游，并且说他非常喜欢中国的美食，尤其想品尝火锅。请你给他回一封信，介绍火锅这一中国的传统美食，内容包括：

1. 火锅在中国很受欢迎；
2. 怎样烹饪火锅；
3. 为什么人们喜欢吃火锅。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

参考词汇：火锅 hot pot

【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

I'm glad to learn that you will travel to China and want to taste the hot pot. Here I'll introduce the traditional Chinese food to you.

Hot pot is one of the most famous folk dishes in China. No matter when you come to China, people eating the hot pot can be found everywhere. It is very convenient to make hot pot. When the soup in the pot is boiling, dishes such as mutton, fish and vegetables, are put into the pot. After a while you can enjoy the delicious dishes. The reason why people love eating the hot pot is that it gets people together and it is a good way to relax.

Welcome to experience it for yourself!

Yours,
Li Hua

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章，完成任务。

The school picnic day was on Sunday, and on Saturday morning I decided to ask Mum some questions. As soon as Mum took the last bite of her toast, I decided I couldn't wait for her any longer and asked, "Mum, where is Italy?"

My mum pushed up her glasses and looked at me with her head to one side. Then she said, "Italy is a European country which is very far away from here, my love. Why do you want to know that?" I shrugged (耸肩), "That's where Mike, the new boy in our class is from."

She nodded and invited me to go to fetch the geography book. The book was big and Mum always kept the very big books on the bottom shelf of our bookcase. I watched as Mum flipped to the index and then to a page near the middle. "Here we go," she said, turning the map around to show me. I let my finger meet hers where it said the word "Italy" in capital letters. According to the introduction to the country on the page, Mum helped me know more about the country.

"You know, Mum, Mike's parents are extremely busy working in the downtown. He seldom eats regularly, let alone (更不用说) have his native foods. I really want him to be very happy for his first picnic with us..." I paused and observed Mum, worried that Mum would think that it was silly and maybe a waste of money buying food only to give it away. But she didn't. Instead, she said, "I think that's a brilliant idea! Go and get ready, and we'll head out on a big shopping trip."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

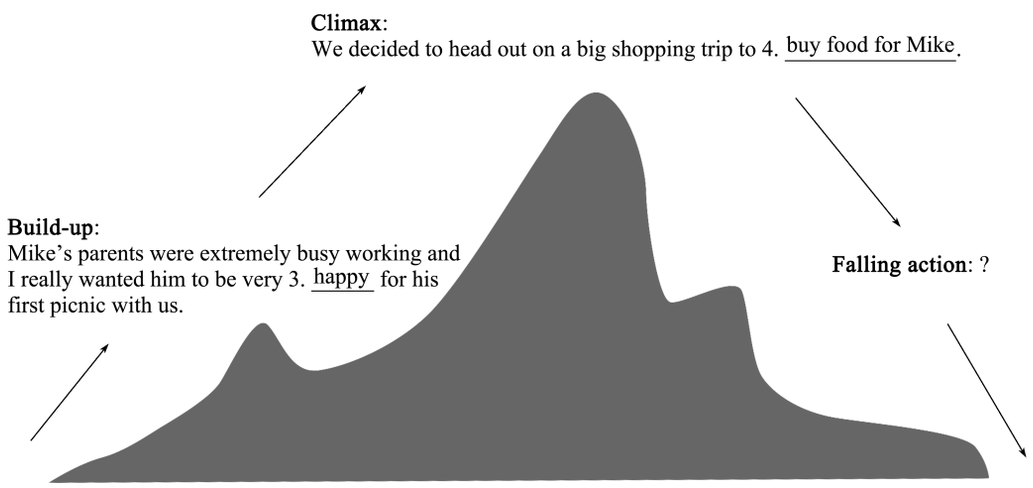
I got ready so quickly that morning that I thought I must have broken a world record. _____

_____

We gathered on the grass on Sunday morning and I saw the Italian boy immediately. _____

_____

任务一:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务二:根据段落开头提示语,构思故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1: I got ready so quickly that morning that I thought I must have broken a world record. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	**1.** Why did the speaker think they might have beaten a world record that morning? The speaker thought they might get ready for shopping so quickly. **2.** What did the speaker and his mother do after getting ready? After getting ready, they went to buy fruits and vegetables for making pizza. **3.** What would they do after shopping at the supermarket? They made a nice meal with all the things bought.
Paragraph 2: We gathered on the grass on Sunday morning and I saw the Italian boy immediately. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	**1.** What would the speaker do when seeing Mike? The speaker would invite Mike to have the traditional Italian meals. **2.** How would Mike react this time? He would be very glad and moved. **3.** What did the speaker and the Italian boy do together? They enjoyed a delicious pizza together and came to understand each other.

任务三:细化情节,遣词造句。

1. In five minutes I pulled on my trousers and T-shirt (穿上我的裤子和T恤衫), and hurriedly emptied my piggy bank.

2. With all the money I saved carefully (所有我小心翼翼存下的钱) put in my pocket, I rushed to meet my smiling mum at the front gate (在前门).
3. We went to stalls selling fresh fruits and vegetables (卖新鲜水果和蔬菜的摊位), selecting some for making pizza.
4. Proudly looking at the products, Mum and I drove back home in high spirits (兴高采烈地开车回了家).
5. I could picture the perfect pizza which my mother was expert at cooking (我妈妈擅长做的完美披萨) and the new boy's amazed face.
6. I waved my hand (挥了挥我的手) to draw Mike's attention.
7. He looked around and finally made sure (他环顾四周,最终确认) that he was my target.
8. Shy and quiet (既害羞又安静), he approached me with a light-hearted pace.
9. I patted the place beside me, gestured him to sit down (示意他坐下) and unpacked his native food.
10. He hesitated at first (一开始有点犹豫) but later focused his eyes on my sincere face (把他的目光集中在我真诚的脸上) and gave me a broad smile.
11. What a beautiful day it was (多么美好的一天啊)!
12. We enjoyed the delicious pizza together and came to understand each other by sharing different experiences (通过分享不同的经历).
13. No one would resist the sincere kindness (真诚的善意).

任务四:连句成篇,完整呈现。

【参考范文】

I got ready so quickly that morning that I thought I must have broken a world record. In five minutes I pulled on my trousers and T-shirt, and hurriedly emptied my piggy bank. With all the money I saved carefully put in my pocket, I rushed to meet my smiling mum at the front gate. We went to stalls selling fresh fruits and vegetables, selecting some for making pizza. Proudly looking at the products, Mum and I drove back home in high spirits. I could picture the perfect pizza which my mother was expert at cooking and the new boy's amazed face.

We gathered on the grass on Sunday morning and I saw the Italian boy immediately. I waved my hand to draw Mike's attention. He looked around and finally made sure that he was my target. Shy and quiet, he approached me with a light-hearted pace. I patted the place beside me, gestured him to sit down and unpacked his native food. He hesitated at first but later focused his eyes on my sincere face and gave me a broad smile. What a beautiful day it was! We enjoyed the delicious pizza together and came to understand each other by sharing different experiences. No one would resist the sincere kindness.

单元质量评估(一)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Riding School

You can start horse-riding at any age. Choose private or group lessons any weekday. There are 10 kilometres of tracks and paths for leisurely rides across farmland and open country. You will need a riding hat.

Opening Hours: 9:00 am to 8:30 pm(3:30 pm on Saturdays), Monday through Friday

Phone: (412)396-6754

Fax: (412)396-6752

Sailing Club

Our Young Sailor's Course leads to the Stage 1 Sailing qualification. You will learn how to sail safely and the course also covers sailing theory and first aid. Have fun with other course members afterwards in the club room. There are 10 weekly two-hour lessons.

Opening Hours: 6: 00 pm to 8: 00 pm,

Tuesdays

Phone: (412)396-6644

Fax: (412)396-6644

Diving Centre

Our experienced instructors offer one-month courses in deep-sea diving for beginners. There are two evening lessons a week, in which you learn to breathe underwater and use the equipment safely. You only need swimming costumes and a towel. Reduced rates for couples.

Opening Hours: 6:30 pm to 8:30 pm, Monday and Friday

Phone: (412)396-6312

Fax: (412)396-6706

Watersports Club

We use a two-kilometre length of river for speedboat racing and water-skiing. A beginner's course consists of ten 20-minute lessons. You will learn to handle boats safely and confidently, but must be able to swim. The club is in a convenient central position and is open daily from 9 am to 4 pm, with lessons all through the day.

Opening Hours: 9:00 am to 4:00 pm, Monday through Friday

Phone: (412)396-6899

Fax: (412)396-6890

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了一些活动,其中包括活动的时间、地点和联系电话等。

1. Which should you join if you want to swim and enjoy activities which are fast and a bit dangerous?

A. Diving Centre.

B. Riding School.

C. Watersports Club.

D. Sailing Club.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一则广告中的"speedboat racing"和"but must be able to swim"等可知,如果你想游泳并享受快速且有点危险的运动,应该去 Watersports Club。故选 C。

2. Which number may you fax if you want to experience a new activity in the countryside in the mornings?

A. (412)396-6752.

B. (412)396-6644.

C. (412)396-6890.

D. (412)396-6706.

A 细节理解题。根据第一则广告中的"There are 10 kilometres of tracks and paths for leisurely rides across farmland and open country."可知,如果你想在上午体验一项新的乡村活动,那么你应该去 Riding School,传真是(412)396-6752。故选 A。

3. If you are planning to explore the ocean depths, when should you attend your lessons?

A. 9:00 am to 8:30 pm, Monday through Friday.

B. 24 hours from Monday to Sunday.

C. 6:00 pm to 8:00 pm, Tuesdays.

D. 6:30 pm to 8:30 pm, Monday and Friday.

D 细节理解题。根据第三则广告中的"Our experienced instructors offer one-month courses in deep-sea diving for beginners."可知,如果你打算探索海洋深处应该去 Diving Centre,活动时间为"6:30 pm to 8:30 pm, Monday and Friday"。故选 D。

B

Since childhood, fried chicken had been my favourite food for some twenty years. I would have it at least three times a week, whether it was from a fast-food joint, a local diner, or even homemade. I planned my outings around places that served delicious fried chicken. There were times when I tried to cut back on it, especially when I started to gain some weight, but I always ended up giving in to my desire within a few days.

This year, a series of events changed my relationship with fried chicken forever. I began experiencing frequent stomachaches. Doctors couldn't directly link these problems to fried chicken, but I noticed that every time I ate it, my discomfort worsened. Additionally, I started to realise that the once-mouthwatering smell and taste now left a heavy, greasy feeling in my mouth that I couldn't ignore. One evening, after finishing a large bucket of fried chicken, I felt so sick that I couldn't sleep well all night. That was the turning point. I decided that it was time to quit.

Why was it so hard to let go before? Is there really something addictive in fried chicken? While there's no official "fried chicken addiction" listed in medical books, experts point out factors that could contribute to its allure. Dr Johnson from a nutrition research centre mentions two main elements: the

high-fat content and the combination of spices, which makes us feel good and makes us want more. Gradually, this circle becomes habitual over time.

Now, I'm on Day 35 of my "fried-chicken-free" journey. The first week was hard. I had strong desire and even felt a bit down at times. But as the days passed, I started to feel better. My stomach problems became less frequent, and I even noticed that I had more energy. I'm really proud of myself for breaking this long-standing habit. If I can overcome my love for fried chicken, I believe I can overcome any other challenging habit in my life.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者对炸鸡有着长达二十多年的喜爱,后因健康问题、吃炸鸡后的不适感等因素决定戒掉炸鸡,并成功坚持35天,最终发现身体状况得到改善,为自己打破长期习惯感到自豪的经历。

4. What can we know about the author from Paragraph 1?

A. The author ate fried chicken occasionally.

B. The author had a deep and long-lasting love for fried chicken.

C. The author never worried about the health risks of eating fried chicken.

D. The author successfully reduced the intake of fried chicken several times.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"Since childhood, fried chicken had been my favourite food for some twenty years. I would have it at least three times a week, whether it was from a fast-food joint, a local diner, or even homemade."可知,作者对炸鸡有着深厚且持久的喜爱。故选B。

5. What led the author to give up fried chicken?

A. A doctor's direct warning about health.

B. The advice on a healthier diet from a friend.

C. A newfound dislike for the smell of chicken.

D. Health problems and an unpleasant feeling after eating.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Doctors couldn't directly link these problems to fried chicken, but I noticed that every time I ate it, my discomfort worsened. Additionally, I started to realise that the once-mouthwatering smell and taste now left a heavy, greasy feeling in my mouth that I couldn't ignore. One evening, after finishing a large bucket of fried chicken, I felt so sick that I couldn't sleep well all night. That was the turning point. I decided that it was time to quit."可知,健康问题和吃炸鸡后的不适感让作者决定放弃炸鸡。故选D。

6. Which of the following can replace the underlined word "allure" in Paragraph 3?

A. Attraction. B. Combination.

C. Production. D. Appreciation.

A 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的"While there's no official 'fried chicken addiction' listed in medical books, experts point out factors that could contribute to its allure. Dr Johnson from a nutrition research centre mentions two main elements: the high-fat content and the combination of spices, which makes us feel good and makes us want more."可知,Johnson博士提到有两个主要因素让我们喜欢吃炸鸡。由此可推知,allure意为"吸引力",与attraction意思相近。故选A。

7. How does the author feel about giving up fried chicken?

A. Satisfied. B. Confused.

C. Annoyed. D. Impressed.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"I had strong desire and even felt a bit down at times. But as the days passed, I started to feel better. My stomach problems became less frequent, and I even noticed that I had more energy. I'm really proud of myself for breaking this long-standing habit."可知,作者对于戒掉炸鸡感到满意。故选A。

C

We are what we eat. From high-calorie meals to low-fat lunches, much of our health depends on what we eat. We know about the benefits of eating fittingly for our physical health, but food—and cooking it—is proving to be good for our mental health as well.

Some people are now supporting the therapeutic value of cooking food. It's not just about the end result but also the experience someone goes through. Dr Mark Salter, a consultant psychiatrist, told the BBC: "Baking and cooking are good therapies. They help patients develop planning skills, short-term memories and social skills—lack of which may lead

to mental illness."

TV chef and author Nadiya Hussain agrees that cooking is great for helping our mind. She loves to bake and became the champion of the TV show, *The Great British Bake Off*. She says, "Baking's always been about therapy... It's never really been about the cake." And she thinks that baking is an important tool for our socialisation and mental health.

Certainly, creating some delicious food takes our mind off things and gives us something to do, helping us get through the recent lockdown. People have said that mixing dough (生面团) to make bread, for example, has given them a sense of calm and control. Research has shown that doing creative tasks, like cooking, makes us feel happier. Nicole Farmer, who studies how food influences our biology, behaviour and mental health, told BBC online, "Cooking represents the human experience of food, and growing people through food, so there is no doubt that it can bring us timely positive feelings."

Of course, cooking can be a very sociable activity and sharing the end result, a rewarding experience. Hopefully, as we start to mix with friends and family again, we can enjoy the benefits once more and put us all in the right state of mind.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了烹饪对我们的心理健康有益处。

8. What is baking in Nadiya Hussain's eyes?

A. It's helpful for our mind.

B. It's a kind of TV programme.

C. It's always about the cake.

D. It's a tool for physical health.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,Nadiya Hussain认为烘焙对思维有益。故选A。

9. Why can creative tasks help people get through the lockdown?

A. They give people a lasting sense of calm and peace.

B. They mark the start of the experience of cooking food.

C. They make people feel more confident and stronger.

D. They help people take their mind off unhappy things.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段第一句可知,创造性任务可以帮助人们度过封锁期,因为它们能使人们不再去想那些不开心的事情。故选D。

10. What can we know from the passage?

A. Dr Mark Salter is a consultant psychiatrist of the BBC.

B. Hussain once got the first prize for her books on baking.

C. *The Great British Bake Off* is a TV show about cooking.

D. Nicole Farmer is a British scientist who studies biology.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段第二句可知,*The Great British Bake Off* 是一个电视节目,并且她通过这个电视节目获得了冠军,由此可推测出,这个电视节目是关于烹饪的。故选C。

11. What is the passage trying to convince (使确信) the reader of?

A. Eating fittingly for physical health.

B. Enjoying the course of cooking.

C. Sharing delicious food with others.

D. Developing our planning skills.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段第三句可知,文章主要围绕烹饪对人们心理健康的益处展开,所以文章试图使读者相信的是"享受烹饪的过程"。故选B。

D

Have your mouth ever felt dry and rough after eating dark chocolate or drinking strong tea? This sensation, known as astringency, is caused by plant compounds called flavanols (黄烷醇). While scientists have long known that flavanols are good for the heart and brain, a puzzle remained: very little of these compounds actually enters the bloodstream after digestion. If so little is absorbed, how can they still improve memory and thinking skills?

Recently, researchers in Japan proposed a new idea. They suggested that the bitter, astringent taste itself might be the key. Instead of needing to be absorbed into the blood, the taste could act as a direct signal to the brain. Dr Fujii, who led the study, explained that this specific taste stimulates sensory nerves, sending messages straight to the central nervous system. This process might activate the brain and trigger physical responses throughout the body without the compounds ever needing to leave the digestive tract.

To test this theory, scientists conducted experiments on mice. Some mice were given

flavanols, while others received only water. The results were clear: the mice that tasted flavanols became more active and explored their environment more eagerly. They also performed better in tasks requiring learning and memory. Further analysis of their brains showed increased levels of important chemicals like dopamine and norepinephrine. These substances are crucial for attention, alertness, and managing stress. The study found that the taste of flavanols activated specific brain regions responsible for these functions.

Interestingly, the physiological changes observed in the mice resembled those caused by moderate physical exercise. The flavanol taste acted as a mild stressor, waking up the brain and body in a beneficial way. This suggests that even though flavanols are not well-absorbed, their unique taste offers significant health benefits. It challenges the traditional view that nutrients must enter the blood to work, highlighting the powerful connection between what we taste and how our brain functions.

This discovery opens new doors for "sensory nutrition". In the future, food scientists might design foods that not only taste good but also use specific flavours to boost brain power and improve well-being. The next time you enjoy a piece of dark chocolate, remember that its bitter taste might be doing more than just pleasing your palate; it could be giving your brain a helpful workout.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了黄烷醇通过味觉刺激大脑并发挥作用的新研究发现。

12. What puzzled scientists about flavanols before the new study?

A. They were too bitter for most people to enjoy.

B. They failed to improve memory in early tests.

C. Their low absorption conflicted with their effects.

D. They caused damage to the digestive system of mice.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"While scientists have long known that flavanols are good for the heart and brain, a puzzle remained: very little of these compounds actually enters the bloodstream after digestion. If so little is absorbed, how can they still improve memory and thinking skills?"可知,让科学家困惑的是黄烷醇吸收率低却能发挥功效,二者相互矛盾。故选C。

13. How do flavanols likely influence the brain according to Dr Fujii?

A. By entering the bloodstream and travelling to the head.

B. By sending signals through sensory nerves directly.

C. By reducing stress hormones in the stomach area.

D. By changing the structure of the spinal cord slowly.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Dr Fujii, who led the study, explained that this specific taste stimulates sensory nerves, sending messages straight to the central nervous system."可知,黄烷醇的涩味通过刺激感觉神经,将信号直接传递至中枢神经系统,从而对大脑产生影响。故选B。

14. What can be inferred about the effect of flavanol taste on the mice?

A. It made them feel tired and less willing to move.

B. It harmed their ability to learn new tasks quickly.

C. It produced benefits similar to doing physical exercise.

D. It stopped the production of essential brain chemicals.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的"Interestingly, the physiological changes observed in the mice resembled those caused by moderate physical exercise."可知,黄烷醇的味道给小鼠带来的影响和体育锻炼带来的影响类似。故选C。

15. What is the main idea of the last paragraph?

A. Dark chocolate is the best food for high school students.

B. "Sensory nutrition" may lead to smarter food designs.

C. Bitter tastes should be removed from all future foods.

D. Physical exercise is no longer needed for brain health.

B 段落大意题。根据最后一段中的"This discovery opens new doors for 'sensory nutrition'. In the future, food scientists might design foods that not only taste good but also use specific flavours to boost brain power and improve well-being."可知,本段主要介绍"感官营养"可能催生更智能的食品设计。故选B。

Ⅱ. 七选五

A Diet Without Enough Protein Can Cause Depression

Depression is a condition so common, the World Health Organization (WHO) calls it "a leading cause of disability".

Difficulty in falling asleep, loss of appetite, and loss of ability to concentrate are just a few of the other effects of depression. Now, scientists are working on a new aspect of cure: nutrition. **16** *The Indian Journal of Psychiatry* reports that both before and during a happening of depression, those with the condition will show a "poor appetite..." **17** Many cases of depression, if not most cases, affect those who don't eat properly.

So what does protein have to do with all this? It all comes down to amino acids (氨基酸). Proteins are made up of amino acids, chemicals known as the "building blocks of life". There are 20 different amino acids. **18**

Both the human brain and nervous system use amino acids as a substance that creates a signal from one brain cell to another or one nerve cell to another, thus relaying information between the cells. What is the final result then? **19**

Since amino acids make up protein, a diet which lacks protein will cause weaker communication between the brain cells. This lessens the signal being sent from one brain cell to the next during a thought. **20** This is why depression can often express itself as anger or aggression.

A. The ultimate effect is how we think.

B. Don't ruin your appetite by eating between meals.

C. Skipping meals itself can create a depressed mood.

D. A new research suggests that nutrition can lessen some of the risks of depression.

E. India is perhaps the world's leader in researching the connection between diet and depression.

F. Many of them are made by the human body, but nine others, the "essential" amino acids, must be eaten in one's diet.

G. The process can lead to twisted signals, which can not only lead to depression, but also, according to many scientists, aggression.

答案:16～20 ECFAG

Ⅲ. 完形填空

Imunek Williams was pregnant (怀孕的). One summer morning, she took a bus to a local __21__ to have a body check. Among the passengers were 37 young students and they __22__ for their school, the Milwaukee Academy of Science. While they had __23__ a few blocks to go before reaching the bus stop, suddenly, Imunek __24__ a strong smoke smell. She quickly __25__ the driver to pull over to ensure the __26__ of the passengers.

With no time to __27__ help, Imunek and the driver took immediate action. They immediately __28__ all the students off the bus and made sure there were no remaining children in the aisle (过道). Imunek left last, and minutes later, the __29__ went up in flames (火焰).

Firefighters arrived at the scene as the smoke and fire rose out of the __30__ bus. Onlookers felt amazed and __31__ that everyone escaped without injury. The cause of the fire was under examination, and experts said that the problem with the engine was the __32__ cause.

The Milwaukee Academy of Science and the students' parents offered their __33__ to Imunek for her heroic action. The Milwaukee Brewers honoured their hometown hero by __34__ her to throw the first ball of a recent game at American Family Field.

Later, Imunek said, "It just felt good that I was able to get them off and my __35__ was that no one was hurt."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了孕妇 Imunek Williams 在乘坐公共汽车时发现浓烟后立即和公共汽车司机合作,勇敢地拯救了车上所有学生的故事。

21. A. hospital B. school
C. station D. museum
A 根据下文的"to have a body check"可知,Imunek 去"医院"做检查。故选 A。

22. A. hunted B. waited
C. headed D. asked
C 分析句子结构可知,and 后分句的主语是 they,宾语是 their school,此处表示"去"学校,head for 表示"前往"。故选 C。

23. A. secretly B. hardly
C. really D. simply
D 此处修饰下文的"a few blocks",所以是"仅仅"几个街区。故选 D。

24. A. imagined B. noticed
C. stopped D. showed
B 根据下文的"a strong smoke smell"可知,她"注意"到了一股浓烈的烟味。故选 B。

25. A. reminded B. taught
C. promised D. allowed

A 根据上文内容可知，Imunek突然注意到了浓烟，所以接下来的动作是“提醒”司机停车。故选A。

26. A. connection　　B. memory
C. pleasure　　D. safety
D 根据上文的“to ensure”和下文的“of the passengers”可知，靠边停车的目的是保证乘客的“安全”。故选D。

27. A. make use of　　B. come up with
C. call for　　D. give up
C 根据下文的“help, Imunek and the driver took immediate action”可知，当下情况紧急，没时间去“寻求”帮助。故选C。

28. A. drove　　B. guided
C. threw　　D. dropped
B 主语“They”指代Imunek和公共汽车司机，宾语是all the students，所以他们俩“引导”所有学生下车。故选B。

29. A. bus　　B. tree
C. house　　D. machine
A 根据第一段中的“bus”可知，该事情发生在“公共汽车”上，原词复现。故选A。

30. A. formal　　B. used
C. burnt　　D. repaired
C 根据上文的“went up in flames（火焰）”可知，公共汽车“着火”了。故选C。

31. A. doubtful　　B. thankful
C. regretful　　D. fearful
B 根据并列连词“and”前的形容词“amazed”可知，围观的人对没人受伤这件事是心存“感激的”。故选B。

32. A. natural　　B. same
C. frequent　　D. possible
D 根据上文的“the problem with the engine”和下文的“cause”可知，发动机异常是“可能的”原因。故选D。

33. A. praise　　B. advice
C. courage　　D. patience
A 根据上文内容可知，Imunek和公共汽车司机救了一车的学生，所以学院和学生家长对她进行“表扬”。故选A。

34. A. expecting　　B. sending
C. inviting　　D. challenging
C 根据下文的“her to throw the first ball of a recent game at American Family Field”可知，该队伍“邀请”Imunek在比赛中投出第一球。故选C。

35. A. dream　　B. request
C. decision　　D. happiness
D 根据下文的“no one was hurt”和上文的“good”可知，Imunek的“幸福”是没人受伤。故选D。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

The mouth-watering hot pots of Sichuan are as famous overseas as they are in China, and the hot flavour is enough **36.** to heat (heat) up a cold midwinter evening or to let loose rivers of sweat on a summer afternoon. I gave it my first try last night, together **37.** with a few local friends. As the soup bubbled slowly over a gas burner in the middle of the table, **38.** its (it) surface was covered with a beautiful layer of chillies, Sichuan peppers, spring onions and red oil. Slowly at first, and then faster and faster, we tipped plates of fresh meat, fish and vegetables into the pot. The hot flavour quickened our laughter and conversation, **39.** making (make) the meal the perfect way to relax with friends.

Sichuan hot pots are perfect for the damp, **40.** foggy (fog) climate in which they were invented. They are believed to have started off in the late Qing Dynasty as a way for boatmen on the Yangtze River to keep warm during the cold and wet winters. In the beginning, the delicious dish was made **41.** simply (simple) by boiling vegetables, chillies and Sichuan peppers in water. Over time, it **42.** has expanded (expand) to include multiple options of soups, vegetables, meats and sauces, appealing to people of different **43.** tastes (taste). What I love best about Sichuan hot pots is that they offer **44.** a great opportunity to socialise with friends since a meal can last for hours. I instantly became a big fan of Sichuan hot pots **45.** and I'll soon be back for more!

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假如你们学校的英语爱好者俱乐部正在对“良好饮食习惯”这一话题进行讨论，请根据下列提示，用英语写一篇80词左右的发言稿。

部分学生的饮食习惯	良好的饮食习惯	个人看法
不吃早餐、爱吃零食、偏食、饮食过度	饮食多样化、饮食定时定量	重要性：有助于身体健康……

注意：1. 发言稿必须包括所有提示要点，可适当发挥；
2. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

参考词汇：偏食 be particular about food；零食 snack

Dear friends,

As we all know, we are what we eat. Therefore, it's very important for us to form healthy eating habits. _____

_____

That's all. Thank you!

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I sat at the breakfast table with my four-year-old son, Matthew—trying to ignore the ache in my stomach. "Mama, want to play?" "Not today, baby." I shook my head. These days, I could barely get out of bed. I was still recovering from a surgery. I hoped for strength and happiness. But the future seemed so hopeless.

Suddenly, Matthew jumped up from his spot on the kitchen floor. "Bird!" he shouted, rushing to our courtyard. Sure enough, there was a white dove seated in a rubber tree. It sat there for a few moments, and then flew away. Strangely, I'd never seen one in our neighbourhood before.

When I dragged myself to the kitchen the next morning, the dove was back. This time, with a mate carrying twigs (嫩枝). "Look, Matthew," I said, pointing to the tree. "They're going to make a nest." The doves flew in and out of the courtyard all week, building on top of the rubber tree.

Matthew could hardly contain his excitement. Every morning, he'd run into the kitchen and take his spot by the sliding glass door talking to the birds while they worked. His enthusiasm was influential. As much as I was grieving (悲伤), I couldn't help but look forward to the doves' visits, too.

Then it all went wrong. The courtyard was a safe enough spot for a nest, but the rubber tree's branch, thin leaves were far from stable. One night, a strong wind blew, throwing the doves' nest to the ground. I heard the twigs break apart.

I surveyed the damage. Nothing good ever lasts. I wouldn't blame the doves if they never came back. But they returned. And they paid no attention to the pile of sticks that had once been their nest. They started again from scratch. Again, though, the wind destroyed all their hard work. The next day, and the next, they renewed their efforts, as if nothing had happened.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

I knew I had to do something. _____

_____

"It works! The birds are back!" Matthew announced. _____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear friends,

As we all know, we are what we eat. Therefore, it's very important for us to form healthy eating habits. However, bad eating habits are still very common among us students. Some of us often go to school without breakfast; some like to have snacks; some are particular about food, and others eat or drink too much. All these bad habits will surely do harm to our health.

To keep fit, we should have a healthy diet, which generally includes proper amounts of fish, meat, vegetables, fruit as well as main food. Besides, we'd better have meals regularly.

In my opinion, we should try to develop healthy eating habits to build up a strong figure. Only in this way can we have enough energy to study better.

That's all. Thank you!

第二节 读后续写

I knew I had to do something. The white dove and its mate had given me something to look forward to, even in my darkest days. Now, I was going to help them in return. I woke up the following morning with a plan. There was only an hour before the doves usually made their visits. I hammered a shelf into the wall next to the rubber tree and covered it with leaves to make it look like a tree. Then Matthew and I stood by the sliding glass door, waiting and hoping.

"It works! The birds are back!" Matthew announced. There they were sitting on top of the shelf, adding some twigs to the new nest despite damage from the strong wind. Three weeks later, we watched three chicks break free from their shells. "Chirp, chirp!" Matthew sang. I held him close and kissed him, feeling more positive and hopeful than I had in months. I realised all around me, life went on. And it was filled with wonders and surprises that I couldn't even imagine.

Unit 2 Let's celebrate!

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Society", with the topic involving Chinese and Western festivals. The unit will present multi-modal texts such as a book review, a festival invitation and a column article including two letters from the readers. This unit starts with introducing various festivals throughout the world, then you will read a book review of *Letters from Father Christmas* to raise awareness of the meaning behind a festival. Then you will have the chance to listen to the introduction about the Lantern Festival celebrations and Thanksgiving to have a deep understanding of the meaning of festivals. Next, you will learn to write a letter to express ideas by reading an article about Chinese Spring Festival. Through this unit, you are expected to figure out that all ethnic groups and regions have their own unique festivals. Besides, you will have your own understanding of the transformation and spread of traditional festivals.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"节日"主题相关的单词和词组。
		语法	能恰当使用情态动词来谈论某一节日的庆祝方式。
		语篇	能围绕"节日"的主题语境内容，基于单元提供的多模态语篇，综合运用各种语言技能，读懂语篇内容，深入理解不同国家的节日文化。
		语用	能使用新学语言点谈论某一节日的庆祝方式，恰当使用情态动词表示推测，能书面表达自己对某种节日现象的观点。
	语言技能	听	听关于"邀请"的对话，了解在正式和非正式的场合下，发出和回应邀请的方式的不同，思考在不同文化背景和情景下应如何做出选择。
		说	能谈论与节日有关的话题，且能根据语境和情境的需要正确使用情态动词，使表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读书评，获取文中所介绍作品的关键信息，了解文章所赞颂的给予和奉献精神，加深对节日意义的理解； 2. 阅读专栏文章的两封信，深入思考传统节日和习俗的变迁，了解中国文化逐渐走向世界这一趋势。
		写	能正确运用情态动词表示推测，并能用文字表达自己的观点和感受。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	通过阅读，从文章中提取事实和细节，并基于这些信息推导出合理的结论。
文化意识	了解中国传统节日走向世界这一趋势，增强民族自豪感，主动弘扬和传播中华优秀文化，增强社会责任感。
思维品质	通过运用各种学习策略，在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中，结合所提供的反思性和评价性问题，不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程，提高自己的理解和表达能力，最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。

必备知识

必背单词	honour, dragon, decoration, regardless, inequality, regard, literature, envelope, pole, regular, warning, starving, indicate, request, fancy, guy, lantern, attract, decorate, competition, formal, host, occasion, editor, admit, effort, loss, eve, software, adult, process, retired, exist, overseas, global, nationality, audience, joy, embrace, phenomenon
重点表达	keep... alive, as... as, regard... as, address... to, complain about, be keen on, eat out, have... to do with, wrap... up, in one's opinion, not only... but (also)..., pay attention to, wave at, clean up, depend on, put up, rather than, in memory of, regardless of
重点知识	1. do/does/did 表强调 2. 否定转移 3. not only... but (also)... 4. That is why...
单元语法	情态动词(2)
单元写作	一封表达看法的书信

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Acquire information about different aspects of festivals by reading and summarising.
2. Think of the reasons why people celebrate festivals.
3. Understand the spirit in the text and deepen your understanding of the meanings of festivals.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. participate *v*. 参加,参与
2. inequality *n*. (社会上的)不平等
3. novel *n*. (长篇)小说
4. limitless *adj*. 无限的
5. complain *v*. 抱怨,不满,发牢骚
6. warning *n*. 警告,警示,告诫
7. honour *v*. 向……表示敬意
8. decoration *n*. 装饰物
9. freedom *n*. 自由,自由权利
10. regular *adj*. 频繁的,经常的
11. regardless of 不管;不顾;不理会
12. regard... as... 把……视作……
13. be based on 以……为基础
14. as well as 也,还;和……一样好

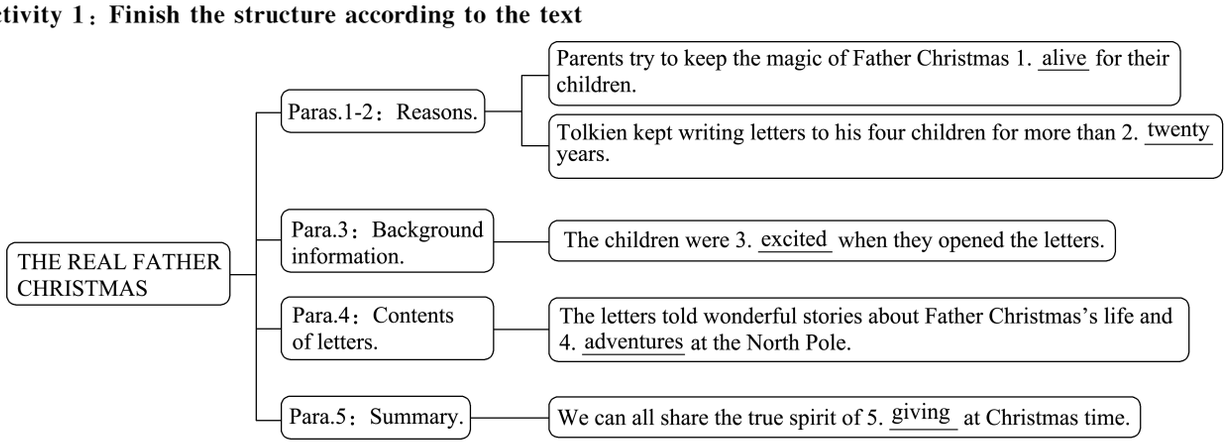
(二)阅读词汇

1. literature *n*. 文学
2. lunar *adj*. 月球的
3. fantasy *n*. 幻想,想象
4. dragon *n*. 龙
5. envelope *n*. 信封
6. poet *n*. 诗人
7. harvest *n*. 收成
8. vote *v*. 投票,表决
9. pole *n*. (行星的)地极,(尤指地球的)北极或南极
10. roof *n*. (建筑物、汽车、帐篷等的)顶,顶部
11. starving *adj*. 挨饿的,即将饿死的
12. be addressed to sb. 写信给某人
13. take place 发生;举行

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Who may be most interested in the book *Letters from Father Christmas*?

A. People who like reading novels.

B. People who like playing games.

C. People who like reading books about festivals.

D. People who consider Christmas as a special time.

2. What kind of father do you think J. R. R. Tolkien is?

A. Humorous. B. Strict.

C. Serious. D. Caring.

3. What topic might be talked about in the letters?

①Father Christmas's life at the North Pole.

②J.R.R. Tolkien's daily life at the North Pole.

③Father Christmas's warnings to the children.

④ Father Christmas's complaints about his helpers.

A. ①② B. ①③ C. ①④ D. ③④

答案：1～3 DDC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. That is why *Letters from Father Christmas* could be the perfect book for those who regard Christmas as a special time of year.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。why 引导表语从句，在从句中又有一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰 those。

[尝试翻译]那就是为什么《圣诞老人的来信》这本书，对于那些把圣诞节视为一年中特殊时刻的人来说，是一本完美的书。

2. ...but if you find that not many of the things you asked for have come, and not perhaps quite as many as sometimes, remember that this Christmas all over the world there are a terrible number of poor and starving people.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句，其中 if 引导的是条件状语从句，在 if 从句中 find 后跟一个 that 引导的宾语从句，其中 you asked for 是定语从句修饰 the things；remember 是主句的谓语动词，其后是一个 that 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]……但是，如果你发现自己并没有得到很多想要的东西，有时甚至所获无几，请你记住，在这个圣诞节，世界上还有很多的穷人和饥饿的人。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following question

What kind of true spirit can we learn from the book *Letters from Father Christmas*?

Giving.

Unit 2 课后素养评价（五）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

The lion dance, which mimics（模仿）a lion with kung fu and acrobatic（杂技的）styles, is a traditional Chinese performing art that could often be seen during festive occasions like the Spring Festival. It's believed to have started in the Three Kingdoms period and peaked in the Southern and Northern Dynasties. In ancient China, the lion was regarded as a symbol of good luck. The lion dance is often performed in celebrations to this day and in 2006, it was listed as a national intangible cultural heritage（非物质文化遗产）.

Qiu Haiwei, 17, and Huang Qingliang, 16, are two lion dance lovers in Guangxi Zhuang autonomous region. They started learning the dance two years ago. Though lion dance performances are breathtaking, learning the art is another matter.

Dancing on the poles makes the art a fascinating sight. There are 21 poles of heights between 1.2 metres and 2.5 metres with up to 1.8 metres between them. A single false step will send the performers falling to the ground below.

As a result, the ancient art form has fallen out of favour with the young generation, as the skills take years to master while only a low wage can be earned. Also, coaches and funding can be hard to find, so it's difficult for a lion dance troupe（表演队）to survive. But since 2017, local authorities in Guangxi have teamed up with companies and schools to help reboot the ancient art.

"We must work hard to help pass on the heritage and its spirit to future generations," Deng Minghua, a national inheritor of the cultural heritage, told Xinhua.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章向读者介绍了中国传统的表演艺术——舞狮。

1. What's the longest distance between two poles used for lion dance?

A. 1.8 metres.

B. 2.5 metres.

C. 1.2 metres.

D. 2.4 metres.

A　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"There are 21 poles of heights between 1.2 metres and 2.5 metres with up to 1.8 metres between them."可知,舞狮中用到的柱子之间的距离最远达1.8米。故选A。

2. Why is it difficult for the lion dance troupe to survive?

A. Because no one wants to learn lion dance.

B. Because mastering lion dance takes decades.

C. Because the payment is not satisfying enough.

D. Because coaches are not professional enough.

C　细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"As a result, the ancient art form has fallen out of favour with the young generation, as the skills take years to master while only a low wage can be earned. Also, coaches and funding can be hard to find, so it's difficult for a lion dance troupe (表演队) to survive."可知,舞狮表演队很难生存的一个原因就是薪水很低。故选C。

3. What can be learned about lion dance according to the text?

A. People will perform it only in the Spring Festival.

B. Local authorities attach great importance to it.

C. It started in the Southern and Northern Dynasties.

D. It has been added to the list of tangible cultural heritage.

B　推理判断题。根据倒数第二段最后一句"But since 2017, local authorities in Guangxi have teamed up with companies and schools to help reboot the ancient art."可知,当地政府很重视这种艺术的传承。故选B。

4. What's the text mainly about?

A. The future development of lion dance.

B. How to perform lion dance successfully.

C. Why young generations don't prefer lion dance.

D. The importance of keeping lion dance culture alive.

D　主旨大意题。第一段中的"The lion dance is often performed in celebrations to this day and in 2006, it was listed as a national intangible cultural heritage (非物质文化遗产)."主要介绍了这种艺术的悠久历史及其在中国文化中的地位;第二段至第四段介绍了这种古老的艺术形式的动人之处及其现在的状况。所以综合全文可知,这篇文章旨在介绍让舞狮文化存活和传承下去的重要性,A、B、C三个选项只是文章中的几个细节,不是文章主旨。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Chinese birthday celebrations form a meaningful tradition that honours life's journey. Deeply influenced by Confucian respect for elders and Taoist harmony with nature, these customs go beyond simply marking time. **1** They represent wishes for good fortune, prosperity, and the continuation of life.

2 It determines traditional birthday dates and is built into the Chinese way of counting age. Unlike the Western age system, the Chinese way of counting age typically considers a person a year old at birth and gains another year with each Lunar New Year, reflecting the cultural emphasis on natural cycles.

The most symbolic customs include eating "longevity noodles" representing a long life, and sharing red eggs symbolising happiness and new life. While tradition remains necessary, there is also room for new elements. Modern celebrations often include cakes, yet they are often decorated with peaches—a traditional symbol of a very long life. **3**

Significant milestones receive special attention. **4** The first birthday features the *zhuazhou* custom, in which a child selects objects believed to predict their future. The 12th birthday marks the end of childhood, and today, the 18th birthday is

the popular time to celebrate becoming an adult. Later milestone birthdays include 30, 40, and 50. The 60th birthday, which completes a full zodiac cycle, is celebrated with a large family celebration. Birthdays at 70 and beyond honour longevity.

__5__ Women traditionally may not celebrate their 33rd and 66th birthdays. Men might avoid celebrating their 40th birthday and instead remain 39 for another year.

Through these meaningful customs, Chinese birthday culture beautifully connects celebration with a deep respect for life's journey.

A. Certain birthdays are considered not that lucky.

B. Respect for others is a key part of Chinese culture.

C. Rather, they serve as meaningful cultural expressions.

D. Central to these celebrations is the Chinese lunar calendar.

E. A baby's first month is marked with the "red egg" ceremony.

F. This mix of old and new reflects the living nature of the tradition.

G. The emphasis on harmony can be seen in many aspects of family life.

答案:1～5 CDFEA

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Learn new words and expressions about festivals.
2. Learn and then use some key words and expressions.
3. Master and use some important sentence structures.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. A **poet** is a person who writes poems. 诗人
2. The poor **harvest** caused prices to rise sharply. 收成
3. Nearly two-thirds of this group **voted** for Buchanan. 投票
4. Write your letter and seal (封住) it in a blank **envelope**. 信封
5. Novels, plays, and poetry are referred to as **literature**, especially when they are considered to be good or important. 文学
6. If you say that you are **starving**, you mean that you are very hungry. 挨饿的
7. With the temperature rising, **polar** ice will melt at a faster rate. 极地的
8. The **roof** of a building is the covering on top of it that protects the people and things inside from the weather. (建筑物的)顶,顶部

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
honour *v*. 向……表示敬意	honourable *adj*. 可敬的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
decoration *n*. 装饰物	decorate *v*. 装饰,布置
freedom *n*. 自由,自由权利	free *adj*. 自由的
participate *v*. 参加,参与	participation *n*. 参加
	participant *n*. 参与者,参加者
inequality *n*. (社会上的)不平等	equal *adj*. 平等的
	equally *adv*. 平等地
	equality *n*. 平等;相等
limitless *adj*. 无限的	limit *n*. 边界,限度 *v*. 限制,限定
	limited *adj*. 有限的
regular *adj*. 频繁的,经常的	regularly *adv*. 定期地;经常
complain *v*. 抱怨,不满,发牢骚	complaint *n*. 抱怨

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
warning *n*. 警告，警示，告诫	warn *v*. 提醒，警告
starving *adj*. 挨饿的，即将饿死的	starve *v*. 挨饿，饿死
	starvation *n*. 挨饿，饿死

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. regard... as ... 把……视作……
2. regardless of 不管；不顾；不理会
3. complain about 抱怨
4. take place 发生；举行
5. in memory of 纪念；追念
6. be known as 作为……而出名
7. be made into 被制成……
8. instead of 代替；而不是
9. wrap up (用纸、布等)包，裹
10. get together 聚集在一起

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：That is why...
That is why *Letters from Father Christmas* could be the perfect book for those who regard Christmas as a special time of year.
那就是为什么《圣诞老人的来信》这本书，对于那些把圣诞节视为一年中特殊时刻的人来说是一本完美的书。
2. 句型公式：must have done
The children must have been very excited as they opened it.
孩子们打开信时一定很兴奋。
3. 句型公式：that 引导同位语从句
Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good.
有趣的是，信里并没有那些常见的对孩子们的警告，比如如果他们做得不好，他们就可能收不到礼物之类的话。
4. 句型公式：do/does/did 表强调
The letters did, however, change as Tolkien's children got older...
不过，随着托尔金的孩子们渐渐长大，信的内容的确发生了变化……

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. honour *v*. 向……表示敬意；尊敬 *n*. 尊敬；荣誉

[教材原文]Freedom Day is to **honour** an event.
自由日是为了纪念一个事件。

[归纳拓展]

(1)honour sb. for 因……而尊敬某人
be honoured as 被尊为……
be/feel honoured to do sth. 很荣幸做某事
(2)have the honour of doing sth. 有幸做某事
It's an honour for sb. to do sth. 对某人来说很荣幸做某事。
in honour of sb. =in sb.'s honour 为了纪念某人；为了向某人表示敬意

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空
①His colleague honoured him for his bravery.
② I feel greatly honoured to give (give) a presentation about the Mid-Autumn Festival.
③Yuan Longping is honoured as the "Father of Hybrid Rice".
④(2025·浙江1月卷)I'm honoured (honour) to have my voice heard to make a difference in the lives of those little birds that share our city.

(2)写作微练
①(应用文写作之通知)随着端午节的临近，我们计划举行一场龙舟比赛，**以纪念著名诗人**屈原。
With the Dragon Boat Festival approaching, we are planning to hold a dragon boat race in honour of the famous poet, Qu Yuan.
②(应用文写作之演讲稿)能有机会在这里发表演讲，**我感到非常荣幸**。
→ It is a great honour for me to have the opportunity to deliver a speech here.(it 作形式主语)
→ I feel it a great honour to have the opportunity to deliver a speech here.(it 作形式宾语)
→ I feel greatly honoured to have the opportunity to deliver a speech here.(honoured)

2. decoration *n*. [C]装饰物 [U](室内的)装饰，装潢

[教材原文] People prepare **decorations** with flowers and dance around maypoles.
人们准备鲜花装饰，并且围着五朔节花柱跳舞。

[归纳拓展]

decorate *v*. 装饰，布置
decorate... with... 用……装饰(某物、某处)
be decorated with/by 装饰着……

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①He decorated his room with pictures of all his favourite sports figures.

②The decoration (decorate) of their new house is very modern and fashionable.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之节日介绍)村里所有的房子都**用**红灯笼**装饰**,以庆祝春节。

All the houses in the village are decorated with/by red lanterns to celebrate the Spring Festival.

3. inequality *n*.(社会上的)不平等

［教材原文］It celebrates the end of racial **inequality** in the country.

它庆祝该国种族不平等的结束。

［归纳拓展］

(1)inequality in... 在……方面不平等

inequality between... and... ……和……之间的不平等

(2)equal *v*. 等于,与……相等;比得上 *adj*. 相等的;能胜任的;平等的 *n*. [C]同等的人;相等物

equal sb./sth. (in+*n*.) (在……方面)比得上某人/某物

be equal to (doing) sth. 能胜任(做)某事;比得上某物(equal 作形容词时,后面的 to 是介词)

be without equal(=have no equal) 无与伦比

(3)equality *n*. 平等;相等

(4)equally *adv*. 平等地

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①Though they are equal to him in height, no one can equal him in playing basketball.

②When it comes to wildlife protection, all species should be treated equally (equal).

③Ensuring every child equal rights to education is where the key to the elimination (消除) of inequality (equal) across the world lies.

④I always think that a great conversation should be made up of equality (equal) and trust.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信)我写信是想申请志愿者一职,我认为我**能胜任这份工作**。

I'm writing to apply for the position as a volunteer and I think I am equal to the job. (equal *adj*.)

4. warning *n*. 警告,警示,告诫

［教材原文］Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual **warnings** to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good.

有趣的是,信里并没有那些常见的对孩子们的警告,比如如果他们做得不好,他们就可能收不到礼物之类的话。

［归纳拓展］

warn *v*. 提醒,警告

warn sb. of sth. 警告某人当心某事

warn sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事

warn sb. against doing sth.

=warn sb. not to do sth. 警告某人不要做某事

warn sb. that... 提醒某人……

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

① Mrs Smith warned her son never to drive (drive) after drinking.

②We've just heard a warning (warn) on the radio that a typhoon may be on the way.

③I tried to warn him of the danger, but he was determined to get his own way.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之话题总结)经过这件事,我想起老师总是**告诫我们绝不能放弃我们的梦想**。

After this experience, I remember that our teacher always warned us not to give up on our dreams.

②(应用文写作之建议信)医生**警告不要熬夜**,因为这可能导致严重的健康问题。

Doctors warn against staying up late as it can lead to serious health problems.

5. do/does/did 表强调

［教材原文］The letters **did**, however, change as Tolkien's children got older...

不过,随着托尔金的孩子们渐渐长大,信的内容的确发生了变化……

［句式分析］本句中助动词 did 起强调作用,强调谓语动词 change,意为"的确"。

［归纳拓展］

"do/does/did+动词原形"结构用来强调谓语动词的一般现在时和一般过去时,且只对肯定的谓语动

词进行强调。在一般现在时中，do 有人称的变化，第三人称单数用 does；在一般过去时中，do 变成 did。在祈使句中，“do＋动词原形”往往不表示命令，而表示强烈的请求或客气的语气。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①He does like (like) the film.

②She did (do) tell me about her address, but I forgot all about it.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之主旨升华)我**确实认为**真正的友谊应该建立在相互理解和有相似理想的基础上。

I do believe that true friendship should be based on mutual understanding and similar ideals.

②(读后续写之主旨升华)有了勇气和毅力，我**确实取得了很大的进步**。

With bravery and perseverance, I did make great progress.

Unit 2 课后素养评价（六）

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. To improve my spoken English, I have made it a routine to participate in the English Corner on a regular basis.
2. I am keen on contemporary Chinese literature, and it is why I sign up for the reading club.
3. On the plate there was chicken decorated with carrots and tomatoes.
4. Other experts feel that giving the worker freedom to do (do) his job in his own way is important.
5. It is impolite of you to open that letter which was addressed to me.
6. The house is so cold that the roof needs to be repaired regularly (regular).
7. In your opinion, what can we do to stop these animals dying (die) out?
8. He spent the evening wrapping (wrap) up the New Year gifts.
9. We got a good harvest so we can help those who are suffering from starvation (starve).
10. I am a lovely and cheerful chef who likes cooking as well as doing (do) sports.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

take place; regardless of; be known as; be regarded as; instead of

1. They are known as “four new great inventions of modern China”.
2. Do you know when the accident took place?
3. Tom does not feel well today, so I will attend the meeting instead of him.
4. Regardless of the risk of getting infected, she was determined to set off for the city to fight against the terrible disease.
5. As we all know, Yuan Longping is regarded as the “Father of Hybrid Rice”.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 他通过了考试，这让他的父母很高兴。(which 引导定语从句)

   He passed the exam, which made his parents very happy.
2. 吃月饼、赏月、欣赏舞龙表演、挂装饰精美的灯笼是人们的传统习俗。(it 作形式主语)

   It is a traditional custom for people to eat moon cakes, appreciate the moon, enjoy dragon dance, and hang up lanterns with beautiful decorations.
3. 汤姆今天早上起床晚的原因是他昨晚睡得太晚了。(The reason why... is that...)

   The reason why Tom got up late this morning is that he stayed up too late last night.
4. 中秋节确实是一个重要的中国传统节日，需要代代相传。(强调谓语动词)

   The Mid-Autumn Festival is indeed an important traditional Chinese holiday that needs to be passed down from generation to generation.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

In China, the Mid-Autumn Festival is a time to look at the moon, think about your family and enjoy mooncakes. Here in Arizona, my family still celebrates it in the Chinese __1__ every year.

One year, we found ourselves with too __2__ mooncakes. I have no idea why, but we had boxes and boxes of different kinds. We decided to invite our neighbours, the Cruz family.

The Cruzes have __3__ us since the 1990s when my parents moved in. Emma and her husband Frank sometimes bring fresh tomatoes from their __4__ to our door.

That night, I was sent to __5__ them. I told them about the Mid-Autumn Festival traditions in China. Emma told me they would __6__.

My dad __7__ some white plastic chairs in the backyard, where we had a clear view of the __8__ moon in the sky. My mum __9__ a pot of green Chinese tea. When Emma and Frank arrived, my dad cut the mooncakes, __10__ offering them the parts without the salty egg yolk (蛋黄), in case they didn't __11__ it. We sat in a circle, enjoyed our tea and __12__ the moon.

I don't remember what we talked about, but what does __13__ with me is the memory of the joy of a(n) __14__ gathering, of introducing this holiday to our neighbours and of sharing the mooncakes and tea under a bright full moon.

In that moment, I understood the Mid-Autumn Festival is about __15__ and that mooncakes aren't meant to be eaten alone.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者一家在美国亚利桑那州遵循中国传统方式庆祝中秋节，并邀请邻居 Cruz 一家共度佳节、分享月饼的温馨故事。

1. A. tradition　　B. market
C. apartment　　D. campus
A　根据上文“在中国，中秋节是赏月、思亲、吃月饼的节日”可知，此处强调中国特有的传统。故选 A。

2. A. major　　B. many
C. enough　　D. much
B　下文提到“有好多盒不同种类的月饼”，且 mooncakes 是可数名词复数，需用 many 修饰。故选 B。

3. A. trusted　　B. forgotten
C. known　　D. appreciated
C　根据下文“Cruz 一家有时会送新鲜西红柿上门”可知，两家彼此认识。故选 C。

4. A. office　　B. school
C. subway　　D. garden
D　西红柿是从园子中采摘的。故选 D。

5. A. demand　　B. regard
C. supply　　D. invite
D　上文已提及“我们决定邀请邻居 Cruz 一家”，此处对应“邀请”的动作。故选 D。

6. A. contact　　B. drive
C. come　　D. return
C　下文提到“Emma 和 Frank 抵达时”，由此可推知，此处是说对方会来。故选 C。

7. A. set up　　B. stirred up
C. gave up　　D. watched over
A　下文提及“在后院摆放椅子”的动作，set up 与“摆放椅子”语境匹配。故选 A。

8. A. specific　　B. new
C. daily　　D. bright
D　下文出现“under a bright full moon”，此处对应“明亮的月亮”。故选 D。

9. A. observed　　B. designed
C. prepared　　D. identified
C　“准备一壶绿茶”符合中秋聚会的场景。故选 C。

10. A. immediately　　B. carefully
C. excitedly　　D. practically
B　根据下文“以防对方不喜欢”可知，爸爸切月饼的动作很谨慎，carefully 贴合语境。故选 B。

11. A. refuse　　B. like
C. measure　　D. propose
B　上文提及“给无咸蛋黄的月饼”，目的是预判对方有可能不喜欢咸蛋黄。故选 B。

12. A. looked up at　　B. kept up with
C. put up with　　D. ended up at
A　中秋赏月需“抬头看”，looked up at 符合语境。故选 A。

13. A. threaten　　B. share
C. remain　　D. travel
C　“快乐留在记忆中”是核心语义，remain 符合语境。故选 C。

14. A. respected　　B. awkward
C. discovered　　D. unexpected
D　上文提及“因月饼太多临时邀请邻居”可知，此次聚会是一次意料之外的聚会。故选 D。

15. A. togetherness　　B. encouragement
C. childhood　　D. explanation
A　中秋赏月、分享月饼、喝茶的场景核心是“团聚”，togetherness 贴合文意。故选 A。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify the meanings and forms of the modal verbs by observing the sentences.
2. Find out the functions of the modal verbs.
3. Use modal verbs to make a deduction or guess.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The magazine was packaged in a **fancy** plastic case with attractive graphics (图案). 别致的
2. I showed my pass to the security guard and he **waved** me through. 挥手
3. We go to the square and enjoy various **lanterns** there every year on the Lantern Festival. 灯笼
4. **Dessert** is something sweet, which you eat at the end of a meal. 甜点
5. The management is understood to be very unwilling to agree to this **request**. 要求,请求
6. Atlanta was chosen to be the **host** of the 1996 Olympic Games. 东道主
7. Sean is really a very sweet **guy** and has many talents. (尤指青年)男子
8. An **occasion** is a time when something happens. 场合,时刻

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
indicate *v*. 表明,显示	indication *n*. 表明;标示;象征
attract *v*. 吸引,引起……的兴趣	attractive *adj*. 吸引人的;有吸引力的
	attraction *n*. 吸引力;具有吸引力的事物或人

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
competition *n*. 比赛,竞赛	compete *v*. 比赛,竞争
	competitive *adj*. 竞争性的
	competitor *n*. 竞争者;对手
formal *adj*. 正式的	informal *adj*. 非正式的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. put up 举起;张贴;供给……住宿
2. be dressed as 装扮为……
3. check out 检验;通过考核
4. pay attention to 注意
5. wave at 朝……挥手
6. find out 找出,查明

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:spend (time) (in) doing...
   I spent ages putting up all the balloons and flowers last night.
   昨晚我花了很长时间,把所有的气球和花都装上去了。
2. 句型公式:过去分词短语作后置定语
   Look at those two guys dressed as chickens!
   看那两个打扮成小鸡的家伙!
3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语
   Depending on regional customs, it may be acceptable to be 15 to 30 minutes late.
   视地方风俗而定,迟到15至30分钟也许是可以接受的。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. attract *v*. 吸引，引起……的兴趣

[教材原文] The lantern fair **attracts** a lot of people, so it's one of the busiest times of year for the traffic police.

灯会吸引了很多人，所以这是一年中交通警察最繁忙的时候之一。

[归纳拓展]

(1)attract sb. to sb./sth. 引起某人对某人/某物的注意

attract one's attention 吸引某人的注意

(2)attractive *adj*. 吸引人的；有吸引力的

be attractive to... 对……有吸引力的

(3)attraction *n*. 吸引力；具有吸引力的事物或人

a tourist attraction 旅游胜地

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国二卷) Flowers are everywhere—hanging baskets, window boxes, and planters—just what you imagine in an attractive (attract) English market town.

② The competition aiming to broaden students' horizons and enrich students' life is an attraction (attract) for me.

(2)写作微练

(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之活动分享)在我完成画作之后，它**引起了我的美术老师的注意**，他对它评价很高，因为它栩栩如生。

After I finished the painting, it attracted my art teacher's attention, and he thought highly of it because it was true to life.

2. 否定转移

[教材原文] No, **I don't think** that's Lucy.

不，我觉得那不是露西。

[归纳拓展]

(1)当 I/We think/believe/expect 等后面接一个具有否定意义的由 that 引导的宾语从句时，通常把否定词转移到主句中，而宾语从句的谓语动词用肯定式。

(2)否定转移的三个条件：

①主句的主语是第一人称 I 或 we；

②主句的谓语动词为一般现在时；

③主句的谓语动词是表示心理活动的动词，如 think, suppose, believe, imagine, expect 等。

(3)否定转移的反义疑问句的主谓语要与宾语从句一致，并用肯定形式。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①I don't believe he did that, did he?

②I don't suppose she has finished her homework, has she?

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)**我认为我们不一定成功**，但是不管怎样还是试试吧。

I don't think we'll succeed, but let's try anyway.

②(应用文写作之建议信)尽管互联网对我们有很大的帮助，**我仍认为**在这方面花太多的时间并**不是个好主意**。

While the Internet is of great help to us, I still don't think it is a good idea to spend too much time on it.

多义词汇 专练

1. fancy：A. *adj*. 豪华的　B. *adj*. 花哨的　C. *v*. 想要　D. *v*. 认为

①I don't **fancy** going out in this cold weather. C

②She **fancied** she heard a noise downstairs. D

③I just want a basic sports coat—nothing **fancy**. B

④Harry took me to a **fancy** restaurant for our anniversary. A

2. host：A. *n*. 东道主；主办国　B. *v*. 主办　C. *n*. 主人

① At the party, we thanked our **host** for the delicious snacks and the flavoursome wine he offered. C

②Which country will be the **host** country for the next Olympic Games? A

③(2025·全国一卷) My wife and I wanted to share our new home with family and friends by **hosting** a small gathering in the early summer. B

语法研习课

情态动词（2）

◦语法感知

①That is why *Letters from Father Christmas* **could** be the perfect book...

②The children **must** have been very excited as they opened it.

③The letters were also beautifully illustrated—each **must** have taken its true author...

④In another letter, Father Christmas complained about how he **could** not stop his helpers...

⑤Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they **might** not...

⑥... we **can** all share the true spirit of giving at Christmas time.

1. 以上句子中，句①、句④和句⑥中的情态动词表能力。
2. 句⑤中的情态动词表可能性。
3. 句②和句③中的情态动词表猜测，must have done的意思是"肯定（已经）……"。

◦语法精讲

一、can 表推测的用法

1. can 可以表推测，既可以用于肯定句，也可以用于否定句。can 用于肯定句时，表示理论上的可能性。其否定式 can't 是语气最强的否定推测，翻译为"不可能，一定不"；can 也可用于疑问句中表推测。

   Learning English as a second language **can** be a wonderful experience.

   把英语作为第二语言来学习可能是一种美好的经历。

   You **can't** be hungry, for you had lunch only two hours ago.

   你不可能饿，因为你两个小时前才吃完午饭。

2. can't/couldn't have done 表示对过去事实的推测，意为"不可能做过……"。can't 比 couldn't 的语气更强一些，但当主句的谓语动词是一般过去时的时候，从句要用 couldn't have done。could have done 还可以表示"过去本来能够做某事却没有做"，含有惋惜或责备的语气，意为"本来是可以……的"。

   He **couldn't have watched** TV yesterday for he knew he would have an exam.

   昨天他不可能看电视，因为他知道他快要考试了。

   I **could have passed** the exam, but I was too careless.

   本来我能够通过考试的，但是我太粗心了。

二、may 和 might 表推测的用法

1. may 和 might 表推测时既可以用于肯定句，也可以用于否定句。may 和 might 用于肯定句时意为"可能"；否定式 may not/might not 意为"可能不"；might 的可能性比 may 更小，语气更委婉一些。

   The little problems that we meet in our daily lives **may** be inspirations for great inventions.

   我们在日常生活中遇到的小问题可能就是伟大发明的灵感。

   If you have an office job, you **might not** be getting outdoors enough, and your health **might** suffer.

   如果你在室内办公，你可能去户外活动得不够，那么你的健康就有可能受到影响。

2. may/might have done 表示对过去事实不大肯定的推测，语气较弱，用于肯定句时表示"可能已经……"；否定式 may/might not have done 表示"可能还没……"。might have done 还可以表示"本来可能或可以做某事但没有做"，含有轻微的责备或遗憾口吻。

   —What has happened to George?

   —I don't know. He **may/might have got lost.**

   ——乔治发生了什么事？

   ——我不知道。他可能迷路了。

   What a pity! Considering his ability and experience, he **might have done** better.

   真遗憾！考虑到他的能力和经验，他本可以做得更好的。

三、must 表推测的用法

1. must 表推测时只用于肯定句，意为"一定"或"肯定"，所作出的推测接近事实，语气最肯定。

   He has been working all day. He **must** be very tired.

   他工作了一整天。他肯定非常累。

2. must have done 表示对过去事实有把握的推测，语气最强，只用于肯定句，意为"肯定（已经）……"。

   Harry is feeling uncomfortable. He **must have drunk** too much at the party last night.

   哈里感觉不舒服。他肯定是在昨晚的聚会上喝多了。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 用适当的情态动词或所给动词的正确形式填空

1. My book is missing. Who could have taken it?
2. (2025·浙江1月卷) Our employees must be dependable and be able to lift heavy things and stand long hours at a time.
3. I got to the party at 6 pm, but there was no one there, so I needn't have arrived (arrive) so early.
4. This problem may/can lead to more serious ones if left unsolved.
5. You mustn't smoke in this part of the hospital. It's not allowed.
6. Mr White has gone to the library so he can't be in the office now.
7. They might be having a meeting, but I'm not sure.
8. You must come here on time, or you'll be fined next time.

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. They must have been to the Great Wall.
   他们一定去过长城。
2. The work could have been finished yesterday, but the heavy rain kept us indoors all day.
   这项工作昨天本可以完成的,可是一场大雨把我们困在了室内。
3. It may/might rain this afternoon. You had better take a raincoat with you.
   今天下午可能会下雨。你最好随身带件雨衣。
4. Mr Smith can't have gone to Beijing, for I saw him in the library just now.
   史密斯先生不可能去北京了,因为我刚才在图书馆看见他了。
5. Sorry, I'm late. I might have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.
   对不起,我迟到了。我可能把闹钟关掉后又睡着了。

Unit 2 课后素养评价(七)

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 词语填空

request; attract; indicate; put up; formal; competition; host; wave at/to

1. At such a formal party you shouldn't wear jeans.
2. A survey of retired people has indicated that most of them are independent and enjoying life.
3. I feel it a great honour to represent my class to take part in the group dancing competition.
4. New Bedford hosts a number of lively festivals throughout the summer months.
5. Smile and wave at/to people who pass you.
6. Beijing attracts millions of tourists from all over the world every year.
7. The names of the successful candidates (候选人) will be put up on the noticeboard.
8. The workers requested/request that their working conditions should be further improved.

Ⅱ. 句型转换

1. It is impossible that she has left school, for her bike is still here.
   →She can't/couldn't have left school, for her bike is still here.
2. You were supposed to have the ability to pass the job interview, but you were too nervous.
   →You could have passed the job interview, but you were too nervous.
3. It's our duty to look after our parents when they are old.
   →We should/must look after our parents when they are old.
4. I'm not sure why he hasn't turned up; maybe, he has missed the flight.
   →I'm not sure why he hasn't turned up; he may/might have missed the flight.
5. I'm sure he has completed his homework for I just saw he was playing football on the playground.
   →He must have completed his homework for I just saw he was playing football on the playground.

Ⅲ. 根据汉语提示完成句子

1. He hurried back to the classroom because he might have left something on his desk.
   他匆忙赶回教室,因为他可能把东西落在课桌上了。

2. Spending too much time on mobile phones can cause serious problems to our study and health.
花太多时间在手机上会给我们的学习和健康带来严重问题。
3. We should have set off earlier to avoid being caught in the heavy traffic.
我们本应该早点出发,以避免遇上严重堵车。
4. You may feel it a waste of time to have training now, but it will benefit you a lot in the long run.
你现在可能觉得参加培训是浪费时间,但从长远来看,它会让你受益匪浅。
5. When it comes to safety, we cannot be too careful in our daily life.
说到安全问题,我们在日常生活中再怎么小心也不为过。

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Weddings are important celebrations around the world, but the customs vary greatly from culture to culture. In Western countries, a typical wedding usually includes a church ceremony and a reception.

Before the wedding, the bride and groom may have a bachelor party and a bachelorette party respectively. On the wedding day, the bride wears a white dress, which symbolises purity. The groom wears a suit. The ceremony is often presided over by a priest or a judge. During the ceremony, the couple exchanges vows and rings, promising to love and care for each other forever.

After the ceremony, there is a reception with food, drinks, and dancing. The newlyweds cut the wedding cake together, which symbolises their shared future. Guests give gifts to the couple to help them start their new life. In some cultures, guests also give money in envelopes as a wedding present.

In contrast, Chinese weddings have different traditions. The bride may wear a red dress, which symbolises happiness and good luck. The wedding ceremony often includes tea ceremonies where the couple serves tea to their parents to show respect. Red envelopes with money are also an important part of Chinese weddings, given by relatives and friends to the newlyweds.

Despite the differences, weddings in all cultures share the same meaning: celebrating the union of two people and wishing them a happy life together.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了世界各地不同文化中婚礼习俗的差异以及不同婚礼所共有的核心意义。

1. What does a white dress symbolise in Western weddings?
A. Happiness.　　B. Purity.
C. Good luck.　　D. Prosperity.
B　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"On the wedding day, the bride wears a white dress, which symbolises purity."可知,在西方婚礼中,白色婚纱象征着纯洁。故选B。

2. What is a common custom in both Western and Chinese weddings?
A. The bride wears white.
B. The couple exchanges rings.
C. Guests give money as gifts.
D. There is a church ceremony.
C　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"In some cultures, guests also give money in envelopes as a wedding present."和第四段中的"Red envelopes with money are also an important part of Chinese weddings, given by relatives and friends to the newlyweds."可知,宾客以礼金的形式送上祝福是中西婚礼的共同习俗。故选C。

3. What is the universal meaning of weddings?
A. Showing respect to parents.
B. Receiving expensive gifts.
C. Celebrating the couple's union and wishing them happiness.
D. Having a grand party.
C　细节理解题。根据最后一段的内容可知,婚礼的普遍意义是庆祝新人的结合并祝愿他们幸福。故选C。

4. What is the passage talking about?
A. The history of Western weddings.
B. Different wedding customs around the world.
C. The importance of Chinese weddings.
D. How to plan a perfect wedding.
B　主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段中的"Weddings are important celebrations around the world, but the customs vary greatly from culture to culture."可知,文章主要介绍了世界各地不同文化中的婚礼习俗。故选B。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Master the Key expressions of the text.
2. Understand the true meaning and spirit of festivals.
3. Distinguish facts from opinions in the text.
4. Clarify the structure of the text, and understand the content of the text.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you make an **effort** to do something, you try very hard to do it. 努力
2. With the world becoming a **global** village, I find it necessary to have a good command of English. 全球的
3. She's Italian by birth but is now an Australian **citizen**. 公民
4. The concert will be broadcast to a worldwide television **audience** estimated at one billion. 观众
5. A **phenomenon** is something that is observed to happen or exist. 现象
6. Videos about the three years' life, which witnessed (见证) the whole **process** of our growth, were played at the graduation ceremony. 过程,进程
7. He has returned to China after studying **overseas** for ten years. 在海外,在外国

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
editor *n*. (报纸、杂志的)主编,编辑	edit *v*. 编校;编辑;剪辑,剪接
	edition *n*. 版本;版次;(报纸、杂志等的)版;(电视或广播节目、系列节目的)一集,一辑
admit *v*. (不情愿地)承认	admission *n*. 承认;入场费;允许进入;录用
loss *n*. 失去,丧失	lose *v*. 丧失
	lost *adj*. 丢失的,迷路的
exist *v*. 存在,实际上有	existence *n*. 存在

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
nationality *n*. 国籍;民族	nation *n*. 国家
	national *adj*. 全国的
retired *adj*. 退休的	retire *v*. 退休;退役
	retirement *n*. 退休
interact *v*. 互动	interaction *n*. 互动
	interactive *adj*. 互动的,相互影响的,交互式的
joy *n*. 欢欣,愉快,喜悦	joyful *adj*. 高兴的,快乐的,令人愉快的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. be keen on 喜爱;热衷于……
2. in one's opinion 在某人看来
3. have... to do with 与……有……关系
4. feel like 感觉像;想要
5. clean up 彻底打扫,清理
6. interact with 与……互动;交流

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:what, where 引导主语从句
   In my opinion, what or where we eat on Spring Festival Eve really doesn't matter.
   在我看来,我们在除夕夜吃什么或在哪里吃真的不重要。
2. 句型公式:动词-ing 形式作真正的主语
   For me, it just won't feel like Spring Festival having the dinner out.
   出去吃饭让我觉得不像是在过春节。

3. 句型公式:not only... but (also)...

It was not only for the delicious food that we seldom got to eat, but for the opportunity to have our whole family gathered together.

不仅是因为我们可以吃到平时难以吃到的美食,而且全家人也能因此有机会团聚在一起。

4. 句型公式:现在分词短语作伴随状语

I would run around the house, listening to the adults chatting about their year.

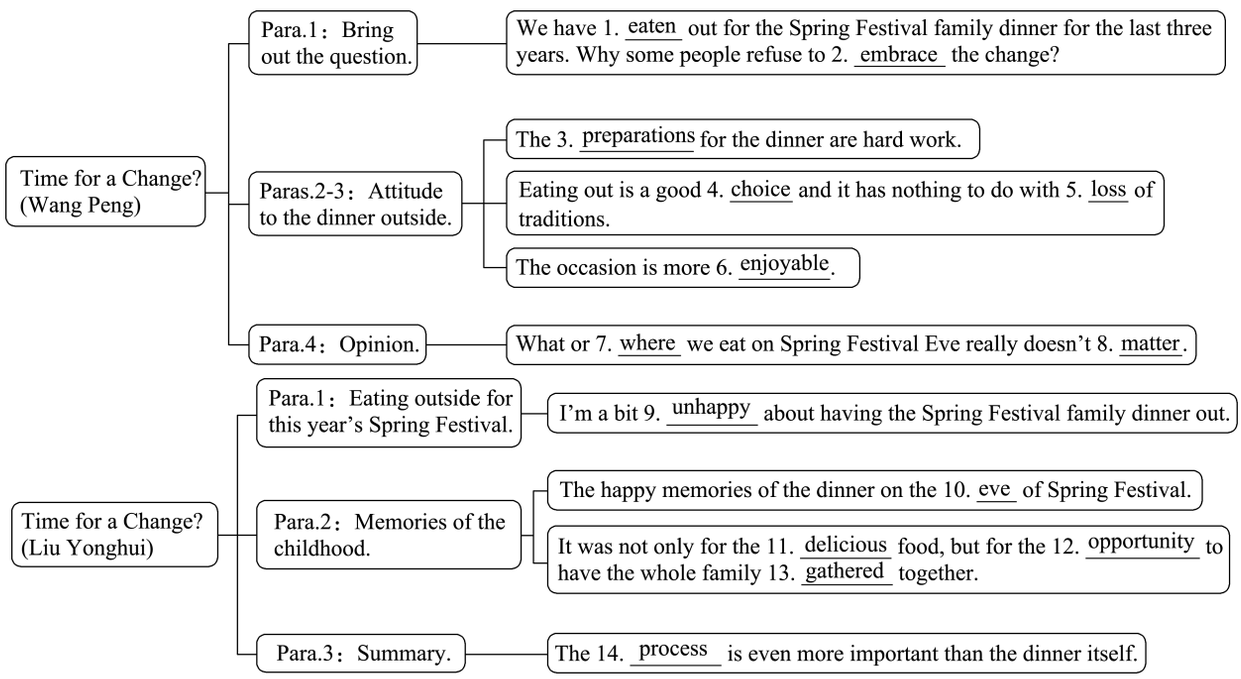
我会在家里跑来跑去,听大人们闲聊他们这一年(的情况)。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What is the main idea of the first letter?

A. Eating at home is really tiring.

B. It is important to choose a good place to eat.

C. Eating out is the best way to have the Spring Festival dinner.

D. Eating out doesn't change the love between family members.

2. What does the writer mean by saying "we have enjoyed it no less than eating at home" in Paragraph 1 of the first letter?

A. The writer doesn't like eating out.

B. The writer doesn't like eating at home.

C. Both eating at home and eating out are enjoyable.

D. Eating at home is more enjoyable than eating out.

3. Why does eating out have nothing to do with loss of traditions in the first letter?

A. Because the dishes taste better.

B. Because we eat in a different place.

C. Because we can avoid the tiring cooking.

D. Because we still celebrate it with our family.

4. Why is the writer unhappy about eating the Spring Festival family dinner out in the second letter?

A. He thinks it lacks the feeling of Spring Festival.

B. His son booked a table without his permission.

C. He can cook delicious food himself.

D. It is too expensive.

答案:1～4 DCDA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. When I was a little boy, the dinner on the eve of Spring Festival was what I looked forward to most.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。When 引导时间状语从句，在主句中 what 引导表语从句，on the eve of Spring Festival 是介词短语作定语，修饰 the dinner。

[尝试翻译]小时候，除夕的年夜饭是我最盼望的。

2. I would run around the house, listening to the adults chatting about their year.

[句子分析]listening to...在本句中为现在分词短语作伴随状语，表示与谓语动词 run around 的动作同时发生，而 chatting about... 是现在分词短语作宾语补足语。

[尝试翻译]我会在家里跑来跑去，听大人们闲聊他们这一年(的情况)。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Why does Wang Peng choose to eat out for the Spring Festival family dinner?

Because he wants to spend more time with his family and relaxing.

2. Can you think of any other Chinese festival traditions? Share them with the class.

略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. admit *v*.(不情愿地)承认；准许……加入，招收；准许……进入

[**教材原文**]Can't they **admit** that the preparations for the dinner are hard work?

难道他们不觉得准备年夜饭很辛苦吗？

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)admit doing/having done sth. 承认做了某事

admit sb./sth. to be... 承认某人/某事是……

admit to sb. that... 向某人承认……

be admitted to/into... 被……接收(入学、入院等)；被准许进入……

(2)admission *n*. 承认；入场费；允许进入；录用

【语境助记】

Finally, the boy who had **been admitted to/into** a key university **admitted that** the doorman **admitted him into** the cinema which can **admit** 800 people.

最终，这位已经被一所重点大学录取的男生承认看门人准许他进入了这个能容纳 800 人的电影院。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① Her father admitted forgetting/having forgotten (forget) her birthday because of busy work and apologised to her.

②Finally, I had to admit my friend's plan to be (be) better than mine.

③ No one can go into the room without my admission (admit).

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之情景描写)意识到我确实冤枉了他，我真诚地向他道歉并**承认了我的错误**。

Realising I really wronged him, I sincerely apologised to him and admitted my mistake.

②(应用文写作之邀请信)我们学校的乒乓球队现在**正招收新队员**，我想邀请你加入。

The table tennis team of our school is admitting new members right now so I would like to invite you to join.

③(应用文写作之推荐信)即将到来的汉语演讲比赛**被认为是**外国人提高汉语口语的**好机会**。

The upcoming Chinese speech contest is admitted to be a good chance for foreigners to improve their oral Chinese.

2. effort *n*. 力气，精力

[**教材原文**]I really don't think it's worth the **effort** of spending so much time preparing for a single meal, and then another hour cleaning up the mess after it's over.

我真的认为花这么多时间准备一顿饭，然后在餐后再花一个小时清理这堆烂摊子是不值得的。

[**归纳拓展**]

make efforts to do sth. 努力做某事

spare no effort to do sth. 不遗余力地做某事

in an effort to do sth. 为了做某事/试图要做某事

with effort 努力地，艰难地

without effort 容易地，不费力地

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① The strong young man removed the rock without effort.

②We'll spare no effort to help (help) you, but you must get prepared to meet all kinds of difficulties.

③I am sure that with great effort, you will enjoy a colourful and fruitful life here.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)当面对这些问题时,我们应该**尽一切努力改善现状**。

When facing these problems, we should make every effort to improve the present situation.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)让我们**共同努力,创造**一个绿色和谐的环境。

Let's make joint efforts to create a green and harmonious environment.

3. exist *v*. 存在,实际上有

[**教材原文**]A fact is something that **exists** or has happened, for example, an object, event or experience.

事实是存在或已经发生的事物,例如物品、事件或经历。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)exist in 存在于……(相当于 lie in)

exist on 依靠……生存,依靠……生活(相当于 live on)

(2)existence *n*. 存在

come into existence 开始存在;产生;成立

(3)existing *adj*. 现存的,现行的

名师点拨

exist 是不及物动词,不用于被动语态,通常不用于进行时。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①It was impossible for them to exist on such a low income (收入).

②Happiness does not exist in wealth.

③As is known to all, matter exists (exist) in three states: solid, liquid and gas.

④Scientists have many theories about how the universe first came into existence.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之通知)在我们学校,自行车停车位是**一个**长久以来**存在的问题**。

The parking place for bikes was an existing problem for a long time in our school.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)只有学会**与大自然和谐共处**,我们才不会成为野生生物和地球的威胁。

Only when we learn to exist in harmony with nature can we stop being a threat to wildlife and to our planet.

4. not only... but (also)...

[**教材原文**]It was **not only** for the delicious food that we seldom got to eat, **but** for the opportunity to have our whole family gathered together.

不仅是因为我们可以吃到平时难以吃到的美食,而且全家人也能因此有机会团聚在一起。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1) not only... but (also)... 表示"不但……而且……",用于连接平行结构:名词、代词、动词(短语)、非谓语动词、介词短语、句子等。

(2)not only... but (also)... 连接两个并列主语时,谓语动词与 but (also)后的主语在人称和数上保持一致。

(3)not only... but (also)... 连接两个并列分句,且 not only 位于句首时,not only 后的分句需部分倒装,but(also)后的分句不用倒装。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①Not only you but also he is (be) going to attend the meeting tomorrow.

②Not only does this café serve up drinks, it also serves up smiles.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之推荐信)毫无疑问,体育活动**不仅能丰富我们的学校生活,而且能使我们更强壮**。

There's no doubt that the sport events can not only enrich our school life, but also make us stronger.

②(应用文写作之通知)在参观这次展览时,我们**不仅能欣赏民间艺术作品**,而且还会对中国传统文化有更好的了解。

While visiting this exhibition, not only will we enjoy the folk artworks but also we will have a better understanding of traditional Chinese culture.(倒装句)

多义词汇 专练

Only on special **occasions** would they take it out and let us hold it in our hands. A

A. *n*. 场合　　B. *n*. 理由　　C. *n*. 时机

Unit 2 课后素养评价（八）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. Does life exist（存在）on other planets?
2. The Chinese nation consists of fifty-six nationalities（民族）, each having their own characteristics.
3. Losses and deaths caused by earthquakes can be reduced with humans' effort(s)（努力）.
4. The cartoon shows a common phenomenon（现象）that children are the focus of families, shouldering the hope of their parents.
5. As well as winning the recognition from the audience（观众）at home, the movie has attracted many foreigners' attention.
6. What the government is carrying out is an important project, which will benefit the citizens（公民）in many aspects.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. He was fired by the company because of the huge loss/losses (lose) caused by the mistakes he had made.
2. The retired (retire) man enjoys painting and planting some flowers in his daily life.
3. He is unwilling to admit cheating (cheat) in the exam to his classmates.
4. Although this idea is very good, not everyone is keen on it.
5. To most of us, happiness has nothing to do (do) with money, but is connected with the attitude to life.
6. My minimum expectation is no less than 4,000 *yuan* because my college degree deserves that amount.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

what's more; rather than; have nothing to do with; be keen on; interact with; look forward to

1. We are looking forward to a cleaner and better environment by changing our lifestyle.
2. Most of the scientists do the job out of their passion for science rather than money.
3. Most people spend much more time interacting with digital media than they did ten years ago.
4. What one does in his free time may have nothing to do with his job.
5. Given that you are keen on the traditional Chinese festival, the Dragon Boat Festival, I am writing to introduce it to you.
6. I'm good at operating computers, and what's more, I have plenty of experience.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. The present problem is what we can do to help him out of trouble.
   目前的问题是我们能做些什么来帮助他摆脱困难。
2. My computer doesn't work and I will have it repaired this afternoon.
   我的电脑坏了，今天下午我要请人修理它。
3. This is because reading classics can not only improve our learning level but also enrich our daily life.
   这是因为读经典作品不仅能提高我们的学习水平，而且能丰富我们的日常生活。
4. Not all people are willing to do such work/All people are not willing to do such work, for it is quite hard for some of them.
   并不是所有人都愿意做这样的工作，因为它对于有些人来说太难了。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

The Lantern Festival is a traditional Chinese festival **1.** celebrated (celebrate) on the fifteenth day of the first lunar month. It comes after the Spring Festival and is seen as a joyful ending to the New Year celebrations. On this day, the moon is usually full, which makes the night bright and **2.** meaningful (meaning) for family gatherings.

One of **3.** the most popular activities is lantern watching. These lanterns **4.** that/which are usually placed in public areas attract families and friends to walk around and admire the colourful lights. The lanterns **5.** are made (make) in many shapes, such as animals, flowers, and characters from stories. The lanterns are bright enough **6.** to light (light) the night streets, creating a warm and friendly atmosphere. Many people take to **7.** visiting (visit) lantern fairs with family every year.

Another important custom is eating *yuanxiao*. These round rice balls are often filled with sweet paste like sesame or red beans. They stand **8.** for family unity and a happy life, and are meant to bring family members closer.

The festival also includes traditional performances such as lion dances and drum shows. These activities bring energy to the celebration and attract people of different **9.** ages (age). Through these traditions and shared experiences, the Lantern Festival helps pass on culture and reminds people of the value of **10.** togetherness (together).

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华，你的美国笔友 Mike 对中国的重阳节很感兴趣，想要了解一些相关内容。请你给 Mike 写一封信，简要介绍重阳节，并邀请他来中国亲自感受节日氛围。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；

3. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

参考词汇：重阳节 Double Ninth Day；菊花 chrysanthemum

Dear Mike,

How is everything with you? _____

_____

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It seems that friendship can also exist between dogs and horses. I've witnessed one inspiring case.

One morning, I went outside to feed our horse Bullet. Usually, Bullet waits eagerly at the fence for his breakfast. But this morning he stayed near a tree in the pasture's centre. As he began joyfully walking towards me, I noticed a dog lying in the tall grass beneath the tree. So this was what held Bullet's attention this morning: a homeless dog. Most of the homeless dogs shied away from our large Bullet, but this one seemed to feel safe in the shelter of the tall grass regardless of Bullet. I placed alfalfa (苜蓿) cubes inside the fence. After Bullet ate them, I'd give him some cookies he loved most.

I walked back to my porch and sat down. As Bullet ate alfalfa, the dog stood up cautiously, stared at Bullet for long and then slowly walked towards Bullet. The dog often paused and looked at me to ensure I wasn't a threat. As the dog drew closer to Bullet, I held my breath. I didn't know how Bullet would react to an animal that approached while he was eating. Knowing a horse's kick can kill a dog, I decided to scare the dog away. Just then Bullet swung his head and looked at the dog. Not minding it, he ate his food again.

The dog drew close enough to take an alfalfa cube. My heart broke as I watched the dog—a female—chewing on the alfalfa. She had to be extremely hungry to attempt to eat horse feed. I went inside the house, carried some meat and walked towards the fence. The dog soon ran to the safety of the tall grass near the tree. I put the meat down outside the fence and went back inside the house. She'd probably come for the meat when I was out of sight.

Minutes later, I realised I hadn't yet given Bullet his cookies. I took some and went back outside. Amazingly, Bullet was lying down in the grass beneath the tree with the dog next to him. I smiled at the warm scene they created.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

Knowing I carried his treat, Bullet got up quickly and ran to me. _____

_____

But Bullet didn't care as the dog jumped forward and took a cookie. _____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节　应用文写作

Dear Mike,

How is everything with you? So delighted to learn from your last letter that you are interested in the Double Ninth Day. Now I'd like to tell you some details about this festival.

Just as the name indicates, this festival comes on the ninth day of the ninth month of the Chinese lunar calendar. It can date back to the Spring and Autumn Period. On that day, family members always climb the mountains together, enjoying colourful chrysanthemums, tasting delicious desserts and respecting the old in their families.

If possible, why not come to China and enjoy the approaching Double Ninth Day with me? I am sure you will have a good time here.

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

Knowing I carried his treat, Bullet got up quickly and ran to me. The dog watched as I threw cookies over the fence. I noticed she hadn't got the courage to venture outside the fence to get the meat. I went back to the porch, trying to think of a way to make the dog overcome her fear and come for the meat. Noticing Bullet was eating, the dog began to move forward slowly, watching me all the while. "He might share his alfalfa with you, but he'll never let you eat his favourite cookies!" I said to myself.

But Bullet didn't care as the dog jumped forward and took a cookie. The dog soon swallowed the cookie, and then took more. When Bullet walked back towards the tree's shade, the dog walked along. All day long, they stayed together. The next day, Bullet still shared his food with the dog. And I managed to make the dog get out of the pasture and adopted her. Although she eventually warmed to me, she always loved Bullet's company most. They'd run joyfully together and rested together. And often Bullet touched the dog with his nose and she licked his face. I knew they had become close friends.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作
——一封表达看法的书信

○写作指导

本单元的写作目标是写一封信，就一种社会问题（现象）发表自己的观点。在写作时应注意以下三个方面：

1. 文体：应用文——表达个人看法；
2. 目的：针对某种社会现象或某一事件进行分析，表明自己的看法、态度并说明理由；
3. 内容：陈述自己的观点及理由，理由要充分合理、有说服力。

○典题示例

假如你是李华，如今世界各地掀起了学汉语的热潮。请你用英语给报社的编辑写一封信来分析产生这种现象的原因，并就这种现象可能带来的影响简要阐述自己的看法，表达自己的观点。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；
2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；
3. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear Editor,

In recent years, learning Chinese has become popular among people around the world, with the rapid development of economy in China. _____

_____

Yours,
Li Hua

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 开门见山，引入这种社会现象 2. 阐述理由，分析这种现象产生的原因及其影响 3. 总结全文，陈述自己的看法

Step 2：要点补全

①There are many reasons（很多原因）.

②More and more people are crazy about learning Chinese（热衷于学习汉语）.

③Many experts focus on（关注）ancient Chinese literature.

④Chinese civilisation is one of the oldest civilisations in the world（世界上最古老的文明之一）.

⑤Due to plenty of natural landscapes and scenery of humanities in China, a lot of foreign tourists start to travel in China（来中国旅游）.

⑥They show great interest in learning Chinese（学习汉语）.

Step 3：句式升级

①用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的①②句

There are many reasons why more and more people are crazy about learning Chinese.

②用 for 引导的并列句合并 Step 2 中的③④句

Many experts focus on ancient Chinese literature, for Chinese civilisation is one of the oldest civilisations in the world.

③用非谓语动词合并 Step 2 中的⑤⑥句

Due to plenty of natural landscapes and scenery of humanities in China, a lot of foreign tourists start to travel in China, showing great interest in learning Chinese.

Step 4：连句成篇

Dear Editor,

In recent years, learning Chinese has become popular among people around the world, with the rapid development of economy in China.

There are many reasons why more and more people are crazy about learning Chinese. Firstly,

learning Chinese will facilitate the economic trade contacts and enhance the communication with other countries. Secondly, many experts focus on ancient Chinese literature, for Chinese civilisation is one of the oldest civilisations in the world. Learning Chinese has become a necessary tool for them. Thirdly, due to plenty of natural landscapes and scenery of humanities in China, a lot of foreign tourists start to travel in China, showing great interest in learning Chinese.

In my opinion, the popularity of Chinese learning shows that our country has become stronger. We should be proud of that.

Yours,
Li Hua

○学以致用

现在,世界上有越来越多的人庆祝春节,有的国家甚至将春节定为法定假日。假设你是李华,请你针对这种现象给报社编辑写一封信来表达你的看法。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Editor,

_____

_____

Yours,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Editor,

It seems that more and more countries around the world are holding celebrations of Chinese Spring Festival. I think the reasons are as follows.

First, millions of Chinese spend their holiday overseas during Spring Festival, bringing huge tourism benefits to their popular destinations. This greatly contributes to the spread of Chinese Spring Festival. Second, with Chinese economy developing rapidly, more and more people realise they must learn more about Chinese culture if they want to cooperate with their Chinese partners.

All in all, I think this phenomenon is a reflection of China's economic boom and I believe more Chinese culture will be accepted by the world.

Yours,
Li Hua

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Grandma got Grandpa out of bed and helped him to the kitchen for breakfast. After his meal, she led him to his armchair in the living room where he would rest while she cleaned the dishes. Every so often, she would check to see if he needed anything.

This was their daily routine after Grandpa's latest stroke (中风). Although Grandpa was once a very active, strong and healthy man, his badly damaged left arm, difficult walking and slurred (含混不清) speech now kept him housebound. For nearly a year, he hadn't even been to church or visited family. Grandpa filled his hours with television. He watched the news and game shows while Grandma went about her day. They made an agreement—he was not to leave his chair or his bed without her assistance.

Grandma was friendly, outgoing and unselfish. Grandpa was reserved and devoted to his family. But he didn't like giving gifts. He held the belief that if you treated your wife well throughout the year, presents weren't necessary, so he rarely bought gifts for her.

It was a typical cold winter morning in New York. As always, Grandma walked Grandpa to his chair. "I'm going to take a shower now," she said, handing him the television remote. "If you need anything, I'll be back in a little while."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

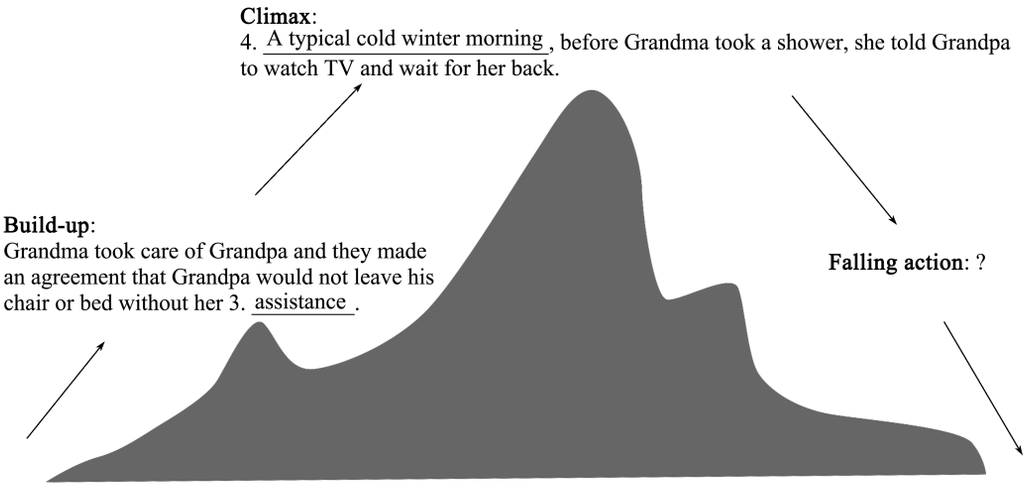
After her shower, she glanced towards the back of Grandpa's chair but noticed that his walking stick was not in its usual place. _____

_____

As she stood alone on the street desperately, Grandpa walked around the corner. _____

_____

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1： After her shower, she glanced towards the back of Grandpa's chair but noticed that his walking stick was not in its usual place. _____	**1.** Finding that Grandpa was gone, how did Grandma feel? She thought Grandpa had gone outside and felt very worried about his safety. **2.** What might happen to Grandpa in Grandma's mind? Grandpa might fall to the ground and get injured or lost in the street. **3.** What might Grandma do next? Grandma might keep looking for Grandpa wherever she thought possible.
Paragraph 2： As she stood alone on the street desperately, Grandpa walked around the corner.	**1.** How would Grandma react as soon as she saw Grandpa? She scolded Grandpa for going out alone. **2.** Why did Grandpa leave home alone? Grandpa bought a present for Grandma. **3.** Knowing the reason, how did Grandma feel? Grandma was very surprised and moved.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. She had a horrible feeling（她有一种不好的预感）that Grandpa was gone.

2. So fearful was Grandma that she grabbed her coat and rushed out（她抓起外套冲到外面）.

3. What if he fell down（他摔倒了）?

4. What if he was hit by a car（他被车撞了）?

5. Grandma couldn't help having these thoughts（禁不住有了这些想法）.

6. Regardless of the freezing cold air（不顾刺骨的寒风），Grandma kept looking for Grandpa wherever she thought possible, but without success.

7. Every small step was difficult（每一步都很艰难）for him.

8. Quickly Grandma walked up to him（走到他跟前）and began to scold him.

9. What's so urgent that（如此紧急以至于）you couldn't wait?

10. Do you know how worried I was (我多么担心)?
11. After saying these, her eyes were moist (她的眼睛湿润了).
12. Grandpa just smiled and passed her a delicate box (递给她一个精美的盒子).
13. Now I can't treat you well throughout the year and the only thing I can do for you (我能为你做的唯一一件事) is to buy you a gift.
14. Open the box to see if you like it (来看看你是否喜欢它).
15. His slurred words warmed the cold winter morning (温暖了这个寒冷的冬日清晨).
16. Tears flooded Grandma's eyes (泪水从奶奶的眼里涌出) as she took Grandpa's arm and led him back home.

任务四:连句成篇,完整呈现。

【参考范文】

After her shower, she glanced towards the back of Grandpa's chair but noticed that his walking stick was not in its usual place. She had a horrible feeling that Grandpa was gone. So fearful was Grandma that she grabbed her coat and rushed out. What if he fell down? What if he was hit by a car? Grandma couldn't help having these thoughts. Regardless of the freezing cold air, Grandma kept looking for Grandpa wherever she thought possible, but without success.

As she stood alone on the street desperately, Grandpa walked around the corner. Every small step was difficult for him. Quickly Grandma walked up to him and began to scold him, "What's so urgent that you couldn't wait? Do you know how worried I was?" After saying these, her eyes were moist. Grandpa just smiled and passed her a delicate box, "Now I can't treat you well throughout the year and the only thing I can do for you is to buy you a gift. Open the box to see if you like it." His slurred words warmed the cold winter morning. Tears flooded Grandma's eyes as she took Grandpa's arm and led him back home.

单元质量评估(二)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

The Big Retreat Festival

1—4 JUNE

PEMBROKESHIRE

The Big Retreat Festival offers four days to relax in the wilds of West Wales. Reconnect with yourself and nature with access to over 300 carefully organised experiences: fitness, yoga, talks, workshops, live music and more.

Cost: £82.50

North Wessex Downs Walking Festival

5—13 JUNE

NORTH WESSEX DOWNS

A varied programme of walks across the North Wessex Downs will take place during the festival, including 27 walks and family-friendly events, some of which are free. You can find wildlife or history, visit a working farm or enjoy the views from the top of the downs together with knowledgeable and welcoming guides.

Cost: varies

Moray Walking & Outdoor Festival

16—25 JUNE

MORAY

From the foothills of the Cairngorms to Moray's beautiful coastline, enjoy long summer days discovering the area's natural, historical and cultural landscape during this 10-day festival. It offers a wide range of rambles (散步) and other activities, including history walks.

Cost: varies

Wrexham Walking Festival

3—11 JUNE

WREXHAM

Walkers in Wrexham in North Wales invite you to join them on nine days of free guided walks in the area, located between the Welsh mountains and the

lower Dee Valley, offering beautiful borderland scenery. All walks will be led by trained volunteer walk leaders and are graded easy, medium and hard.

Cost: free

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了四个步行节。

1. On which date could a visitor enjoy a festival that offers live music?

A. 1 June. B. 5 June.

C. 13 June. D. 25 June.

A 细节理解题。根据 **The Big Retreat Festival** 部分中的"The Big Retreat Festival offers four days to relax in the wilds of West Wales. Reconnect with yourself and nature with access to over 300 carefully organised experiences: fitness, yoga, talks, workshops, live music and more."可知,该节日包含现场音乐活动,契合音乐爱好者需求;其举办时间为6月1日至6月4日。因此,音乐爱好者最有可能在6月1日参加。故选A。

2. Which event is most likely to attract families?

A. The Big Retreat Festival.

B. Wrexham Walking Festival.

C. Moray Walking & Outdoor Festival.

D. North Wessex Downs Walking Festival.

D 细节理解题。根据 **North Wessex Downs Walking Festival** 部分中的"A varied programme of walks across the North Wessex Downs will take place during the festival, including 27 walks and family-friendly events, some of which are free."可知,该节日明确举行家庭友好型活动,适配家庭出行需求。因此,这一节日可能最受家庭欢迎。故选D。

3. What do we know about Wrexham Walking Festival?

A. It will last half a month.

B. It is not beginner-friendly.

C. It will be led by trained guides.

D. It requires a payment to attend.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Wrexham Walking Festival** 部分中的"All walks will be led by trained volunteer walk leaders and are graded easy, medium and hard."可知其会有受过培训的向导带队。故选C。

B

When my daughter was diagnosed with a rare disease in 2015, I lost myself in the endless pursuit to save her. I began to dive into different communities to find anything and everything I could to help her. I spent most of my time researching and making phone calls. We would end up travelling to Philly every year, sometimes many times a year.

We were not prepared for everything that was to come in the following years. At 2 years old, Jordyn took her first step. She had her first disease attack, but it didn't seem to affect her development. But in the summer of 2018, Jordyn had a horrible attack. She hasn't been the same since. She gradually lost her ability to crawl, walk and even sit up on her own. She now struggles to hold her head up and her energy level has dropped too low.

I've gotten really good at dealing with my emotion. Looking back, I guess I've always been that way. It takes a lot of energy for a mother to know that only a miracle will keep her daughter. The truth is, though, sometimes I just want to scream. It's the lie I tell myself that I can keep moving forward.

Hug your babies tight and appreciate them for every little thing they can do. Be in the moment and try to give them space when they make a mistake. It's not a sign of weakness, but rather, a sign of bravery.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在女儿被诊断出患有一种罕见的疾病后的经历及感受。

4. Why would the author go to Philly?

A. To get a new job.

B. To find ways to cure her daughter.

C. To visit different communities.

D. To do research on the rare disease.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"When my daughter was diagnosed with a rare disease in 2015, I lost myself in the endless pursuit to save her."和"We would end up travelling to Philly every year, sometimes many times a year."可知,作者去费城是为了寻找治愈女儿病情的方法。故选B。

5. What can be inferred from the second paragraph?

A. Jordyn loved to hold her head up.

B. Jordyn learned to walk at an early age.

C. Jordyn got into a worse situation.

D. Jordyn was born with a rare disease.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"But in the summer of 2018, Jordyn had a horrible attack.

She hasn't been the same since. She gradually lost her ability to crawl, walk and even sit up on her own. She now struggles to hold her head up and her energy level has dropped too low." 可知，Jordyn 陷入了更糟糕的境地。故选 C。

6. How does the author keep on moving?

A. By making phone calls.

B. By lying to herself.

C. By controlling her emotion.

D. By looking back on memories.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"It's the lie I tell myself that I can keep moving forward."可知，作者靠欺骗自己继续前进。故选 B。

7. What is the author's suggestion?

A. Giving love to children.

B. Giving space to children.

C. Showing bravery to children.

D. Showing weakness to children.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"Be in the moment and try to give them space when they make a mistake."可知，作者建议给孩子足够的空间。故选 B。

C

The Historical Origins of Chinese New Year's Eve can be traced back more than 3,000 years before the Shang Dynasty. At that time, people held ceremonies at the end of the year to honour the gods and their ancestors. Over time, the celebration slowly changed, adding different religious and cultural elements from each dynasty.

During the Han Dynasty, the festival became more important. Rituals to worship (祭祀) ancestors and gods were common, and setting off firecrackers to scare away evil spirits grew popular. The Tang and Song dynasties added more customs, such as putting up Spring Festival couplets and giving red envelopes. These traditions were closely connected to old beliefs and farming life, with the hope of bringing a good harvest and luck for the next year. By the Ming and Qing dynasties, Chinese New Year's Eve had become a time for family reunion, shown in the tradition of the big family dinner. This history shows how the festival mixed cultural, historical, and family elements to become what it is today.

Chinese New Year's Eve is deeply meaningful in culture. It represents the refreshment of life and the start of a new cycle. It is a time for family, marking both an end and a new beginning. The reunion dinner on this night is especially important because it epitomises unity and togetherness, which are key values in Chinese culture. This meal is not just about food; it is a special moment for family members to come together, give thanks, share good wishes, and hope for happiness and success in the coming year.

The influence of Chinese New Year's Eve now reaches far beyond China. Chinese communities all over the world celebrate it, often adding their own local customs. Through these global celebrations, Chinese New Year's Eve not only helps preserve Chinese cultural traditions but also builds cross-cultural understanding and appreciation.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了中国除夕的起源、文化意义以及全球影响。

8. According to the passage, when did the custom of hanging Spring Festival couplets originate?

A. During the Shang Dynasty.

B. During the Han Dynasty.

C. During the Ming and Qing dynasties.

D. During the Tang and Song dynasties.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"The Tang and Song dynasties added more customs, such as putting up Spring Festival couplets and giving red envelopes."可知，贴春联的习俗起源于唐宋时期。故选 D。

9. What is the main purpose of the reunion dinner on Chinese New Year's Eve as described in the passage?

A. To worship ancestors and gods.

B. To ensure a bountiful harvest in the coming year.

C. To express gratitude, share blessing, and wish for happiness.

D. To ward off evil spirits with noise and fire.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"This meal is not just about food; it is a special moment for family members to come together, give thanks, share good wishes, and hope for happiness and success in the coming year."可知，除夕团圆饭的主要目的是表达感激、分享祝福和祈求幸福。故选 C。

10. What does the underlined word "epitomises" in Paragraph 3 probably mean?

A. Complicates. B. Idealises.

C. Shows. D. Questions.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句"The reunion dinner on this night is especially important because it epitomises unity and

togetherness, which are key values in Chinese culture."可知，团圆饭体现了团结和团聚，这是中国文化的核心价值观。由此可推测，画线词意为"体现"。故选C。

11. Which of the following would be the most suitable title for the passage?

A. The Historical Roots of Chinese New Year's Eve

B. From Ancient Rituals to Global Celebration: The Story of Chinese New Year's Eve

C. Family Reunion: The Core of Chinese New Year's Eve

D. The Role of Food in Shaping Chinese New Year's Eve

B 标题归纳题。通读全文可知，第一段介绍了除夕的历史起源，第二段讲述了其在不同朝代的演变，第三段阐述了其文化内涵，第四段提到了其在全球的传播。B项"从古代仪式到全球庆典：中国除夕的故事"最能概括文章的主要内容。故选B。

D

For the Bai people, tea is a popular drink. They normally drink tea twice a day, in the early morning and at noon. The tea drunk in the early morning is called "morning tea" or "wakening tea", and is consumed（喝）immediately after getting up. The tea drunk at noon is called "relaxing tea" or "thirst-satisfying tea". People often add some popcorn and milk to their tea.

The Bai people have formed their unique tea culture on tea drinking, which is called "Three-course Tea of the Bai Ethnic Minority（少数民族）". In the Ming and Qing dynasties, the Three-course Tea had already become a conventional way that the Bai ethnic minority treated visitors.

The Three-course Tea is a tea drinking ceremony practised by the Bai ethnic minority on holidays or when treating honoured guests. Every course has different taste implying the philosophy of life that "bitter the first, sweet the second and aftertaste the third". This ceremony was originally held by the senior members or the most revered member of a family.

For the first course of tea, the tea needs to be put into a small pottery jar first and roasted on fire until the tea leaves become yellow and give off a burnt smell. After added with boiled water, the tea is ready for drink in small cups. It is amber in colour with rich fragrance and a bitter taste, meaning that one will suffer a lot before he or she starts his or her career.

By adding new water into the jar, boiling and pouring the tea into a bowl with brown sugar and walnuts, the second course of tea is done. The tea is fragrant and sweet, symbolising the meaning of "no sweet without sweat".

The third course is made through pouring boiled tea into a bowl with honey and Sichuan pepper. The tea is sweet, bitter and spicy with great aftertaste, which implies that we need to remain a peaceful frame of mind after having been through all tastes.

The Three-course Tea of the Bai Ethnic Minority became a ceremony for treating guests or friends of the Bai people, delivering to people the profound connotation of treating life and careers with an ordinary and peaceful mindset.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了中国白族独具特色的茶文化——白族三道茶。

12. What is implied in the first paragraph?

A. The tea drunk at noon is more important than that drunk in the morning.

B. Milk replaces tea in Bai's unique culture.

C. People must mix tea with milk for satisfaction.

D. The Bai people drink tea to be fresh in the morning.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"The tea drunk in the early morning is called 'morning tea' or 'wakening tea', and is consumed（喝）immediately after getting up."可知，白族人早上喝茶是为了提神醒脑。故选D。

13. What does the second course of tea taste?

A. Bitter. B. Spicy.

C. Sweet. D. Salty.

C 细节理解题。根据第五段的内容可知，第二道茶是甜的。故选C。

14. What do people expect to do after tasting the third course of tea?

A. Understand the tastes of different careers.

B. Learn about the suffering of life.

C. Treat life with a calm attitude.

D. Realise the importance of hard work.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"The tea is sweet, bitter and spicy with great aftertaste, which implies that we need to remain a peaceful frame of mind after having been through all tastes."可知，人们期望在品尝第三道茶后，能以平和的心态对待生活。故选C。

15. What does the Three-course Tea reflect?

A. The philosophy of life.
B. The sincerity of the Bai people.
C. The art of drinking tea.
D. The value of tea culture.

A　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"Every course has different taste implying the philosophy of life that 'bitter the first, sweet the second and aftertaste the third'."可知，三道茶反映了一种人生哲理。故选A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Volunteering is a great way to help your community. It is something that people should be doing more often, because it is a great way to help out those less fortunate. Another reason that you should volunteer is that it has a lot of health benefits, which people don't seem to really know about. **16** .

Reduce depression.

Volunteering is a great way to decrease depression, especially if you are someone who doesn't have a great support system at home. **17** . When you are volunteering, you are around other people often talking and laughing, which helps reduce depression.

18 .

A lot of volunteering involves packing boxes or moving things, and that is very good for your heart. You can actually walk the dogs and clean cages at a local animal shelter, which are all ways to stay active. If you are volunteering to do something you love, you may not even notice that it takes a great deal of physical energy, so it's much better than just working out because you enjoy it.

Make you feel satisfied.

When you do voluntary work, you feel this satisfaction out of what you are doing, because you know you are helping other people. When you feel this satisfaction, your mental and physical health improves, and you just feel better overall (大体上). **19** . And this is something that volunteering provides.

Reduce anxiety.

20 . When you start volunteering, you find new ways to communicate with other people. It helps reduce your anxiety levels. It can help you find ways to interact with others and can help you build confidence around others.

A. Help you stay active
B. The results are as follows
C. Build up your mental strength
D. Here are four health benefits you can get through volunteering
E. If you always feel embarrassed at new social occasions, then volunteer
F. A lot of people become depressed because they don't have friends or families
G. In order to stay healthy, you have to keep a balance between your mind and body

答案：16～20　DFAGE

Ⅲ. 完形填空

I was walking home from school one day and it happened to be a particularly cold and windy day. It was 21 and I was crazy enough to forget my hat and scarf. You can imagine my cheeks were rosy 22 and my hands were as numb (麻木的) as they could be.

All of a sudden, an old lady 23 up beside me and asked if I would like a ride 24 . At first, I said it was OK and her 25 smile melted (融化) away the thought that I should never talk to 26 ! We had an amazing chat and she was just 27 a good woman. She told me her 28 and she dropped me off.

I didn't see her or talk to her for about a month, and one night, as I 29 her kind gesture, I decided to return the favour. So, I made a lot of 30 and walked down to her house with my friend. At first, I was a bit 31 she wouldn't remember me or think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies, but luckily, I was 32 wrong. She was so happy, and she hugged me and kissed me and seemed so 33 that someone would do something like that!

When I got home, my mum told me that she 34 and told my mum on the phone that she 35 because she was so touched. She said she would never forget the kindness that was given to her!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者去看望在一个寒冷的天气里让自己搭车回家的老妇人的经历，并认识到没有什么事情比帮助他人更能让人感到快乐了。

21. A. blowing　　B. freezing
C. flowing　　D. flying

B　根据上文的"a particularly cold and windy day"可知，天气非常寒冷(freezing)。故选B。

22. A. red　　B. pure
C. white　　D. pale

A　根据上文的"forget my hat and scarf"可知，在这么冷的天气里没有戴帽子和围巾，"我"的脸被冻得通红(red)。故选A。

23. A. picked B. turned
C. drove D. took
C 根据下文的“asked if I would like a ride”可知，一位老妇人开车（drove）到“我”身旁，问“我”是否需要搭车。故选C。

24. A. hospital B. family
C. school D. home
D 根据上文的“I was walking home from school...”可知，“我”是在放学回家（home）的路上。故选D。

25. A. warm B. easy
C. simple D. strange
A 根据下文的“melted（融化）away the thought”可知，这位老妇人温暖的（warm）笑容打消了“我”原有的想法。故选A。

26. A. women B. drivers
C. strangers D. neighbours
C 根据上文内容可知，“我”与这位老妇人素不相识，此处是说她温暖的笑容打消了“我”不应该与陌生人（strangers）说话的想法。故选C。

27. A. so B. such
C. that D. as
B 通过聊天“我”发现她是如此好的一个人。“such＋a(n)＋形容词＋单数名词”为固定结构，表示“如此……的一个……”。故选B。

28. A. numbers B. car
C. family D. address
D 根据下文的“walked down to her house with my friend”可知，这位老妇人告诉了“我”她的地址（address）。故选D。

29. A. remembered B. forgot
C. repeated D. regretted
A 根据下文的“I decided to return the favour”可知，一个晚上，“我”想起了（remembered）这位老妇人的善行，“我”决定为她做一点事情。故选A。

30. A. bread B. salad
C. cookies D. sweets
C 根据下文的“think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies”可知，“我”为她做了很多饼干（cookies）。故选C。

31. A. nervous B. disappointed
C. confused D. worried
D 根据下文的“she wouldn't remember me or think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies”可知，“我”担心（worried）她不记得“我”或把“我”当成坏人。故选D。

32. A. generally B. completely
C. hardly D. usually
B 根据下文的“She was so happy, and she hugged me and kissed me...”可知，事实证明“我”的想法完全（completely）错误，她看到“我”很高兴并热情地拥抱、亲吻了“我”。故选B。

33. A. puzzled B. surprised
C. satisfied D. fearful
B 根据下文的“that someone would do something like that”可知，“我”的做法让她感到很惊讶（surprised）。故选B。

34. A. visited B. came
C. drove D. called
D 根据下文的“told my mum on the phone”可知，这位老妇人打电话（called）给“我”妈妈。故选D。

35. A. cried B. slept
C. left D. laughed
A 根据下文的“because she was so touched”可知，她感动得哭了（cried）。故选A。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

In China, the twelfth month of the lunar year is called “La month”, and the **36.** eighth (eight) day of the twelfth lunar month is “Laba Festival”, **37.** which is a traditional Chinese holiday to worship the ancestors and deities and pray for harvest and good fortune. The most popular tradition on the festival is **38.** making (make) and eating Laba porridge, which serves **39.** as a symbol of good fortune, long life, and fruitful harvest.

The festival is also a day **40.** when people put garlic in vinegar to pickle for more than 20 days before the Chinese New Year. The Laba garlic will **41.** be eaten (eat) on Chinese New Year's Day as a special festival dish. There are many other **42.** customs (custom) on the Laba Festival. For example, people in Yi County, East China's Anhui Province, eat Laba tofu on that day. In Xining City, Northwest China's Qinghai Province, locals eat wheat kernel rice **43.** boiled (boil) with beef and mutton. In northern Shaanxi Province, people **44.** usually (usual) eat Laba noodle soup. In some areas, a custom of eating ice is preserved. Apart from preparing the dining table, families throughout the country undertake a thorough house clean on this day, **45.** sweeping (sweep) out the old in preparation for the Chinese New Year.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

为了传播中华文化，元宵节你要带你的英国朋友Tom去街上看花灯，并向他介绍该节日的一些相关知识。请根据以下要点用英语介绍元宵节：

元宵节是中国的传统节日，每年正月十五人们都

要举办许多活动，比如吃汤圆、赏花灯、猜灯谜、踩高跷、舞狮子等。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

参考词汇：猜灯谜 guess riddles；踩高跷 walk on stilts；舞狮子 do lion dancing

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once, many years ago, I pulled a family out of a burning car somewhere in the middle of Wyoming. Last week, I received a telephone call from a woman who could not stop crying as she told me that one of my stories had saved her son from negative thoughts. In the end, she called me a hero.

That got me thinking about what a hero really is. Was I a hero because I pulled a family from a burning car? If so, how could I be a hero just because I wrote a story that saved someone's heart?

Today, I decided to look up the word "hero" in the dictionary to see what it exactly meant. It read "a person who does something brave". As I read on, it also said "a person who is good and noble".

That statement impressed me more than the part about being brave.

It got me thinking about something very important. Say I was walking into the local supermarket and I happened to open, and hold the door for someone out of politeness. As they passed by me, I said, "How are you today?" Most of the time that would be no big deal, but this time, let's say it was for someone who is deeply depressed and near the end of the rope. That may well be the only kindness or politeness shown to them in a very long time.

Having been near "the end of my rope", after my marriage of twenty years ended, I was in such a condition. I was within hours of trying to get up enough nerve to end the pain and misery. When I returned home, someone had sent me a card in the mail which told me how much they appreciated me as a friend. That wonderful card probably saved my life. That person, without even knowing it, saved a life and became a hero.

I went on to write many stories which last week saved the life of a teenage boy. In turn that makes the person who sent me the card a double hero.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

I suppose that is why I fight so hard to help the children now living in orphanages (孤儿院). _____

_____

Well, who would have ever thought that anyone could become a hero? _____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节　应用文写作

The Lantern Festival is a traditional festival in China. It falls on the fifteenth day of the first month of the Chinese lunar calendar. As every Chinese person knows, families get together on the day of the festival and eat *tangyuan*. In the evening, people go out to view the bright and colourful lanterns, which is relaxing and pleasant. In some parts of China, people take part in activities, such as guessing riddles, walking on stilts and doing lion dancing.

On the whole, the Lantern Festival is an important festival in China, marking the end of the Spring Festival.

第二节　读后续写

I suppose that is why I fight so hard to help the children now living in orphanages (孤儿院). As is known to us all, most teenage boys come out from there with a very hard and offensive attitude against the world. It is true love and kindness that they are lacking in. Luckily, the gifts we sent them let them know that they have not been forgotten. They will change for the better seeing someone appreciate them in the world. Hopefully, most of them will never hurt anyone because of the kindness shown to them by those of us who cared. Similarly, if it works, we will also become "heroes".

Well, who would have ever thought that anyone could become a hero? What exactly is a hero? Now, we have made it clear that being a hero is no big deal. Anyone possibly saves a life, just by being kind and polite to others. If so, our politeness or kindness shown must be felt by people. All in all, what is the best of all is that opportunities to become a hero are accessible to whoever wishes to wear such an honour.

Unit 3 On the move

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Society", whose topic is sports and a healthy lifestyle. This unit includes a variety of sports and changes that sports bring to people. The content of this unit can enrich your cognition of different sports, guide you to pay attention to modern and traditional sports, think about the impact of sports on the body and mind, and learn how to tell their own stories about sports. You can look into different types of sports and choose one to make preparations for team sport events. Make a recommendation by listing its rules, reasons and plan a team sport event. Also, you need to reconstruct the mind map of sports and fitness, and broaden your horizons by reading the provided extensive reading materials.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	了解词汇的词根、词缀，学习词性变化的规律，并用于理解和表达有关"体育运动"主题的信息和观点。
		语法	能了解动词不定式作定语和结果状语的用法，并在真实情景中加以运用。
		语篇	初步了解柱状图的特点和功能，学习利用图表收集和整合信息。
		语用	能根据具体交际情境，正确理解他人的态度、情感和观点。
	语言技能	听	听有关太极拳的对话，了解太极拳的相关知识。
		说	能借助教材中提供的话题情景和实用表达，组织一段新的对话，对话内容为采访一位龙舟队的成员。
		读	1. 找出并理解足球这项运动风靡世界的三个原因，并基于课文内容，思考哪些运动与足球一样在中国盛行，并分析其原因； 2. 关注每个跑步者的故事背后所传达的价值观。
		写	能写一篇关于自己的体育运动的故事。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	1. 能通过了解不同的关于体育运动的词汇及句型，描述自己喜欢的体育运动； 2. 能多渠道获取英语学习资源； 3. 能选择恰当的策略与方法，监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。
文化意识	1. 能通过了解其他国家流行的体育运动，加深对不同文化的认识与理解； 2. 能通过了解不同的体育运动，并将它们与中国传统的体育运动(如太极拳)进行对比，增强对中华优秀传统文化的认同感。
思维品质	1. 能辨析不同的体育运动给人们带来的影响；能在深入理解文章的同时联系自身实际，实现知识与思维能力的迁移； 2. 能通过叙写关于自己的体育运动的故事，思考体育运动对人们身心的影响。

必备知识

必背单词	surfing, represent, goal, basis, equipment, content, factor, death, adjustable, balance, bar, upper, bone, master, response, data, power, tension, disappear, sweaty, ache, inspire, persuade, champion, involve, assure
重点表达	given that, go back, to one's heart's content, take... for example, put down, a matter of life and death, around the corner, social network, in turn, raise money, die out, as well as, work out, come across, compare... with, break down
重点知识	1. "be＋*adj.*＋to do"结构 2. before 引导时间状语从句 3. make＋宾语＋宾语补足语
单元语法	不定式作定语和结果状语
单元写作	叙述关于运动的故事

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea and guess the writing purpose.
2. Read for locating related information quickly.
3. Find the three reasons for football's popularity in the text.
4. Love sports and promote sportsmanship.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. goal *n*. 球门
2. represent *v*. 代表,表示
3. basis *n*. 基础;根据
4. content *n*. 满意,满足
5. defend *v*. (在比赛中)防守,防卫
6. equipment *n*. 装备,设备,用具
7. death *n*. 死,死亡
8. given that 考虑到;鉴于;假定
9. go back 追溯到
10. take... for example 以……为例
11. put down 放下;写下

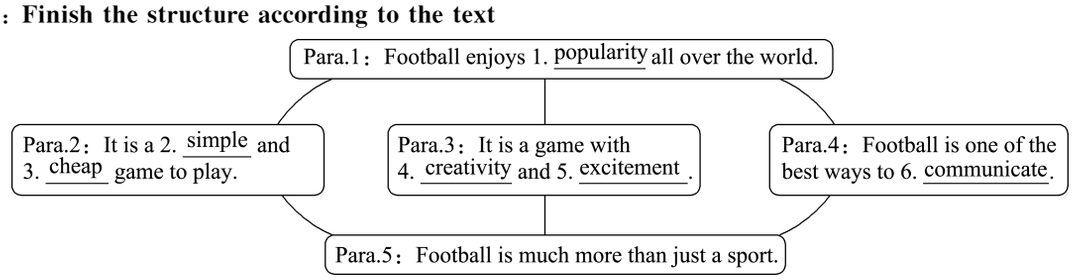
(二)阅读词汇

1. surfing *n*. 冲浪(运动)
2. factor *n*. 因素,要素
3. soldier *n*. 士兵,军人
4. conflict *n*. 武装冲突,战斗,战争
5. to one's heart's content 尽情地;心满意足地

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Which country did today's football start in?
   A. Ancient China. B. Great Britain.
   C. Germany. D. America.
2. Soldiers from which two countries played football together on Christmas Day 1914?
   A. Britain and Germany.
   B. Britain and France.
   C. Germany and France.
   D. Germany and Russia.
3. What does the author mainly talk about?
   A. Football is popular because it is simple to play.
   B. Football can bring us excitement.
   C. Football can help people to communicate.
   D. Football enjoys its popularity all over the world.

答案:1~3 BAD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Football as we know it today started in Great Britain, where the game was given new rules.
   [句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句，Football started in Great Britain 是句子主干，as we know it today 是方式状语从句。where 引导非限制性定语从句，修饰 Great Britain。
   [尝试翻译]我们今天所知道的现代足球始于英国，在那里这项运动被赋予了新的规则。
2. That football is such a simple game to play is perhaps the basis of its popularity.
   [句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句，That football is such a simple game to play 是主语从句。to play 是不定式作定语修饰 game，is perhaps the basis... 构成系表结构。
   [尝试翻译]足球是一项如此简单的运动，这也许是它受欢迎的基础。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What benefits can you get from doing sports?
   略
2. Which is the most popular sport in China? What makes it so popular?
   略

Unit 3 课后素养评价（九）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Sports festivals include various games held to honour sportsmanship. They can have modern, traditional or special-rule games, with fun as the main goal. Every festival is a test of skills, courage and the wish to be the best. Many traditional sports festivals exist, and we will look at some of them next.

Calcio Storico

Calcio Storico is one of the most ancient football festivals celebrated to date. The celebrations include three games played in late June and early July each year in honour of Florence's Patron Saint. It's held in the Italian city of Florence every year.

Litang Horse Festival

The Litang Horse Festival is a much awaited horse festival organised in the village of Litang in Sichuan Province of China. It has become a great place for Khampas（康巴人）from southern China and Xizang to trade, celebrate and ride horses. The Litang Horse Festival is held generally the first week in August and it usually runs for a week. This exciting festival helps local nomads（游牧民）live a better life.

Cheese Rolling Festival

The Cheese Rolling Festival is one of the most special events in the world today. It is held every May in England. The festival takes place on Spring Bank Holiday at Cooper's Hill, near Gloucester in the UK's Cotswolds area. It first began as a local event for the villagers of Brockworth, but now it has become a popular festival enjoyed by people all over the world.

Holmenkollen Ski Festival

The Holmenkollen Ski Festival is the world's oldest famous ski jump competition still held today. It takes place every year in Holmenkollen, a town in Oslo, Norway. Its most special part is the ski jumping tower. Since the festival started in 1892, the ski jump on the tower has been extended（扩建）18 times. Now it stands 60 metres above ground and 417 metres above sea level.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四个不同的节日，以及节日的时间和起源。

1. When is the football festival in Florence held?
   A. In spring.　　B. In summer.
   C. In autumn.　　D. In winter.
   B　细节理解题。根据 **Calcio Storico** 部分中的"The celebrations include three games played in late June and early July each year in honour of Florence's Patron Saint."可知，意大利的佛罗伦萨传统足球赛每年举办的时间是六月底和七月初，是在当地的夏季。故选 B。
2. Where can visitors meet Khampas?
   A. In Litang.
   B. In Florence.
   C. In Brockworth.
   D. In Holmenkollen.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Litang Horse Festival** 部分中的“It has become a great place for Khampas（康巴人）from southern China and Xizang to trade, celebrate and ride horses.”可知，在理塘可以见到康巴人。故选 A。

3. What is special about Holmenkollen Ski Festival?

A. It is a trade centre for local nomads.

B. It takes place in early July every year.

C. It has an extended ski jumping tower.

D. It includes activities like cheese rolling.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Holmenkollen Ski Festival** 部分中的“Its most special part is the ski jumping tower. Since the festival started in 1892, the ski jump on the tower has been extended（扩建）18 times.”可知，霍尔门科伦滑雪节最特别的地方是那座扩建了 18 次的跳台。故选 C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Swimming is an excellent form of exercise for beginners because it is gentle on the body. It does not shake your bones or damage your joints, which is effective for weight loss. Swimming improves your cardiovascular（心血管的）fitness and flexibility. **1**

If you do not know how to swim, adult lessons are often available at gyms. **2** You can learn how to more effectively work out in the pool with just a few lessons. Swimming styles include freestyle, backstroke, breaststroke and butterfly.

3 It is important that you stick to the posted guidelines, which are meant to keep the swimming pools running properly. There are different rules for different pools. But the majority request that you shower before you enter the pool.

4

You will find that there are also posted rules about using the lanes（泳道）of the pool. This simply means that the pool is divided up so multiple people can use it at the same time. At times, you may share a lane with one or more other swimmers. **5** You need to stay in the appropriate lane. Find a lane in the pool where the other swimmers are similar to you. When several swimmers are using the same lane, all swimmers swim in a counterclockwise（逆时针方向的）direction.

A. Stay in the slow lane if you're new.

B. However, it can be dangerous at times.

C. Besides, the water helps strengthen your muscles.

D. When this happens, think of it as driving on the highway.

E. If using a pool at a gym, you need to follow certain pool rules.

F. This rule helps keep the pool water clean by removing body oils and sweat.

G. Even if you learned to swim as a child, you may want to consider signing up for a class.

答案：1～5 CGEFD

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Try to master important words.

2. Remember Key expressions and use them correctly.

3. Finish the exercises by cooperating with other students.

4. Cultivate your self-learning ability by using Key expressions.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Plastic** is a material that is produced from oil by a chemical process. 塑料

2. Your **goal** as a parent is to help your child become an independent adult. 目标

3. Physical activity is an important **factor** in maintaining fitness. 因素

4. A **soldier** is a member of an army, especially a person who is not an officer. 士兵

5. **Conflict** is fighting between countries or groups of people. 冲突

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
surfing *n*. 冲浪(运动)	surf *v*. 冲浪;网上冲浪
	surfer *n*. 冲浪者;网上冲浪者
basis *n*. 基础;根据	basic *adj*. 基本的;基础的
	base *v*. 以……为根据 *n*. 基部;基地;基础
defend *v*. (在比赛中)防守,防卫	defence *n*. 防御,防卫
equipment *n*. 装备,设备,用具	equip *v*. 配备;装备
death *n*. 死,死亡	die *v*. 死亡
	dead *adj*. 死的
represent *v*. 代表,表示	representative *n*. 代表;代表性人物 *adj*. 典型的;有代表性的
	representation *n*. 代表,代理;描绘;表现;抗议;陈述

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. go back 追溯到;回去,返回
2. take... for example 以……为例
3. given that 考虑到;鉴于;假定
4. to one's heart's content 尽情地;心满意足地
5. put down 放下;写下
6. break out 爆发;突然发生
7. more than 多于;不仅仅;非常

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词短语作后置定语
   It was then known as *cuju* (kick ball), a game using a ball of animal skins with hair inside.
   当时这项运动被称为蹴鞠(意为"以脚踢球"),使用的球是由动物皮革填充毛发制成的。
2. 句型公式:as 引导方式状语从句
   Football as we know it today started in Great Britain, where the game was given new rules.
   我们今天所知道的现代足球始于英国,在那里这项运动被赋予了新的规则。
3. 句型公式:be+*adj*.+to do
   It is also a game that is very cheap to play.
   它也是一项花费很少的运动。
4. 句型公式:see+宾语+宾语补足语
   All over the world you can see kids playing to their hearts' content with a ball made of plastic bags; just like Pelé did when he was a boy.
   在世界各地,你都可以看到孩子们尽情地踢着用塑料袋团成的球——就像贝利小时候那样。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. represent *v*. 代表,表示;象征;描绘,描述;正式提出(意见等)

[教材原文] Talk about what you think these things **represent** in a football game.
谈谈你认为这些东西在足球比赛中代表着什么。

[归纳拓展]

(1) represent sb./sth. as... 把某人/某物描述为……
represent sth. to sb. 向某人说明/传达某事

(2) representative *n*. 代表;代表性人物 *adj*. 典型的;有代表性的
be representative of (=be typical of)是……的典型代表;代表……

(3) representation *n*. 代表,代理;描绘;表现;抗议;陈述

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①It took the monitor fifteen minutes to represent the key points of the meeting to his classmates.

② It is reported that a high fever is the representative (represent) symptom of the flu.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之祝贺信)你的作品在比赛中脱颖而出,**在**所有作品**中很有代表性**。
Your work stands out in the competition, which is quite representative of all the works.

②(应用文写作之申请表)我被选中**代表我的学校参加比赛**,在比赛中我可以展示我的语言技能。
I am chosen to represent my school to take part in the competition in which I can show my language skills.

2. basis *n*. 基础;根据

[教材原文]That football is such a simple game to play is perhaps the **basis** of its popularity.
足球是一项如此简单的运动,这也许是它受欢迎的基础。

[归纳拓展]

(1)on the basis of 根据;在……的基础上
on a daily/weekly basis 每天/每周

(2)base *v*. 以……为根据 *n*. 基部;基地;基础
base... on/upon... 以……为……的基础
be based on/upon 以……为基础/依据
at the base of 在……的底部

(3)basic *adj*. 基本的;基础的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国一卷)The movements of the black and white pieces reflect the basic (base) ideas of Eastern philosophy...

②One should always base his opinion on/upon facts.

③She was chosen for the job on the basis of her qualifications.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信)这部电影**是根据一个真实的故事改编的**,非常值得一看。

①The film is based on/upon a real story and it is well worth watching.

② Based on/upon a real story, the film is well worth watching.

③The film, which is based on/upon a real story, is well worth watching.

3. equipment *n*. 装备,设备,用具

[教材原文]You don't need expensive **equipment**; even the ball doesn't have to cost much money.
你不需要昂贵的装备,即使是球也不需要花很多钱。

[归纳拓展]

(1)a piece of equipment 一件装备
office/computer equipment 办公/计算机设备

(2)equip *v*. 配备;装备
equip... with... 用……装备……
be equipped with 配备着……
equip... for sth./to do sth. 为了(做)某事而装备……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Your training will equip you for your future job.

② Our school is equipped with much advanced equipment bought from abroad. (equip)

③They are going to equip the workshop with new machines in order to increase output.

④His work experience equipped him to deal (deal) with all kinds of people.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)(因为)**知识渊博,教学方法有趣**,我的英语老师在我们学生当中很受欢迎。Equipped with rich knowledge and interesting teaching methods, my English teacher is very popular among us students.(过去分词短语作状语)

4. "be+*adj*.+to do"结构

[教材原文]It is also a game that **is very cheap to play**.
它也是一项花费很少的运动。

[句式分析]本句中运用了"be+*adj*.+to do"结构。

[归纳拓展]

(1)"be+*adj*.+to do"结构中的形容词多为表示主语的性质、特征的词,如 easy, hard, difficult, interesting, heavy, pleasant, good 等。

(2)其中的不定式和句子主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系,但用主动形式表示被动意义。

(3)在这种结构中,当不定式与句子的主语有逻辑上的动宾关系且是不及物动词时,应该在该不及物动词后加上适当的介词。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Standing on the top of the mountain, he found the air was fresh to breathe (breathe).

② In my opinion, the plan designed by the manager is hard to carry (carry) out.

③ The TV programme is easy for us to understand (understand).

④In my view, the new flat we spent so much money buying is very comfortable for us to live in.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)我最尊敬的人是我的英语老师,他在学习上对我们很严格,但**在生活中很容易相处**。

The person I respect most is my English teacher, who is strict with us in study but easy to get along/on with in life.

多义词汇专练

1. goal：A. *n*. 球门　B. *n*. 进球　C. *n*. 目标

①The only **goal** was scored by Mike early in the second half. B

②(2025·全国一卷)In a Go game, each move should serve a long-term **goal**. C

③Now the US team is controlling the ball and attacking the opponent's **goal**. A

2. content：A. *n*. 目录　B. *n*. 内容　C. *v*. 使满足　D. *adj*. 满意的；满足的　E. *n*. 含量

①They reduced their products' sugar **content**. E

②(2025·全国二卷)The well-liked grandma regularly posts workout **content**, explaining there's no reason others can't look this good. B

③There is a table of **contents** in the front of the dictionary. A

④I am very **content** with his response to my invitation. D

⑤He wisely **contented** himself with his family and his love of nature. C

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. He was content to gather (gather) his strength patiently, waiting for the opportunity to achieve his goal.
2. On the basis of her qualifications and experience, she was the best person to do the job.
3. Equipped (equip) with a great collection of books on various subjects, the library becomes a valuable resource for both students and researchers.
4. We must defend these rare animals from being hunted (hunt).
5. The peace talks broke down with no agreement reached.
6. If it is a matter of life and death, we should spare no effort to solve it.
7. He is old enough to take (take) care of himself now.
8. I can assure you of my full support for your plan.
9. She saw Ellie looking (look) up, eyes wide with admiration.
10. Paper-cutting is easy to learn (learn) once you master the methods.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

go back; given that; break out; put down; to sb.'s heart's content

1. Every five minutes, he puts down his pen and looks at the clock.
2. A fierce fight broke out between the two brothers just because of a small thing.
3. With the final exam finished, the boys played basketball to their hearts' content on the playground.
4. It is said that the history of the old library in this town goes back as far as 1875.
5. Given that there's little time left, you'd better take a taxi to go there.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 如果有机会,我想向这些学生提供捐助。(虚拟语气)

   If I had the chance, I would make donations to these students.

2. 随着我们的生活改善,我们更注重均衡饮食。(as引导时间状语从句)

   As our life improves, we pay more attention to a balanced diet.

3. 工作完成了,他们出去庆祝。(with复合结构)

   With the work finished, they went out to celebrate.

4. 汤姆是一个很随和的人,而他的弟弟却很难相处。(be+*adj*.+不定式)

   Tom is an easy-going person while his brother is hard to get along with.

5. 公园里有很多人在阳光下玩得很开心。(现在分词作定语)

   In the park there are lots of people enjoying themselves in the sunshine.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

"Make me a muscle!" was my family tradition. My father would give my upper arm a squeeze (捏)

and laugh. "Very good," he'd always say. Then he would make a muscle back and ask, "Pretty __1__ for your old man, don't you think?"

My father was a __2__ member of what I would call "the Muscle Club". He loved doing exercises, from bodybuilding to martial arts. He filled our home with the energy of __3__—jump rope in the corner and the sound of kicks echoing through the garage. And __4__, my brother and I became his earliest __5__.

Our garage was a home __6__, where my father coached my brother and me: we kicked the air until our legs __7__, and boxed in old gloves. My father trained us equally, __8__ our size or age. During a boxing practice, my brother threw a quick punch (拳) right in my cheek. The __9__ made me fall backward. Hitting the ground, I burst out crying. Dad knelt down beside me, saying, "You forgot to block!" I nodded with __10__. Then he gave me a nudge, "Stand up. Show me how to __11__ yourself." I stood up slowly. When my brother threw another punch, this time I remembered to show my __12__—blocking it just in time. Dad cheered, clapping loudly.

As well as a strong body, what Dad gave me was a(n) __13__. Strength was more than about being __14__; it was about the courage to get back up. "Make me a muscle" was his way of asking: "Are you ready? Show me you're here and __15__ to keep going."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的父亲热爱运动,经常带着作者和哥哥一起锻炼。作者从中不仅收获了强壮的体魄,还学到了坚韧不拔的态度。

1. A. strong　　B. odd
C. plain　　D. awful
A　根据上文的"Make me a muscle!"以及"he would make a muscle back"可知,父亲在展示自己的肌肉,询问自己是否强壮。故选A。

2. A. keen　　B. new
C. free　　D. generous
A　根据下文的"He loved doing exercises, from bodybuilding to martial arts."可知,父亲热爱运动,是"肌肉俱乐部"的狂热成员。故选A。

3. A. tension　　B. peace
C. balance　　D. sport
D　根据下文的"jump rope in the corner and the sound of kicks echoing through the garage"可知,跳绳和踢腿声都与运动相关,说明家里充满了运动的能量。故选D。

4. A. accidentally　　B. originally
C. naturally　　D. incredibly
C　根据上文的"He filled our home with the energy of __3__—jump rope in the corner and the sound of kicks echoing through the garage."可知,家里充满了运动的能量,在父亲的影响下,作者和哥哥自然而然地成了他的学生。故选C。

5. A. friends　　B. students
C. assistants　　D. volunteers
B　根据下文的"Our garage was a home __6__, where my father coached my brother and me"可知,作者和哥哥成了父亲的学生。故选B。

6. A. office　　B. gym
C. study　　D. kitchen
B　根据下文的"where my father coached my brother and me: we kicked the air until our legs __7__, and boxed in old gloves"可知,父亲在车库里指导作者和哥哥进行踢腿、拳击等运动,说明车库是一个家庭健身房。故选B。

7. A. recovered　　B. ached
C. moved　　D. extended
B　根据上文的"we kicked the air until our legs"可知,大量运动导致双腿酸痛。故选B。

8. A. because of　　B. in spite of
C. in case of　　D. regardless of
D　根据上文的"My father trained us equally"可知,父亲平等地训练着作者和哥哥,不管他们的体型或年龄如何。故选D。

9. A. force　　B. pressure
C. trick　　D. gesture
A　根据上文的"my brother threw a quick punch (拳) right in my cheek"可知,哥哥打了作者一拳,这一拳的力量使作者向后倒去。故选A。

10. A. fear　　B. confusion
C. laughter　　D. tears
D　根据上文的"I burst out crying"可知,作者被打哭了,说明此时眼里含着泪水。故选D。

11. A. teach　　B. relax
C. defend　　D. save

C 根据下文的“When my brother threw another punch, this time I remembered to show my __12__ —blocking it just in time.”可知，作者记住了要防御哥哥的攻击，说明父亲在教作者如何保护自己。故选C。

12. A. muscle B. face
C. voice D. heart
A 根据上文的“Make me a muscle!”以及下文的“blocking it just in time”可知，作者记住了要展示肌肉来防御哥哥的攻击，并成功挡住了。故选A。

13. A. imagination B. attitude
C. mood D. dream
B 根据下文的“Strength was more than about being __14__; it was about the courage to get back up.”可知，力量不仅仅是身体上的强壮，更重要的是重新站起来的勇气，这是一种坚韧不拔的态度。故选B。

14. A. beneficial B. emotional
C. physical D. impressive
C 根据下文的“it was about the courage to get back up”可知，力量不仅仅是身体上的强壮。故选C。

15. A. special B. responsible
C. attracted D. prepared
D 根据上文的“Are you ready?”以及下文的“to keep going”可知，父亲在问作者是否准备好了继续前行。故选D。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Understand the usage of *to*-infinitive as attributive and adverbial of result.
2. Apply *to*-infinitive as attributive and adverbial of result in the real context.
3. Learn vocabulary and expressions about different sports and their benefits.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Since you have a strong desire to learn Chinese culture, I think Beijing Language and Culture University is an **ideal** place for you. 理想的，最合适的
2. The screen itself can also be referred to as the **display**. 显示器
3. The patient's blood pressure was **monitored** regularly by the nurse. 监测
4. One doctor has **charted** a dramatic rise in local childhood asthma(哮喘) since the road was built. 记录
5. His **upper** lip was flat, but the lower one sagged (下垂的). 上面的
6. She was a **master** of the English language. 大师，能手

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
adjustable *adj*. 可调整的，可调节的	adjust *v*. 适应；习惯；调整，调节
	adjustment *n*. 调整；适应

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
balance *n*. 平衡	balanced *adj*. 平衡的
involve *v*. 包含，需要	involved *adj*. 参与的；卷入的；有关联的
	involvement *n*. 参与；卷入；牵连
response *n*. 回答，答复	respond *v*. 回答；响应；作出反应
available *adj*. 可用的，可获得的	availability *n*. 有效；有用；有益；可得到的人(或物)；可用性

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. fit into (使)适合，适应；符合
2. keep track of 跟踪
3. work out 解决，解答；计算出；锻炼身体；制订出
4. due to 由于，因为
5. find out 弄清，查明

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:so that 引导结果状语从句

It also has a voice control setting that enables you to stay hands-free, while its waterproof band is fully adjustable so that it is comfortable to wear.

它还有一个语音控制设置,使您可以保持免提,同时它的防水带是完全可调节的,这样的话戴着它是很舒适的。

2. 句型公式:keep+宾语+宾语补足语

You have to keep your body very still.

你必须保持你的身体静止不动。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. adjustable *adj*. 可调整的,可调节的

[教材原文]It also has a voice control setting that enables you to stay hands-free, while its waterproof band is fully **adjustable** so that it is comfortable to wear.

它还有一个语音控制设置,使您可以保持免提,同时它的防水带是完全可调节的,这样的话戴着它是很舒适的。

[归纳拓展]

(1)adjust *v*. 适应;习惯;调整,调节

adjust oneself to sth. 使自己适应某事

adjust to (doing) sth. 适应(做)某事

adjust... (to sth.) (根据某事物)对……进行调节/调整

(2)adjustment *n*. [C,U]调整;适应

make adjustment(s) (to...)(对……)进行调整;做出调整(以适应……)

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①They should adjust their websites to the needs of younger users.

② The height of the bicycle seat is adjustable (adjust) so you can adjust it to suit the needs of your children.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之日记)我作为交换生来到这个学校已经一个星期了,我**已经适应了新的环境**。

It has been a week since I came to this school as an exchange student and I have adjusted to the new environment.

②(应用文写作之道歉信)由于我没有及时**调整相关的信息**,给您带来极大的不便,我写信向您道歉。

I am writing to apologise to you for my not making adjustments to/adjusting the relevant information in time, causing great inconvenience to you.

2. balance *n*. 平衡 *v*. 使(在某物上)保持平衡;比较;权衡重要性

[教材原文]Using only a rope, you can develop your footwork and **balance**.

只用一根绳子,你就可以增强你的步法和平衡。

[归纳拓展]

(1)keep a/one's balance 保持平衡

keep a balance between A and B 保持 A 与 B 之间的平衡

keep the balance of nature 维持生态平衡

lose one's balance 失去平衡

(2)balance A against B 权衡 A 和 B

(3)balanced *adj*. 平衡的

keep a balanced diet 保持均衡的饮食

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Before making the final decision, you'd better balance the advantages against the disadvantages.

②Keeping a balanced (balance) diet is of great importance, especially for teens who are growing up.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)对我们来说,**维持生态平衡**、保护环境是多么重要和必要啊!

How important and necessary it is for us to keep the balance of nature and protect the environment!

3. response *n*. 回答,答复

[教材原文]During the interview, listen carefully to each question and try to understand the main ideas within the interviewee's **responses**.

在(听)采访(材料的)过程中,仔细听每个问题,试着理解被采访者所回答的主要观点。

[归纳拓展]

(1) make a response to 回答/响应;对……作出反应

in response to 对……作出反应

(2)respond *v*. 回答;响应;作出反应

respond to sth. 对某事作出回答/反应

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Scientists say the results suggest that the heart is able to influence how the brain responds to a fearful event.

② The famous film star made no response (respond) to the questions asked by the reporters.

③(2024·浙江1月卷)A similar process is at work in our response to information.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之活动报道)从**观众的反应**看来,这次演出相当成功。

Judging from the response of the audience, the performance was quite a success.

②(应用文写作之求助信)你能提出一些建议来提高我的听力吗?我期待着**你早日回复**。

Would you put forward some proposals to improve my listening? I'm looking forward to your earliest response.

多义词汇 专练

1. I wonder if she is **available** this afternoon. B

A. *adj*. 可获得的　　B. *adj*. 有空的

C. *adj*. 可利用的

2. She kept **skipping** from one topic of the conversation to another. A

A. *v*. 迅速转换(话题)　B. *v*. 跳绳

C. *v*. 跳过

3. That is the only French phrase I **mastered**, and it's a shame I don't have much use for it. A

A. *v*. 掌握　　B. *v*. 控制

C. *n*. 主人

语法研习课

不定式作定语和结果状语

语法感知

①That football is such a simple game **to play** is perhaps the basis of its popularity.

②It is fun enough **to attract** millions of people.

③What's more, football has become one of the best ways for people **to communicate**.

④This might sound funny, but one only has to think about the Earth **to realise** that our planet is shaped like a football.

1. 句①和句③中的动词不定式作定语。

2. 句②和句④中的动词不定式作结果状语。

语法精讲

一、概念理解

不定式的形式及意义

形式	主动语态	被动语态	意义
一般式	to do	to be done	不定式的动作与句中谓语动词的动作同时发生或在其后发生
进行式	to be doing	—	不定式的动作与句中谓语动词的动作同时发生
完成式	to have done	to have been done	不定式的动作发生在句中谓语动词的动作之前

Thousands of young people are learning **to ski**.

成千上万的年轻人在学习滑雪。(同时进行)

He asked me **to help** him with the task.

他让我帮他做这个任务。(不定式的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之后)

He is said **to be writing** a preface to the book.

据说他正在为这本书写前言。(同时进行)

The girl was reported **to have been lost** for a month.

据报道那个女孩已经失踪一个月了。(不定式的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之前)

名师点拨

一般而言,当不定式的逻辑主语是构成不定式的动词所表示动作的执行者时,不定式用主动形式;当不定式的逻辑主语是构成不定式的动词所表示动作的承受者时,不定式用被动形式。

The doctor recommended him to air the room.

医生建议他给房间透透气。

The doctor recommended the room to be aired.

医生建议给房间透透气。

二、语法规则

1. 不定式作定语

(1)不定式作定语常表示将来的动作。

The question **to be discussed** at the meeting is very important.

将在会议上讨论的那个问题非常重要。

(2)不定式常放在某些名词或代词后作定语。如果作定语的不定式是不及物动词,或者不定式所修饰的名词或代词是不定式动作的地点、工具等,不定式后需要加相应的介词。

He has no pen **to write with.**
他没有用来写字的钢笔。
(3)不定式用来修饰被序数词、最高级或 no，all，any 等限定的中心词，且与中心词之间为逻辑上的主动关系。
He is always **the first to arrive at** the school and **the last to leave** the school.
他总是第一个到校，最后一个离校。
(4)被修饰词是抽象名词时，常用不定式作定语。常见的该类名词有 ability，chance，idea，hope，wish，excuse，promise，attempt，way 等。
His **wish to buy** a car came true.
他想买辆车的愿望实现了。

2. 不定式作结果状语
(1)不定式作结果状语表示出乎意料的或不好的结果，表示的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之后时，通常用一般式。
Few days later he came back **to find** that the troops had left.
几天之后他回来了，却发现部队已经离开了。
(2)不定式前常有 only 或 just，而且不定式前可加上其自身的逻辑主语(for...)。
He tried his best to prepare for the contest，**only to be told** it was cancelled.
他全力以赴地为这次竞赛做准备，结果却被告知竞赛取消了。
He earned a lot of money **only for** his son **to squander** it.
他赚了很多钱，却被儿子挥霍一空。
(3)不定式作结果状语，常用在"... enough to do" "too... to do" "so... as to do" "such... as to do"结构中。

名师点拨

现在分词和不定式作结果状语的区别：
现在分词作结果状语多表示结果在意料之中，其作用相当于一个非限制性定语从句；而不定式作结果状语通常表示结果在意料之外。
He dropped the glass，**breaking it into pieces.**
他把杯子掉在地上，结果摔成了碎片。
I hurried to his house，**only to find him out.**
我匆忙赶到他家，结果却发现他不在家。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. John said he had an important meeting to attend (attend) so he couldn't come to visit me.
2. He hurried to the train station，only to find (find) the train had left.
3. To save (save) energy，we turn off the lights for Earth Hour on the last Saturday in March.
4. When he left，he said to me，"I'm sorry to have troubled (trouble) you so much."
5. The airport to be completed (complete) next year will help promote tourism in this area.
6. He is wealthy enough to afford (afford) such a big house.

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. I hurried to the post office，only to find it closed.
我匆忙赶到邮局，结果却发现邮局关门了。
2. His eyesight is too poor to see such small letters clearly.
他的视力太差，看不清楚这么小的字母。
3. She was the first woman to win the gold medal in the Olympic Games.
她是第一位在奥林匹克运动会上获得金牌的女性。
4. Will you please bring me a chair to sit on?
请给我拿把能坐的椅子好吗？

Unit 3 课后素养评价（十一）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 词语填空

fit into；work out；due to；available；adjustable；balance；involve；master；response；keep track of

1. If you want to have a happy school life，you'd better keep a balance between study and relaxation.
2. Students should involve themselves in community activities where they can gain experience for growth.
3. To stay in shape，Kathy takes exercise three times a week and keeps track of the latest information on health.
4. The chair has an adjustable height，so you can adjust it to fit your needs.
5. The audience's response to the comedian's jokes was overwhelmingly positive.
6. The coast road is closed due to bad weather.
7. I'll change my timetable to fit into with yours.

8. Amazingly, they worked out how to do this successfully.
9. It's reported that not enough information is available to scientists.
10. I've completely mastered the use of all the words I've learned.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. We need someone to help (help) with the work.
2. Please tell me the subjects to be discussed (discuss) at the next session.
3. In his speech, he expressed their determination to achieve (achieve) their goals.
4. I think we are all grown-ups and we have the ability to manage (manage) our own affairs.
5. I'm going to Xi'an next week. Do you have anything to be taken (take) to your parents?

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. China has become the first country to land a probe on the far side of the moon.
   中国已成为首个在月球背面着陆探测器的国家。
2. We came home after our holiday to find our garden neat and tidy.
   我们度假后回到家,发现我们的花园既干净又整洁。
3. I feel greatly honoured to have the chance to deliver a speech here.
   有机会在这里发表演讲,我感到万分荣幸。
4. No words are strong enough to express how grateful I am.
   没有什么语言能够表达我的感激之情。
5. Every time I prepare for an important interview, I will be too anxious to fall asleep.
   每次我准备重要面试时,我都会过于焦虑以至于睡不着。

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Rock climbing is a sport that you use ropes and other equipment to climb up a rock face, either outdoors or an artificial one indoors. Luca, who is 17, loves it because, he says, "you have got to solve problems with your friends".

Luca especially enjoys outdoor climbing because it's a chance to interact with the environment. He's been researching how his hobby impacts nature since he was 14 and wants to promote sustainable rock climbing. This means "climbing in a way that in 20 years, the same outdoor routes will still be in use," he says.

The cliffs people climb are home to lots of plants and birds, and when climbers make their way up, they can disturb nests and damage delicate ecosystems (communities of living things). Luca says he spotted damage when he saw the difference between climbing routes and the rock next to it. "One was green, and the other was relatively bare," he says.

Every outdoor climber can help, Luca believes. *Students' Weekly* asked Luca for his top tips. He advises following marked trails (小径), respecting wildlife and leaving no trace. This means making sure you don't leave rubbish or equipment behind.

Luca began rock climbing in a school club and now enjoys climbing in the UK and abroad, including Spain. His advice for anyone wanting to try climbing is "have as much fun as possible and make sure you climb with your friends".

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要介绍了Luca对攀岩这项运动的热爱与看法,以及他给攀岩者的建议。

1. What can we learn about Luca from the text?
   A. He loves team sports.
   B. He likes a quiet life.
   C. He is fond of travels.
   D. He is a nature lover.
   D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Luca especially enjoys outdoor climbing because it's a chance to interact with the environment. He's been researching how his hobby impacts nature since he was 14 and wants to promote sustainable rock climbing."可知,Luca热爱自然,是一个自然爱好者。故选D。
2. What does the underlined word "sustainable" in Paragraph 2 mean?
   A. Lasting.
   B. Outdoor.
   C. Relaxing.
   D. Changeable.
   A 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的"This means 'climbing in a way that in 20 years, the same outdoor routes will still be in use,' he says."可知,"sustainable"在此处指的是攀岩方式对环境友好,能让路线长期被使用,即"可持续的,持久的",与选项A"Lasting(持久的)"含义一致。故选A。

3. What is Luca's advice to outdoor climbers?

A. Not to make any marks on the rock surface.

B. To keep their climbing a secret from others.

C. Not to leave litter about on climbing routes.

D. To do climbing at night to avoid being seen.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"He advises following marked trails (小径), respecting wildlife and leaving no trace. This means making sure you don't leave rubbish or equipment behind."可知,Luca的建议包括不在攀岩路线上乱扔垃圾。故选C。

4. What does Luca highlight (强调) in his advice in the last paragraph?

A. Help from friends.

B. Open-mindedness.

C. Personal interests.

D. Self-confidence.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"His advice for anyone wanting to try climbing is 'have as much fun as possible and make sure you climb with your friends'."可知,Luca在最后的建议中强调了和朋友一起攀岩,即朋友的帮助和陪伴。故选A。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Know some information about marathons.

2. Read and analyse why the four people started running and what benefits they got from running.

3. Think and share other running events in China.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. We've been collecting **data** from all over the country to know the situation of the epidemic (传染病). 数据

2. **Tension** is a feeling of worry and anxiety which makes it difficult for you to relax. 紧张

3. A **label** is a piece of paper or plastic that is attached to an object in order to give information about it. 标签

4. My leg is giving me much less pain but still **aches** when I sit down. (持续而隐隐地)作痛

5. A **champion** is someone who has won first prize in a competition, contest, or fight. 冠军

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
interpret *v*. 理解,了解,解释	interpretation *n*. 理解,解释;演绎
	interpretative *adj*. 理解的,解释的
	interpreter *n*. 口译者

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
power *n*. 力量	powerful *adj*. 强有力的
	powerless *adj*. 无影响力的
disappear *v*. 消失,不见	disappearance *n*. 消失
	appear *v*. 出现
	appearance *n*. 外观;外貌;出现
sweaty *adj*. 满是汗的,被汗水湿透的	sweat *n*. 汗,汗水 *v*. 出汗,流汗
inspire *v*. 鼓舞,激励	inspired *adj*. 受到鼓舞的
	inspiring *adj*. 令人鼓舞的,振奋人心的
	inspiration *n*. 灵感;鼓舞

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
persuade *v*. 说服，劝服	persuasion *n*. 说服，劝服
	persuasive *adj*. 有说服力的
ultimate *adj*. （目标等）最终的	ultimately *adv*. 最终，最后

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. in turn 依次，轮流；反过来
2. by the end of 到……为止
3. take part in 参加，参与
4. die out 消失，绝迹，灭绝
5. at times 有时

Ⅳ. 补全句子

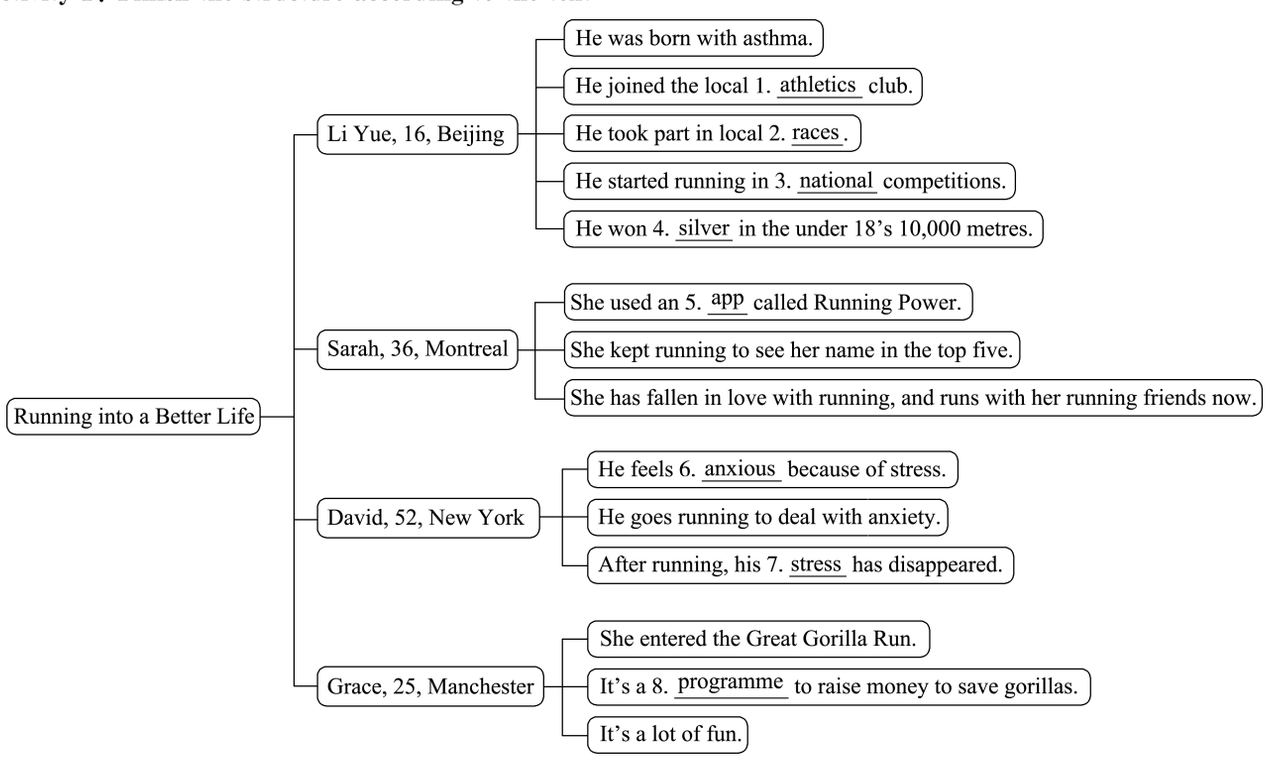
1. 句型公式：before 引导时间状语从句
   But before I knew it, I was taking part in local races.
   但我开始参加本地的比赛之后才知道这一点。
2. 句型公式：as 引导时间状语从句
   As my fitness and my running improved, I started running in national competitions.
   随着身体健康状况的改善和跑步能力的提高，我开始参加全国跑步比赛。
3. 句型公式：make＋宾语＋宾语补足语
   It can be quite stressful at times, though, which in turn makes me feel anxious.
   然而，有时候工作的压力是非常大的，这也相应地会让我感到焦虑。
4. 句型公式：whether... or... 引导让步状语从句
   Whether I'm at the gym or on the road, my nervous energy pushes me through mile one.
   无论我是在健身房还是在路上，跑第一英里的时候我还能感受到神经的紧张。
5. 句型公式：as well as
   I had a great day out in London, as well as helping to save gorillas!
   我在伦敦度过了愉快的一天，同时也为拯救大猩猩出了力！

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's the main idea of the text?

A. Running is the best sport all over the world.

B. This global site is very popular all over the world.

C. Reasons for starting running and benefits gained from running.

D. Running can cure your disease and make you better and better.

2. Why does Li Yue start running?

A. Because he loves running since childhood.

B. Because he was born with asthma and has to start running.

C. Because running can improve his lung function and help treat his asthma.

D. Because he wants to win gold in national competitions.

3. Who kept running for the purpose of winning the top five?

A. David. B. Li Yue.

C. Grace. D. Sarah.

4. What benefit did the computer engineer get from running?

A. He removed his tension from work.

B. He recovered from his illness.

C. He came across other runners.

D. He helped to save gorillas.

答案：1～4 CCDA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. It can be quite stressful at times, though, which in turn makes me feel anxious.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 which 引导非限制性定语从句，在从句中 feel anxious 为省略 to 的不定式，作宾语补足语，在主句中情态动词 can 表推测。

[尝试翻译]然而，有时候工作的压力是非常大的，这也相应地会让我感到焦虑。

2. The funniest moment was when someone watching the race offered me a banana—a real treat for a running gorilla!

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。when 引导表语从句，在从句中 watching the race 是现在分词短语作后置定语，破折号后的内容是对 banana 的补充说明。

[尝试翻译]最有趣的时刻就是有些看比赛的人会给我一根香蕉——这对于奔跑的“大猩猩”来说真是一顿美餐！

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. How did Grace feel by helping to save gorillas?

Tired but happy.

2. Do you know of any running events in China?

略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. power *n*. 力量；权力；能力

[教材原文] Then I discovered an app called Running **Power**.

后来我发现了一款名为“奔跑的力量”的应用程序。

[归纳拓展]

(1)come to/into power 掌权；上台(表动作)

be in power 掌权(表状态)

have the power of 有……的能力

beyond/out of one's power 超出某人的能力

in/within one's power to do sth. 有权力/能力做某事

(2)powerful *adj*. 强有力的

powerless *adj*. 无影响力的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国一卷)The fuels for transport need to be not just green, cheap and powerful (power), but also lightweight and safe enough to be carried around.

②Though he has been in power for two years, he hasn't found an effective solution to the country's economic problems.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之感谢信)每当我遇到麻烦并求助于你时，你都会**尽你所能帮助我**。

Every time I get into trouble and turn to you, you will do everything in/within your power to help me out.

2. inspire *v*. 鼓舞，激励

[教材原文] End by saying why he/she **inspires** you.

最后说说他/她为什么会激励你。

［归纳拓展］

(1)inspire sb. to do sth. 激励/鼓励某人做某事
inspire sb. with sth. =inspire sth. in sb. 激起某人的……(某种情感)
be inspired by 受到……的启发;由……得到灵感
(2)inspiration *n*. 灵感;鼓舞
(3)inspired *adj*. 受到鼓舞的
(4)inspiring *adj*. 令人鼓舞的,振奋人心的

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国二卷)Volunteering makes you feel capable and inspires you to make (make) the most of each day.

② I recalled that my foreign friends often comforted me with inspiring (inspire) words when I was homesick.

③ For Western designers, China and its rich culture have long been an inspiration (inspire) for Western creatives.

(2)写作微练

(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之活动记录)我**被这美妙的景色所启发**,决定画一幅公园池塘的水彩画。

①I was inspired by the fantastic scenery, so I decided to create a watercolour painting of the pond in the park.

②Inspired by the fantastic scenery, I decided to create a watercolour painting of the pond in the park.

3. persuade *v*. 说服,劝服

［教材原文］He then **persuaded** me to try ice hockey.
然后他说服我去打冰球。

［归纳拓展］

(1)persuade sb. to do sth. / persuade sb. into doing sth. } 说服某人做某事
(2)persuade sb. not to do sth. / persuade sb. out of doing sth. } 说服某人不做某事
(3)try to persuade sb. to do sth. / advise sb. to do sth. } 试图说服某人做某事(但未必说服成功)
(4)persuade sb. of sth. 使某人相信某事

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

① I managed to persuade him to support (support) my plan to sell popcorn from door to door.

②Get a coffee machine for your home or office, or persuade your company into buying (buy) one.

③In a debate you need to persuade the listeners of the soundness of your argument.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之细节描写)我发现大卫正坐在路边,头低着,因此我决定去**劝他参加比赛**。
I found David sitting on the roadside with his head down, so I decided to persuade him to take part in the race/persuade him into taking part in the race.

②(读后续写之细节描写)我试图**说服他不要和那个家伙联系**,但是白费工夫。
I tried to persuade him not to keep/out of keeping in touch with that guy, but in vain.

4. before 引导时间状语从句

［教材原文］But **before** I knew it, I was taking part in local races.
但我开始参加本地的比赛之后才知道这一点。

［句式分析］句中 before 用作连词,常用来表示从句动作发生之前的时间,译法灵活。

［归纳拓展］

(1)强调从句动作发生在主句之前,before 意为"还没来得及……就……"。
(2)强调动作发生的时间长,before 意为"过了(多久)才……"。
(3)在"It+be+时间段+before 从句"中,before 意为"……之后才……"。
(4)在"It+be+not+long+before 从句"中,before 意为"……不久就……"。
(5)"It+be+一段时间+since 从句"表示"自从……(到现在)有多长时间了"。

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·浙江1月卷)Thinking that the man might get away with whatever he wanted before the police arrived, Kevin decided to do something.

②John is sure that it won't be long before he is ready for his new job.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)坦率地说,在不同的文化中攻读学位从来都不容易。**在你来之前**,你最好学习一些基础的汉语。
To be frank, studying for a degree in a different culture is never easy. You'd better learn some basic Chinese before you come.

②(应用文写作之申请信)**从5岁起**我就接触外教,因此,我能够用英语和其他人自由交流。

I have been exposed to foreign teachers since I was five years old, so I can communicate freely with others in English.

多义词汇 专练

1. before: A. *conj*. 还没来得及就……
B. *conj*. 在……之前
C. *conj*. 不久就……
D. *conj*. ……之后才……

①(2025·全国二卷)I want to let you know **before** I make my decision. B

②It's a pity that it will be five years **before** we meet again. D

③It will not be long **before** the naughty student realises his mistakes. C

④He took the bad news out of his mouth **before** I could stop him. A

2. And finally, for people in darkness, this candle could be the **ultimate** gift. B
A. *adj*. 最终的 B. *adj*. 最好的
C. *adj*. 基本的

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十二)

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. We are living in the modern age of big data (数据), which has improved our working efficiency greatly.
2. In business, it is important to make network (人际关系网) with as many people as possible on a face-to-face basis.
3. Being so famous in the world, the Olympic Games mainly show the power (力量) of the human spirit through sports.
4. The champion (冠军) was so excited after the race that he didn't know what to say in front of so many reporters.
5. After running a mile, my two legs ached (隐隐作痛), which almost forced me to give up, but later I kept up running to the finishing line.
6. He who cannot afford blows and setbacks cannot win the ultimate (最终的) victory.
7. A great deal of tension (紧张) tends to do harm to people's health mentally.
8. The artist interpreted (解释) the theme of the painting in a unique way.
9. The moment I saw my good friend, half of my worries disappeared (消失).
10. Unless you're really sweaty (满是汗的), wait three or four wears before washing.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. Silence is often interpreted as an admission of guilt.
2. The new stadium being built will be twice as big as the playground.
3. We all need to get involved in saving energy whether it's at work, at home, or at school.
4. I spent several hours writing everything I had bought down, just to get (get) an idea of how I spent my money.
5. My mother persuaded me to live (live) at school to learn to be independent when I was ready to go to senior high.
6. The poet got a lot of inspiration from nature and wrote an inspiring poem which made all of us inspired to love nature and protect it. (inspire)

Ⅲ. 短语填空

at first; as well as; at times; save... from; die out; in turn; deal with

1. He was very nervous at first, but soon he calmed down.
2. The shop at the corner of the street sold books as well as newspapers.
3. If these animals and plants die out, we will never see them again.
4. The climate in our city is warm and wet, but it can be cold at times.
5. It is very important to teach the children how to deal with others' kindness and rudeness.
6. The change of the climate also makes the earth warmer. In turn, the warmth of the earth changes the climate, too.
7. We should take effective measures to save the endangered animals from extinction (灭绝).

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 随着期末考试的临近，我们正忙着为此做充分的准备。(as 引导时间状语从句)
   As the final exam is around the corner, we are busy making full preparations for it.
2. 听音乐总是让我感到放松和快乐。(make＋宾语＋宾语补足语)
   Listening to music always makes me feel relaxed and joyful.
3. 这次活动是为儿童筹款。(不定式短语作表语)
   The activity is to raise money for the children.
4. 除了难以适应新的学校生活之外，她发现文化差异对她来说是另一个挑战。(as well as)
   As well as having difficulty adapting herself to the new school life, she found that the cultural difference was another challenge for her.

Ⅴ. 语法填空

Tai chi, also noted as *taijiquan*, is a traditional Chinese martial art that has evolved into a popular form of exercise and meditation. **1.** Originated (originate) from China's Fujian Province, tai chi has a history of over 1,000 years and is deeply rooted in Chinese philosophy and culture. It **2.** features (feature) slow, flowing movements that promote balance, **3.** flexibility (flexible), and relaxation.

In recent years, tai chi **4.** has gained (gain) worldwide recognition for its health benefits. Studies have shown that practising tai chi can also be helpful for people **5.** to reduce (reduce) the risk of falls in older adults.

Tai chi is often practised in classes, **6.** where students learn from a qualified instructor. There are many different styles of tai chi, each **7.** having (have) its own unique set of movements and techniques. Beginners are encouraged to start with the most basic movements and **8.** gradually (gradual) build up their skills and knowledge over time.

9. Whether you are looking for a low-impact exercise, a way to reduce stress, or a close connection to Chinese culture, tai chi offers something for everyone. With regular practice, you can experience the transformative power of this ancient art form and discover **10.** a deeper sense of balance and harmony in your life.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华。你的英国朋友 Jim 在给你的邮件中提到他计划选择一项可以长期坚持的运动，并向你征询建议。请你给他回复一封英文邮件，内容包括：

1. 推荐的运动；
2. 推荐的理由。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear Jim,

I am glad to learn that you would like to exercise to keep fit. _____

_____

_____

_____

Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Super Lungs

I was always a huge fan of football, and watching a game at the stadium was definitely one of the best ways to be free from work and relax. Therefore, the minute I heard the news that there would be a game of our home team against the team from Mississippi, I booked a front-row seat, excited about having a fantastic weekend.

I was satisfied when I got seated in the stadium. When the game began, however, I discovered that I was sitting directly in front of a Super Lungs. He seemed like a nice guy. But his idea of having fun at a football game was obviously nothing like mine, or most normal, well-behaved football fans'. It consisted of standing and yelling nonstop, as loud as he could. He yelled at the coaches, at the players, at the officials and at the Mississippi State fans in the next section. Always at the top of his lungs.

Super Lungs made an astonishing performance and kept it for us for the entire 45 minutes and never showed any sign of tiredness. He was so caught up in his world that he failed to notice he was ruining the experience of hundreds of others.

I felt that my eardrums almost got broken. His mouth was only two feet away from my ears. For a while I thought of shouting back and stopping him yelling. People around were turning to look at him, and I could read their thoughts: "Is he never going to stop?" And he seemed blind to those looks.

At half-time I escaped by walking for a few minutes outside the stadium. I was thinking of seeking an empty seat in the student section across the stadium but to my disappointment, the seats were all taken. I had no choice but to go back to the Super Lungs.

To make matters worse, when returning to my seat, I missed my steps and fell heavily on the stairs. As I was struggling to stand up, a pair of huge hands helped me from behind.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

I looked back and saw _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Super Lungs kept his shouting for another 45 minutes. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Jim,

I am glad to learn that you would like to exercise to keep fit. I believe running is the best choice. My reasons are as follows.

First of all, the physical benefits from running have long been recognised as it helps increase the body's flow of blood and oxygen, which thus strengthens the immune system and reduces the risk of diseases. What's more, running can certainly become a long-term hobby, since it takes only a pair of running shoes and can easily and flexibly be added to your schedule. Last but not least, running can improve one's mood and particularly provide relief from pain or tension.

Why not give it a try? I'm sure you will get a lot out of running.

Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

I looked back and saw Super Lungs' smiling face and concerned eyes. "Are you all right?" he asked me, with genuine care in his voice. "Oh, thank you. I'm OK," I smiled at him. Suddenly I felt he was gentle and kind. All that yelling was only his way of enjoying a football game. It might not please me, but it certainly did not fully reflect his personality! Honestly, looking at him now, I couldn't help marvelling at how much passion he showed in a simple game. He surely was "enjoying life to the fullest".

Super Lungs kept his shouting for another 45 minutes. However, I felt it much easier to bear. The funny thing was that I found myself joining him in standing and shouting, too! It was one of the most unforgettable experiences of my life. I suppose it's important to tolerate and to love people around us. In that way we will be able to see them as real persons, rather than funny or annoying cartoons.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——关于运动的故事

○写作指导

本单元的写作话题是“关于运动的故事”，在体裁上属于记叙文。文章应主要叙述人物的经历或事件的发展变化过程，主要内容包含所发生事件的地点、时间、人物、事情起因、事件发生的过程和结果。写作时应首先交代事件发生的背景，然后具体描述事件的经过，最后谈谈自己的感受或得到的启示。此类文章多用一般过去时。

○典题示例

假如你是李华，你的朋友 Peter 上周写信告诉你，他对你的运动经历很感兴趣，请你写一封回信跟他分享你的一次运动经历。

注意：词数应为 80 左右。

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 事件的背景信息，如时间、人物、环境等 2. 事件发生的经过 3. 自己的感受或得到的启示

Step 2：要点补全

①I'm writing to share my sports experience with you（跟你分享我的运动经历）.

②I still remember the day（仍然记得这一天）last summer.

③I went to run a marathon with my father（跟我爸爸去跑马拉松）.

④I got wet all through（被淋透了）and felt cold and tired.

⑤So I couldn't help complaining（忍不住抱怨）and wanted to give up.

⑥Just at that time, my father encouraged me not to give up（鼓励我不要放弃）and put his coat on me softly.

⑦We got to the finish line at last（最终到达了终点线）and enjoyed the praise that I had never heard（从没听到过）.

Step 3：句式升级

①用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的句②③

I still remember the day last summer when I went to run a marathon with my father.

②用分词作状语改写 Step 2 中的句④

I got wet all through, feeling cold and tired.

③用分词作状语升级 Step 2 中的句⑦

We got to the finish line at last, enjoying the praise that I had never heard.

Step 4：连句成篇

Dear Peter,

How's everything going these days? I'm writing to share my sports experience with you.

I still remember the day last summer when I went to run a marathon with my father. We set off early in the morning. Unluckily, it began to rain halfway. I got wet all through, feeling cold and tired. So I couldn't help complaining and wanted to give up. Just at that time, my father encouraged me not to give up and put his coat on me softly. He told me, “We won't see the beautiful scenery unless we reach the destination.” His words really cheered me up. We got to the finish line at last, enjoying the praise that I had never heard.

This experience taught me that perseverance is the key to success. Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

○学以致用

假定你是李华，你的英国朋友 Emily 得知你最近在国际短跑比赛中获得冠军，来信请你介绍你的运动经历。请你给她写一封回信，要点包括：

1. 开始运动的时间；
2. 运动中遇到的困难；
3. 希望实现的运动目标。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

参考词汇：领奖台 podium

【参考范文】

Dear Emily,

I am so delighted to hear from you. I was so excited when I stood on the podium again this year.

I won a place in the national team when I was 15 years old and won several championships after that. Hurting my waist again last year, I had to take time off to recover from the injury. It was a long time before my doctor told me that I could return to the game. With my coach's help, I started training again to regain my previous capabilities. To our happiness, I won the gold medal in the first competition of this year. And who knows, maybe I can break a world record one day!

Yours,
Li Hua

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章，完成任务。

It was the day of the big cross-country run. Students from seven different primary schools in and around the small town were warming up and walking the route (路线) through thick evergreen forest.

I looked around and finally spotted David, who was standing by himself off to the side by a fence. He was small for ten years old. His usual big toothy smile was absent today. I walked over and asked him why he wasn't with the other children. He hesitated and then said he had decided not to run.

What was wrong? He had worked so hard for this event!

I quickly searched the crowd for the school's coach and asked him what had happened. "I was afraid that kids from other schools would laugh at him," he explained uncomfortably. "I gave him the choice to run or not, and let him decide."

I bit back my frustration (懊恼). I knew the coach meant well—he thought he was doing the right thing. After making sure that David could run if he wanted, I turned to find him coming towards me, his small body rocking from side to side as he swung his feet forward.

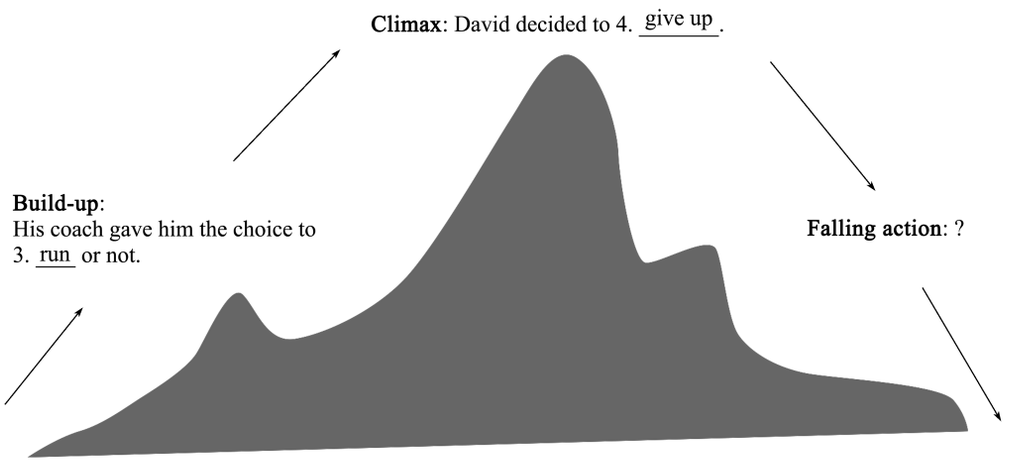
David had a brain disease which prevented him from walking or running like other children, but at school his classmates thought of him as a regular kid. He always participated to the best of his ability in whatever they were doing. That was why none of the children thought it unusual that David had decided to join the cross-country team. It just took him longer—that's all. David had not missed a single practice, and although he always finished his run long after the other children, he did always finish. As a special education teacher at the school, I was familiar with the challenges David faced and was proud of his strong determination.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me.

I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners.

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1： We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me. _____	**1.** How did David feel at this moment? David was filled with sadness, worried that he could not make it. **2.** Faced with the situation, how did I do and say? I would encourage David to go ahead and believe in himself. **3.** After hearing my words, how did David feel? He was delighted and decided to give it a try.
Paragraph 2： I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners. _____	**1.** How did David cope with the challenge? Though he ran slower than the others, he kept on running and running. **2.** Seeing David's determination to make it to the finish line, what did the audience do? All present cheered him on and admired his courage and strong will. **3.** What was the result of the run? He overcame the challenge and finished the cross-country run.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. I tapped him gently on the shoulder（轻轻地拍了拍他的肩膀）and asked why he decided not to run.

2. Having hesitated for a moment（犹豫了片刻），he replied in a low voice，"You know，my brain disease prevents me running like other children（阻止我像其他孩子一样奔跑）and I am afraid that students from other schools would laugh at me."

3. I looked him straight in the eye（直视着他的眼睛），saying，"David，you have worked so hard for this event. There is no need to worry about（没必要担心）someone laughing at you. If you really want，just run!"

4. David was lost in thought（陷入沉思）and kept silent for quite a moment.

5. Then he raised his head（抬起头）with his usual big toothy smile back on his face.

6. "I am going to run," he said firmly (他坚定地说).
7. Then the running was about to start (跑步比赛就要开始了).
8. The match began with a bang from the starter's gun (发令枪一响).
9. While David couldn't run like the other students, he dragged his small body forward (拖着他小小的身躯往前), rocking from side to side.
10. I began shouting words of encouragement (开始大声喊着鼓励的话).
11. Classmates all appeared on the racing track, cheering him on (为他欢呼).
12. "Come on! You can make it! We are proud of you (我们为你感到骄傲)!"they shouted enthusiastically.
13. When he finally reached the finish line, all the people present applauded for him (在场所有人都为他鼓掌).
14. It was David's strong determination and perseverance (大卫坚定的决心和毅力) that made him overcome the challenge (克服挑战) and finish the cross-country run.

任务四:连句成篇,完整呈现。

【参考范文】

We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me. I tapped him gently on the shoulder and asked why he decided not to run. Having hesitated for a moment, he replied in a low voice,"You know, my brain disease prevents me running like other children and I am afraid that students from other schools would laugh at me." I looked him straight in the eye, saying, "David, you have worked so hard for this event. There is no need to worry about someone laughing at you. If you really want, just run!" David was lost in thought and kept silent for quite a moment. Then he raised his head with his usual big toothy smile back on his face. "I am going to run," he said firmly. Then the running was about to start.

I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners. The match began with a bang from the starter's gun. While David couldn't run like the other students, he dragged his small body forward, rocking from side to side. I began shouting words of encouragement. Classmates all appeared on the racing track, cheering him on. "Come on! You can make it! We are proud of you!" they shouted enthusiastically. When he finally reached the finish line, all the people present applauded for him. It was David's strong determination and perseverance that made him overcome the challenge and finish the cross-country run.

单元质量评估(三)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

If you are planning a trip and have no idea where to go and what to do, we shall present a list of the top 4 places to visit in China.

The Terracotta Army

The Terracotta Army has stayed underground for over 2,000 years. It was in 1974 that some farmers who were digging a well discovered one of the best archaeological sites on this planet. Along with the Great Wall, it became the World Cultural Heritage in 1987.

The Forbidden City

The Forbidden City used to be a place where no ordinary people were granted entry. It is an extravagant (奢侈的) example of ancient Chinese architecture, which has more than 8,000 rooms with golden roofs that are painted yellow and red and beautifully designed. The Forbidden City was also the imperial (皇帝的) palace of the Ming and Qing dynasties. 24 emperors lived there. Now, it is known as the Palace Museum and is the World

Cultural Heritage.

Jiuzhai Valley

Located in southwest China in the mountains of Sichuan Province, Jiuzhai Valley is a beautiful place with waterfalls, villages, trails, and clear icy lakes in colours of green and blue. While off-the-trail exploring and hiking are allowed to some extent, many people choose to take the park's hop-on hop-off bus which stops in the main scenic (风景优美的) areas and allows the travellers to decide which direction they want to explore by walking.

The Great Wall

The Great Wall of China is a place that everyone must have heard of. It is an admirable achievement of ancient defensive architecture. The wall stretches over 13,000 miles and is easily accessible to any travellers in Beijing.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了中国的四个旅游胜地。

1. Who first discovered the Terracotta Army?

A. Travellers. B. Scientists.

C. Archeologists. D. Farmers.

D 细节理解题。根据 **The Terracotta Army** 部分中的"It was in 1974 that some farmers who were digging a well discovered one of the best archaeological sites on this planet."可知,首先发现兵马俑的是农民。故选 D。

2. What's special about Jiuzhai Valley?

A. One can explore and hike where they want.

B. No ordinary visitors were granted entry.

C. It's the only destination of the four for a natural landscape.

D. The park's hop-on hop-off buses are free for the travellers.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Jiuzhai Valley** 部分中的"Located in southwest China in the mountains of Sichuan Province, Jiuzhai Valley is a beautiful place with waterfalls, villages, trails, and clear icy lakes in colours of green and blue."可知,九寨沟是四大旅游胜地中唯一的自然景观。故选 C。

3. How many World Cultural Heritages are mentioned in the passage?

A. One. B. Three.

C. Two. D. Four.

B 推理判断题。根据 **The Terracotta Army** 部分中的"Along with the Great Wall, it became the World Cultural Heritage in 1987."可知,长城和兵马俑被列为世界文化遗产;根据 **The Forbidden City** 部分中的"The Forbidden City was also the imperial (皇帝的) palace of the Ming and Qing dynasties. 24 emperors lived there. Now, it is known as the Palace Museum and is the World Cultural Heritage."可知,故宫也被列为世界文化遗产。综上可知,文中提到了三处世界文化遗产。故选 B。

B

At 18, I competed in my first marathon (马拉松) in Dublin, Ireland. At that time, I was an excellent 400-metre runner at high school, but got it into my head that I should try the longer distance to prove that I was really good at running—and what was better than the marathon?

Back then, the running craze hadn't quite heated up to the point it has today and running a marathon was unknown to most people. Besides, I never knew anyone who had actually run a marathon.

On the way from England to Dublin, I was wondering what I was getting myself in two days later when the race would begin. I tried to get some sleep to ease my nerves, but I found it hard.

The race day was somewhat cloudy, but the warmth of the people forced the clouds away. My limited memories of that first race remain: the feeling of running through tunnel (隧道) of people as the crowds lined the streets; the cheers from the crowds as the news came that an Irishman had won the race; what's the most impressive, the kindness of the crowds cheering me on as I hit the wall and tried to struggle through. Eventually, I didn't get the prize, but I never gave up and regarded it as a success because I challenged myself.

After my first marathon, I started a website based on my love of running. Whether you're an experienced marathoner or just an interested passer-by, I invite you to get involved in the website and make it your home. Runners and particularly marathoners seem to share common ideals. They're part of a global team and a global community.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者第一次参加马拉松比赛的经历。

4. Why did the author take part in his first

marathon?

A. To show his talent for running.

B. To win a prize in a longer distance race.

C. To attract the public's attention to running.

D. To express his preference for 400-metre running.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段第二句可知，作者认为参加马拉松比赛是一个证明自己拥有跑步天赋的好机会。故选A。

5. What impressed the author deeply during his first marathon?

A. He hit the wall and tried to struggle through.

B. He ran through a tunnel with other racers.

C. He nearly got lost due to the cloudy weather.

D. He received lots of encouragement from the crowds.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"what's the most impressive, the kindness of the crowds cheering me on as I hit the wall and tried to struggle through"可知，观众对作者的友好鼓励让他印象深刻。故选D。

6. What can we know about the author's website?

A. It aims to help unite running lovers.

B. It has got a lot of attention.

C. It attaches great importance to community spirit.

D. It was set up mainly for experienced marathoners.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段第二句可知，作者建网站旨在给对跑步感兴趣的人一个联系的平台，即帮助团结跑步爱好者。故选A。

7. Which of the following can best describe the author?

A. Kind and creative.

B. Capable and devoted.

C. Proud and ordinary.

D. Confused and sensitive.

B 推理判断题。通读全文可知，作者是优秀的400米跑步运动员，并想尝试跑马拉松，在参加完马拉松比赛后，基于对跑步的热爱和投入，作者建立了跑步者网站，由此可知，作者能力强且对跑步全身心投入。故选B。

C

People do physical exercise as part of their healthy lifestyle to get stronger and healthier.

There are three basic modes of physical exercise: flexibility exercise helps the human body in general or its parts in particular to be able to reach farther and bend better; aerobic exercise helps the body work hard for a long time; anaerobic exercise makes the arms and legs stronger.

It has long been known that exercise is not only good for your body, but also for your mind. According to researchers, gymnasts are more likely to be emotionally stable, football players the most outgoing and swimmers the happiest.

The psychological study, which was carried out by experts, also revealed that sports can also offer clues to a person's attitude to charity, reading habits and even their voting intentions. Boxers, for example, are most likely to focus on material possessions in life. Meanwhile, runners tend to be outgoing people who love being the centre of attention. Walkers, a group that includes those who enjoy wandering and cross-country races, are least concerned about other people and like doing things by themselves without interruption from others. Those who play chess are confident when they face challenges and trouble. Those who swim tend to be tidy and charitable. However, according to Mind Lab, 61 percent of adults are fond of helping others regardless of their choice of sports.

The results from this study also show that no matter what kind of person you are, there is the right kind of exercise for you.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了运动类型的选择与个人性格特点之间的联系。

8. Which of the following sports belongs to flexibility exercise?

A. Running. B. Swimming.

C. Football. D. Gymnastics.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"flexibility exercise helps the human body in general or its parts in particular to be able to reach farther and bend better"可知，柔韧性运动是一种拉伸类运动，体操属于该运动。故选D。

9. What can we learn from the text?

A. Walkers enjoy loneliness in their lives.

B. Boxers tend to ignore wealth in life.

C. Runners have great power of concentration.

D. Chess players like challenging other people.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段第四句可知，步行的

人不关心别人，喜欢在生活中享受孤独。故选A。

10. Why does the author mention Mind Lab in Paragraph 4?

A. To make a contrast.

B. To draw a comparison.

C. To place an emphasis.

D. To give an example.

A　推理判断题。根据第四段中的“However, according to Mind Lab, 61 percent of adults are fond of helping others regardless of their choice of sports.”可知，作者提到Mind Lab的调查是为了与上文的结论形成对比。故选A。

11. Which is the best title for the text?

A. How Can You Choose Suitable Sports?

B. What Kind of Sports Can Benefit You Most?

C. How Can Sports Keep You Mentally Healthy?

D. What Does Your Choice of Sports Tell About You?

D　标题归纳题。根据第三段第二句、第四段第一句和最后一段的内容可知，文章主要介绍了运动的选择和个人特点之间的联系。所以D项最适合作为文章标题。故选D。

D

On Perranporth Beach in Cornwall, the local outdoor swimming group, the Perranporth Bluetits, jump into the Atlantic on cold days. Their friendship and sense of achievement are obvious. Encouraged by such refreshing experiences, community groups and the voluntary area have started designing “blue care” programmes to connect people with water. Some doctors even strongly recommend “bluespace” activities.

Encouraged by the health benefits of open water swimming, my team and I did the largest survey of open-water swimmers to date. Our study, published in the *Journal of Environmental Psychology*, shows that wild swimming improves mental (心理的) health by satisfying mental needs like freedom and control in the water.

As part of the BlueHealth project, we surveyed around 20,000 adults in 19 countries about their interactions (互动) with blue spaces and their health. Among them, 1,200 reported swimming in blue spaces, including open-air pools, lakes, rivers and the sea. Wild swimming has more important benefits.

Surprisingly, social connection did not play as big a role in these effects on mental health as we had expected, although the number of community swimming groups like the Perranporth Bluetits is increasing. At least in this international group, personal achievement seemed to be more influential than community connection. However, more skilled swimmers, who often choose adventurous places, sometimes reported higher anxiety (焦虑) levels. This suggests that wild swimming can be good but also challenging.

These findings add to earlier research on open-water swimming. They show that this activity is good for the physical and mental health of adults from different countries, explain how these benefits happen, and point out the discrepancy between natural waters and man-made outdoor pools. So, should we all be jumping in and recommending such experiences for better mental health?

The research does not quite support that yet. We need to be realistic about some of the other challenges our oceans face, such as drowning (溺水) risks and polluted waters. Still, our results support research into recommending getting close to nature to improve certain health conditions. This is something that the UK government is prepared to spend millions on.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了公开水域游泳对身心健康的益处、相关研究发现，以及面临的挑战等。

12. What is the activity of the Perranporth Bluetits according to Paragraph 1?

A. Running on the beach.

B. Playing in indoor pools.

C. Doing scientific research.

D. Swimming in the Atlantic.

D　细节理解题。根据第一段中的“On Perranporth Beach in Cornwall, the local outdoor swimming group, the Perranporth Bluetits, jump into the Atlantic on cold days.”可知，该团体的活动是跳入大西洋游泳。故选D。

13. How does wild swimming improve mental health?

A. By reducing anxiety levels.

B. By meeting mental needs.

C. By improving social connection.

D. By increasing body strength.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Our study, published in the *Journal of Environmental Psychology*, shows that wild swimming improves mental (心理的) health by satisfying mental needs like freedom and control in the water.”可知，野外游泳改善心理健康的机制是通过满足心理需求。故选B。

14. What does the underlined word “discrepancy” in Paragraph 5 probably mean?

A. Connection. B. Problems.

C. Difference. D. Balance.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词前的“These findings add to earlier research on open-water swimming. They show that this activity is good for the physical and mental health of adults from different countries, explain how these benefits happen”及其后的“between natural waters and man-made outdoor pools”可知，画线词前后强调在野外游泳与在人造泳池游泳的差异，前者对身心健康有益。由此可知画线词意为“不同，差异”，与difference意思接近。故选C。

15. What can we learn from the last paragraph?

A. Wild swimming is risk-free for mental health.

B. Polluted waters are worse than drowning risks.

C. Research advises everyone to try wild swimming.

D. The UK supports health studies on nature connection.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Still, our results support research into recommending getting close to nature to improve certain health conditions. This is something that the UK government is prepared to spend millions on.”可知，英国支持有关自然联系的健康研究。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Generally speaking, a student will spend a lot of time in lectures and working at desks or computers. **16** Not only is exercise important for students' health, but it is also thought to be able to increase their learning abilities and concentration.

Establishing a healthy lifestyle is important for people of any age, but it can be hard for college students who have to deal with study problems, research pressures and job-search stresses. **17** While high school and other lower-level students don't often have to deal with the same level of learning stresses, regular exercise and activity are still of equal importance.

18 Exercise for students will reduce the risk of problems such as obesity (肥胖). Regular exercise also gives off endorphins (内啡肽) that can make problems such as depression less likely and increase happiness. To increase fitness and overall health, a student should aim for around 60 minutes of exercise most days of the week.

Some people may also find exercising helps build concentration during lectures and in general learn more effectively. Studies carried out over the years have discovered that students who often exercised were happier and felt more focused. The effect is not seen right away after exercising. **19**

20 Avoiding student obesity is important as it can cause many health problems later in life. By combining a healthy diet that includes only a small amount of fats with an increased amount of exercise a student can quickly become healthier.

A. It's a product of regular workouts.

B. This means he or she can't get enough exercise.

C. Most students will have to learn how to study effectively.

D. There are many health benefits to leading a healthy lifestyle.

E. Healthy eating should be used together with exercise for students.

F. Exercise for students should include a variety of different methods.

G. As a result, exercise and fitness can often become less important for them.

答案：16～20 BGDAE

Ⅲ. 完形填空

Mae ran into Jon before he could run away. Jon fell and Mae piled on top of him. It was a perfect tackle (阻截) for a rugby (英式橄榄球) game. I 21 .

While they were in the 22 for the rugby ball, another player attacked Mae and she fell. The cheer was stuck in my throat. After a few moments, Mae got up and 23 the game and the game went well. I felt a sense of 24 .

When Mae, my 13-year-old daughter, first asked if she could play rugby, I was terrified.

__25__, I did not like the sport because the game was violent (激烈的) and it had the most __26__ of all school sports.

However, Mae wanted to play rugby so much that she kept asking for my permission whenever I said no. Mae was __27__ and full of confidence. She was strong and __28__ for her age at 170 cm. If she were to __29__ till she turned fifteen, the boys would __30__ over her and be stronger than her. She argued that it might be the only __31__ for her to do well in this sport.

Touched by her determination, I __32__ finally. I watched all her matches. I hoped that my __33__ at her games would encourage her. I was __34__ of her for not giving up the sport.

She loved the sport __35__ there were so many challenges.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章从一位父亲的视角,讲述了他的女儿 Mae 非常有决心和毅力,一直坚持从事英式橄榄球并改变了自己父亲态度的故事。

21. A. whispered　　B. cheered
C. complained　　D. regretted
B　根据上文的“It was a perfect tackle (阻截) for a rugby (英式橄榄球) game.”可知,作者看到后欢呼。故选 B。

22. A. group　　B. name
C. charge　　D. struggle
D　根据下文的“another player attacked Mae and she fell”可知,当他们在争夺橄榄球时,另一个球员袭击了 Mae,她摔倒了。故选 D。

23. A. began　　B. finished
C. continued　　D. paused
C　根据上文的“Mae got up”和下文的“the game went well”可知,Mae 站起来继续比赛,比赛进行得很顺利。故选 C。

24. A. relief　　B. humour
C. responsibility　　D. failure
A　根据上文的“the game went well”可知,比赛进行得很顺利,所以作者感到如释重负。故选 A。

25. A. Additionally　　B. Personally
C. Luckily　　D. Sadly
B　根据下文的“I did not like the sport”可知,作者个人不喜欢这项运动,空格处意为“就我个人而言”。故选 B。

26. A. failures　　B. growth
C. successes　　D. injuries
D　根据上文的“the game was violent (激烈的)”可知,比赛是激烈的,而且在所有学校运动中受伤人数最多。故选 D。

27. A. amazed　　B. determined
C. excited　　D. confused
B　根据下文的“full of confidence”可知,Mae 很坚定,充满信心。故选 B。

28. A. clever　　B. suitable
C. tall　　D. unique
C　根据下文的“at 170 cm”可知,她很高。故选 C。

29. A. wait　　B. organise
C. injure　　D. change
A　根据下文的“till she turned fifteen”可知,如果等到十五岁,男孩子们就会比她高。故选 A。

30. A. turn　　B. watch
C. get　　D. tower
D　根据下文的“over her and be stronger than her”可知,如果等到十五岁,男孩子们就会比她高,比她强壮。故选 D。

31. A. chance　　B. advice
C. balance　　D. space
A　根据下文的“for her to do well in this sport”可知,她认为这可能是她在这项运动中取得好成绩的唯一机会。故选 A。

32. A. gave up　　B. gave out
C. gave in　　D. gave away
C　根据下文的“I watched all her matches.”可知,被她的决心所感动,作者最终屈服了。故选 C。

33. A. absence　　B. patience
C. presence　　D. confidence
C　根据上文的“I watched all her matches.”可知,作者希望自己去看她的比赛能鼓励她,空格处意为“出席”。故选 C。

34. A. proud　　B. ashamed
C. afraid　　D. tired
A　根据下文的“for not giving up the sport”可知,作者为她没有放弃这项运动而感到骄傲。故选 A。

35. A. unless　　B. although
C. if　　D. when
B　上下文为转折关系,应用 although 引导让步状语从句。故选 B。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

When it comes to exercise, less is not more—but it's certainly better than none. Physical inactivity makes up nearly 23 percent of all **36.** deaths (death) from major chronic (慢性的) diseases, yet almost one of every three Americans spend a lot of time sitting down. They usually say they have no free time **37.** for physical activity at all.

Light activity can improve physical and mental well-being. While light activity is good, moderate (适度的) activity is even **38.** better (good). And you don't have to head to a gym. As recent studies have suggested, "lifestyle" activities, such as walking, house cleaning and gardening, are as **39.** effective (effect) as a structured exercise programme in improving heart function, lowering blood pressure **40.** and keeping or losing weight.

In one study, overweight, sedentary (久坐的) middle-aged men and women, **41.** who learned behavioural skills to make them more physically active, such as **42.** walking (walk) around airports or train stations while waiting for a departure, reduced their body fat percentage and improved their blood pressure and heart function as much as individuals working out at a **43.** fitness (fit) centre.

There are different types of activities in a centre, **44.** where people do aerobic and muscle exercise to build up their health. But actually, multiple short periods of exercise during the day **45.** are (be) nearly as beneficial as one long session.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华，上周六你校举办了校园运动会(School Sports Meeting)，你参加了800米长跑比赛并坚持跑完全程。请你用英语给外教Smith写一封电子邮件，介绍此次经历。内容包括：

1. 比赛过程；
2. 你的感想。

注意：1. 词数80左右；

2. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear Mr Smith,

_____

_____

_____

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I've lived in the new house for a few weeks. While the weather's warm, I take my coffee out to the backyard. It wasn't easy separating from my husband and uprooting the kids from the only home they ever knew. I moved to suburbia, but luckily, it wasn't the natural wilderness. There are trails in these woods, maintained by the homeowners' association. Everything seemed to be fine, but I wasn't sure if I picked a good place to be our new home until a wander in the woods.

One afternoon, curious to know what was in my woods, I put on long pants and boots and announced that I would wander in the woods and find the trail. I would look for signs of life in my woods. My daughter wanted in. My son was busy showing all his toys to his grandfather, who had come to visit us.

My daughter and I went out. Without much trouble, we found the trail and one of the most amazing trees on the earth. It was like a banyan tree with many trunks shooting out from the ground. My daughter immediately climbed it and declared, "This is the fairy tree!" She threw her arms in the air, and I shot a picture. She was in rain boots and wore a sports suit, looking perfect among the woods. Soon, she found an open space with some fallen trees and declared it the "play area". She climbed the fallen tree trunks and jumped off them, sending up a puff of dust.

We kept going. Unexpectedly, we heard the sound of some children. My daughter practically felt excited at the sound of children's play. We followed the path and found three boys were happily building a wooden house. "Hi!" my daughter shouted. "I'm new here!"

注意：续写词数应为150左右。

Hearing a girl's voice, the three boys felt surprised at first. _____

_____

When we happily got home at dusk, my dad and son were waiting for us worriedly. _____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Mr Smith,

I'm writing to share an unforgettable experience in our school sports meeting last Saturday, where I took part in the 800-metre race.

At the start, I ran smoothly with full energy. But halfway through, my legs felt heavy and my breathing became uneven. I even wanted to give up. However, the loud cheers from my classmates gave me strength. I tried my best and kept pushing forward until I crossed the finish line.

Though I didn't win a prize, this experience taught me a valuable lesson. Perseverance is the key to overcoming difficulties. It will always remind me to never give up when facing challenges.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Hearing a girl's voice, the three boys felt surprised at first. One of the boys looked my daughter up and down for a few seconds. Then with a bright smile on his face, he asked, "Are you interested in joining us?" My daughter's eyes glittered with delight on hearing this. Together, they collected branches, sticks and leaves and busied themselves building a wooden house. Obviously, they were enjoying themselves. Watching them, I couldn't help thinking woods and kids just belonged together. Time passed quickly. It was almost dark before we finally came back.

When we happily got home at dusk, my dad and son were waiting for us worriedly. I apologised for our coming back so late, but my daughter looked excited. "I have so much fun in our woods today and there are so many secret play areas!" she told her brother proudly. Her brother was so jealous of her that we promised to take him adventuring the next morning. Sensing children's happiness, my uncertainty about moving to the new house finally gave way to a feeling of satisfaction. Anyway, we are in our new home, with our new woods to explore.

阶段质量评估

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Four Popular Festivals in Liuzhou

If you are a party animal in Liuzhou, join us to explore some of the popular festivals in this area.

Temple Fair Day

It is believed to be the oldest and largest temple fair day celebrated in Fengshan, Liuzhou. It is an event known to easily attract more than 30,000 people to take part in the parades (游行). It is a day for enjoying temple wishes, dancing to non-stop ethnic songs, and tasting lots of local dishes.

Time: February or March Price: Free

March 3rd Festival

This is an annual event that takes place every March in Sanjiang County. The festival features a lot of ethnic minority homemade food. You can also expect to enjoy live ethnic music and dances performed by famous local dancers.

Time: March 3rd Price: 3 *yuan*

Liuzhou Marathon Festival

This event started years ago. Currently, it is an attractive weekend that sees attendance exceed 12,000 people. During the festival, participants take part in exciting activities, with the major ones like the funny marathon, and food sales.

Time: April Price: 12 *yuan*

Dragon Boat Show

Longtan Park is usually the place of Dragon Boat Show—a festival for boating lovers that occurs in May. It is the largest dragon boat show in Liuzhou. A great number of people will be there at that time. Welcome to join the show.

Time: May Price: 5 *yuan*

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了柳州的四大流行节日。

1. What is special about Temple Fair Day?

A. It is for boating lovers.

B. It lasts two months.

C. It's free of charge.

D. It started 10 years ago.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Temple Fair Day** 部分中的“Price: Free”可知，庙会日可以免费参加。故选 C。

2. What can tourists do at March 3rd Festival?

A. Buy some books.

B. Taste homemade food.

C. Watch boat shows.

D. Join a parade.

B 细节理解题。根据 **March 3rd Festival** 部分中的“The festival features a lot of ethnic minority homemade food.”可知，在三月三节，游客可以品尝家庭自制食物。故选 B。

3. Which of the following festivals takes place in April?

A. Liuzhou Marathon Festival.

B. March 3rd Festival.

C. Dragon Boat Show.

D. Temple Fair Day.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Liuzhou Marathon Festival** 部分中的“Time: April”可知，柳州马拉松节在 4 月举办。故选 A。

B

Climate change is a big problem humans are facing. How can we deal with it? Reducing carbon emissions (碳排放) is important. But what if we could capture carbon dioxide (CO_2) from the air and use it to do other things?

Recently, SpaceX founder Elon Musk said that his company is working on a new programme. It's going to take CO_2 out of the air and turn it into rocket fuel.

“It will not only be good for Earth, but will also be important for Mars,” Musk said. The air on Mars is made up of 95 percent CO_2. If we could turn CO_2 into fuel, we could travel the long journey from Mars back to Earth in the future.

The idea may sound strange, but it's not totally crazy. There are already some technologies that might help with this. According to Di-Jia Liu, a chemist at the Argonne National Laboratory in the US, the carbon atoms (原子) in CO_2 and the hydrogen (氢) atoms in water can be combined to make methane (甲烷) or ethanol (乙醇). They could be used as fuel. If we do this on Mars, energy from the sun might be used as a catalyst (催化剂).

The idea will also make space travel more eco-friendly. “If the CO_2-based fuel could be used in a rocket launch, we could prevent 715 tons of CO_2 from being emitted into the air,” said Stafford Sheehan from Air Company, a US company that focuses on CO_2 capture technologies.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了 SpaceX 正在开发将空气中的二氧化碳转化为火箭燃料的技术及其对地球和火星的意义。

4. What is SpaceX working on?

A. Reducing CO_2 emissions.

B. Building a new rocket.

C. Turning CO_2 into fuel.

D. Travelling long distances on Mars.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知，SpaceX 正在研究的是将二氧化碳转化为燃料。故选 C。

5. What is Paragraph 4 mainly about?

A. How CO_2 can be turned into fuel.

B. Where CO_2 can be taken.

C. Why the programme should be done on Mars.

D. How the energy from the sun can be used.

A 段落大意题。根据第四段中的“the carbon atoms(原子) in CO_2 and the hydrogen (氢) atoms in water can be combined to make methane (甲烷) or ethanol (乙醇). They could be used as fuel. If we do this on Mars, energy from the sun might be used as a catalyst (催化剂)”可知，本段讲述了把二氧化碳转化为燃料的相关化学原理。故选 A。

6. What can we learn from what Stafford Sheehan said?

A. Scientists use 715 tons of CO_2 to launch a rocket.

B. Rocket launching is an environment-friendly activity.

C. There will be no CO_2 emissions anymore.

D. SpaceX's idea would be good for the environment.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The idea will also make space travel more eco-friendly.”可知，这个想法使太空旅行更加环保。所以 SpaceX 将二氧化碳转化为燃料的想法对环境有好处。故选 D。

7. Which is the best title for the text?

A. Visit Space with CO_2

B. Climate Change We Face

C. Space Travel in the Future

D. A New Programme on Mars

A　标题归纳题。根据全文内容，尤其是第二、三段的内容可知，文章主要介绍了 SpaceX 正在研究如何将空气中的二氧化碳转化为火箭燃料，如果能成功，该燃料将用于火星到地球的旅行。所以 A 项“使用二氧化碳参观太空”适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

C

If your day starts with a harsh alarm sound, you might want to rethink your wake-up routine. New research from the University of Virginia's School of Nursing suggests that the way you're waking up could be putting unnecessary stress on your heart.

Nursing doctoral student Yeonsu Kim studied 32 participants and found that being forced awake—like by a loud phone alarm—can lead to a significant morning blood pressure surge. This happens when your body is suddenly shifted from sleep to wakefulness. And it was found to be 74% higher in participants who were awakened by an alarm after five hours of sleep compared to those who woke up naturally. And that's no small concern—morning blood pressure surges have been linked to serious cardiovascular（心血管的）risks, including stroke and heart attacks.

The increase in blood pressure activates your sympathetic nervous（交感神经的）system—the same system that sets off the "fight or flight" response. That can lead to a rapid heartbeat, anxiety, exhaustion, and even physical symptoms like headaches and nosebleeds.

The good news? There are better, healthier ways to greet the day. Instead of relying on harsh alarms, many people are turning to gentler methods—and research backs them up. One popular option is a gradual light alarm, also known as a sunrise alarm clock. These devices imitate the rising sun by slowly increasing in brightness over a set period of time. The gentle light helps signal your body to reduce melatonin（褪黑激素）production and transition into wakefulness more naturally, reducing dizziness and morning stress.

There are also alarm apps that use soft music or nature sounds that gradually get louder, helping you wake without shocking your system. A 2020 study even found that melodic sounds—like a song you can sing along with—help reduce sleep inertia, a sleepy, heavy feeling that can last for hours after waking up.

Small changes can make a big difference in how your body starts the day, and your heart will thank you for it!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了被刺耳的闹钟强制唤醒可能导致血压骤升、增加心血管疾病风险，并推荐了更温和的唤醒方式，如渐亮光闹钟和柔和的音乐。

8. What physical symptoms can be caused by activating the sympathetic nervous system?

A. Nervousness and tiredness.

B. Slower heartbeats.

C. Improved sleep quality.

D. Natural wakefulness.

A　细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知，激活交感神经系统会引发焦虑和疲惫等症状。故选 A。

9. What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph?

A. How melatonin affects our sleep quality.

B. The introduction and benefits of gradual light alarms.

C. The importance of getting enough sleep every night.

D. The dangers of using traditional alarm clocks.

B　段落大意题。根据第四段中的“One popular option is a gradual light alarm, also known as a sunrise alarm clock. These devices imitate the rising sun by slowly increasing in brightness over a set period of time. The gentle light helps signal your body to reduce melatonin（褪黑激素）production and transition into wakefulness more naturally, reducing dizziness and morning stress.”可知，第四段主要介绍了渐变光闹钟的工作原理及其益处。故选 B。

10. What can be inferred from the research findings mentioned in the text?

A. Gradual waking methods may lower the risk of heart related diseases.

B. Loud alarms are the primary cause of stroke and heart attacks worldwide.

C. Reducing melatonin production immediately improves cardiovascular health.

D. People who wake up naturally never experience morning blood pressure surges.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“being forced awake—like by a loud phone alarm—can lead to a significant morning blood pressure surge”和“morning blood pressure surges have been linked to serious cardiovascular（心血管的）risks, including stroke and heart attacks”以及第四段中的“The gentle light helps signal your body to reduce melatonin（褪黑激素）production and transition into wakefulness more naturally, reducing dizziness and morning stress.”可推断，温和的唤醒方式能避免血压骤升，从而可能降低心血管疾病风险。故选A。

11. What is the main purpose of the text?

A. To persuade us to stop using alarms.

B. To criticise modern sleep habits.

C. To recommend gentler wake-up methods.

D. To compare different types of alarm sounds.

C 写作意图题。通读全文，尤其根据第一段的内容和第四段中的“The good news? There are better, healthier ways to greet the day. Instead of relying on harsh alarms, many people are turning to gentler methods—and research backs them up.”以及下文对渐变光闹钟、轻柔音乐闹钟的介绍可知，文章的主要目的是推荐更温和的唤醒方式。故选C。

D

Travel is one of the most exciting experiences that a person can have. Imagine how Italian traveller Marco Polo must have felt when he found himself on Chinese soil, seeing a way of life quite different from anything he'd seen before.

And how unbelievable must it have been to listen to Zhang Qian when he returned to China from his journey through Central Asia and West Asia? His brain must have been packed with everything he'd seen and heard, leading to the founding of the Silk Road.

Some people have travelled all over the world, and travel is a way of life to them. They perhaps know what to expect before they travel. That's why the best travel is when it's for the first time. Imagine a person who has always wanted to travel to the United States. Of course, they've probably seen the White House a thousand times on TV, and all the other famous sights. But none of that would compare to the thrill of looking out of the cabin window as the plane lands, watching the cities and streets of the real America come into view.

Although travel is often just for recreation, it's also educational. We may not know that we are getting education, but we still are.

We're learning every day: new words in a new language, new people, and new ways of life. But this learning takes place in the school of the world, not in the classroom. One of the lessons we learn is undoubtedly a moral one. As we get to know foreign places, we come to understand that there are many different ways to live, and that the way we live isn't necessarily the best way.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了旅行的好处，主要包括兴奋的体验感与教育价值——旅行者可以拓宽视野，探索不同文化和生活方式，并反思文化的多样性。

12. Why does the author use Marco Polo and Zhang Qian as examples?

A. To explain how the Silk Road was founded.

B. To describe important cultural exchanges in history.

C. To show how the way people travel has changed.

D. To present travel as an amazing experience.

D 推理判断题。根据第一、二段的内容可知，作者先提到旅行是最令人兴奋的经历之一，然后将马可·波罗和张骞的旅行经历作为例子，想象他们踏上异国土地时的美妙感受。由此推知，作者提到这两人是为了表明旅行是一种奇妙的体验。故选D。

13. By saying “the best travel is when it's for the first time” in Paragraph 3, what does the author mean?

A. One's first trip is usually the most challenging.

B. People are eager to satisfy their curiosity.

C. There is always much to learn on one's first trip.

D. People make better preparations for their first trip.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知，当旅行变成一种生活方式时，人们可能对旅行中发生的事早已有预期，但初次旅行会让人的好奇心得以满足，使人兴奋。由此可知，作者说这句话是指初次旅行时人们渴望满足自己的好奇心。故选B。

14. What does the underlined word "recreation" in Paragraph 4 probably mean?

A. Learning. B. Knowledge.

C. Fun. D. Risk.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词前表示让步关系的"Although"和画线词后的"it's also educational. We may not know that we are getting education, but we still are"可知，此处指旅行不仅仅是为了娱乐，画线词意为"娱乐；消遣"，与fun意思相近。故选C。

15. According to the last two paragraphs, what does the author believe?

A. A foreign journey may raise people's cultural understanding.

B. Travelling improves people's confidence in their lifestyle.

C. Travelling should be included in formal education.

D. There is more to learn from adventures than in classrooms.

A 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的"it's also educational"和最后一段中的"One of the lessons we learn is undoubtedly a moral one. As we get to know foreign places, we come to understand that there are many different ways to live, and that the way we live isn't necessarily the best way."可知，作者认为出国旅行可以提升人们对文化的理解，以更加开放的心态对待不同的文化。故选A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Music is a major part of our lives. We meet music almost everywhere, from car rides and homes, to fierce workouts in the gym, or even the movies and TV shows we watch. Most people enjoy listening to music and often state that they can't live without it. But why is that? **16**.

It improves sleep quality. **17**. Low and soft music works just as well as sleeping pills. Research has found that listening to music at various times promotes better sleep patterns for people and even creates more restful sleep.

18. Have you ever wondered why there is always music playing in the gym or why people can't go on runs without their headphones? Simply put, music serves as the motivation for working out harder. It's also shown that listening to music can increase endurance.

It decreases stress and anxiety. Are you ever worried or anxious about something and don't know what to do? **19**, even during highly stressful or painful events.

It may help with memory. When studying or doing the homework, do you ever find yourself moving your head to some music? Research shows that music enjoyment helps with learning and memory.

It improves your mood. **20**. Studies show that music helps put people in a better mood and helps them keep in touch with their feelings.

Whether you've realised it or not, listening to your favourite songs provides your mind and body with more than just the enjoyment of the songs. So keep on listening!

A. It helps with exercising

B. Music is a necessary part of human life

C. Listening to music can calm people down

D. If you're feeling down, music may be the perfect cure

E. It provides several health benefits that many are unaware of

F. It brings general pleasure to our lives in several different aspects

G. Listening to music has been shown to treat constant wakefulness, especially for college students

答案：16～20 EGACD

Ⅲ. 完形填空

It started so unexpectedly. Six months earlier, while warming up for a **21**, the trainer at my gym announced that she was signing up for the Mud Girl Run, a 5k obstacle（障碍）race designed for women. All money from the race would be **22** to breast cancer research. She asked me to join her team.

I really didn't know much about it. After all, I

__23__ each time I was told to run a simple lap in the parking lot. Although I was still __24__ nervous and anxious, I had to admit I was also excited. I was going to push myself to __25__ something new or step outside my comfort zone.

When I arrived at the race, I could not help but feel the __26__ of being a part of a group of women in pink shirts, crazy wigs (假发) and various costumes __27__ their particular groups. People were so __28__, but nothing was off-limits. Hearing the music and __29__ from the loudspeaker about start times created an excitement I had never felt—I was ready!

All obstacles took place in mud. They did allow participants to choose an easier path around it. But I told myself I had to try to conquer each obstacle as I didn't want to have any __30__ when it was over. Thankfully, not only did I __31__ each obstacle, I was smiling and having fun doing it __32__ the fact that I was a complete muddy mess. This wonderful group of women, some __33__ before that day, pulled each other over mud walls. They cheered each other on when someone needed __34__. It was powerful to be part of something so great.

It doesn't matter how fast or how far you're going. If you're putting on your shoes and going out for a __35__, you are making a difference.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在健身房教练的邀请下,鼓起勇气参加了一个为乳腺癌研究筹款的女子泥泞障碍赛。尽管赛前感到紧张,但她努力挑战自我,最终在比赛中克服障碍,收获了快乐、友谊与成就感。

21. A. workout　　B. lecture
C. test　　D. match
A　根据上文的"warming up"和下文的"at my gym"可知,在健身房热身是为了进行"锻炼"。故选A。

22. A. lent　　B. donated
C. returned　　D. transported
B　根据下文的"to breast cancer research"以及此类公益赛事的常见目的可知,筹集的款项会"捐赠"给相关研究机构。故选B。

23. A. reflected　　B. recovered
C. complained　　D. clapped
C　根据下文的"nervous and anxious"可推知,作者其实并不擅长跑步,因此会"抱怨"。故选C。

24. A. extremely　　B. rarely
C. possibly　　D. hardly
A　根据上文的"I really didn't know much about it. After all, I __23__ each time I was told to run a simple lap in the parking lot."可知,作者对这次比赛不了解,且自己并不擅长跑步,所以会感到"非常"紧张、焦虑。故选A。

25. A. try　　B. change
C. avoid　　D. imagine
A　根据下文的"step outside my comfort zone"可知,这是挑战自我的行为,核心是去"尝试"新事物。故选A。

26. A. pity　　B. risk
C. hope　　D. excitement
D　根据下文描述的热闹场面以及"created an excitement I had never felt"可知,作者感受到的是"兴奋"。故选D。

27. A. surprising　　B. helping
C. attracting　　D. representing
D　根据语境可知,穿着统一的、有特色的服装是为了展示团队身份,即"代表"她们的团队。故选D。

28. A. calm　　B. funny
C. creative　　D. patient
C　根据上文的"pink shirts, crazy wigs (假发) and various costumes"以及下文的"nothing was off-limits"可知,参与者的着装打扮天马行空,非常"有创意"。故选C。

29. A. announcements　　B. cheers
C. expectations　　D. congratulations
A　根据下文的"about start times"可知,喇叭里播报的是比赛开始的"通知"。故选A。

30. A. burden　　B. regret
C. honour　　D. excuse
B　根据上文的"I had to try to conquer each obstacle"可推知,作者想尽力完成所有挑战,以避免事后感到"遗憾"。故选B。

31. A. look through　　B. come across
C. draw on　　D. get over
D　根据上文的"conquer each obstacle"可知,此处指"克服"了障碍。故选D。

32. A. for　　B. despite
C. considering　　D. without
B　上文的"smiling and having fun"和下文的"a

complete muddy mess"在逻辑上是对比关系，用介词 despite 构成介词短语作让步状语，意为"尽管"。故选 B。

33. A. relatives　　B. friends
C. strangers　　D. visitors
C　根据下文的"before that day"可知，比赛当天大家才聚在一起，因此，之前很多人互不相识，是"陌生人"。故选 C。

34. A. encouragement　　B. advice
C. inspiration　　D. freedom
A　根据上文的"cheered each other on"可知，大家互相做的事情是"鼓励"。故选 A。

35. A. walk　　B. ride
C. jump　　D. run
D　本文主要围绕一场跑步障碍赛展开；上文多次提到"run"（如 Mud Girl Run、run a simple lap），且本段主题是鼓励行动，无论快慢远近，呼应了文章开头"跑"的主题，因此，此处指的是出去"跑步"。故选 D。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

The Hanyi Festival, also known as the Winter Clothing Festival, is an important traditional day of remembrance in China. It is observed **36.** annually (annual) on the first day of the tenth month of the traditional Chinese calendar. On this day, **37.** the living send warmth and care to their departed (已故的) loved ones, **38.** expressing (express) love, remembrance and filial devotion.

The origin of the festival **39.** dates (date) back to the Zhou Dynasty, **40.** when people practised the custom of bestowing (赠予) winter clothes. *The Book of Songs* records the line, "In the ninth month, winter clothing is granted", reminding people to prepare **41.** for the coming cold. Over time, the first day of the tenth month became known as the Festival of Bestowing Clothes, reflecting ancient concerns for warmth and well-being.

During the Ming Dynasty, Emperor Zhu Yuanzhang strengthened this practice by conducting a formal clothing-granting ceremony **42.** and offering warm red bean porridge (粥).

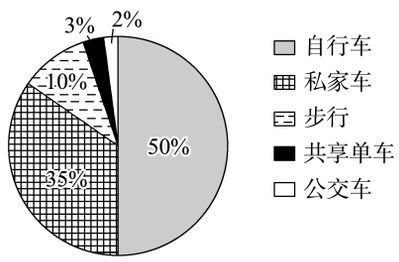
The custom gained emotional depth through the story of Lady Meng Jiang, who travelled thousands of miles to bring winter clothes to her husband building the Great Wall—only **43.** to learn (learn) his death. In grief, she burned the clothes she **44.** had prepared (prepare), letting the flames carry her love to him in the afterlife.

The Winter Clothing Festival reflects the deep Chinese **45.** values (value) of honouring ancestors, remembering one's roots, and maintaining continuity between past and present.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华，你校英文报正在开展以"Green Travel"为题的讨论。请根据图表中的调查结果写一篇英语短文投稿，内容包括：



学生出行常用交通工具统计图

1. 对学生出行常用交通工具的现状进行描述；
2. 对调查结果的评论；
3. 你的建议。

注意：词数应为 80 左右。

Green Travel

There are many ways we can choose from to travel to and from school. _____

_____

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

"What am I doing wrong?" Jasmine Wilson thought to herself as she heavily breathed. Her breathing could be heard from nearby but was drowned out by the firm steps of several pairs of feet hitting the ground, each desperately pushing forward to get to the finishing line before the other. It was her first track meet, and she had almost given up midway through the race.

She didn't know why she had decided to choose track and field as an after-school activity. As she tried to think of a reason why she had chosen to do a sport that requires a lot of hard training instead of something easier, she assumed that she had simply wanted to try it out.

Track practice was much harder than she had

expected and very exhausting. At least, that's what it felt like to her. When she observed her teammates, they seemed to run effortlessly. She wanted to be like them, but it was difficult.

"Ms Wilson, do you have a goal in mind?" Betty Jones, the coach of the track team, asked Jasmine one day after practice. "I just want you to think about that. What are you running for? Who are you running for? What will you get out of this experience, and how will that help your overall goal? These are questions that you really need to consider, Ms Wilson." The older woman placed a hand on Jasmine's shoulder with a firm look. "You don't have to answer me right now, but I look forward to hearing your answers."

At the race, small beads of sweat ran down the sides of Jasmine's flushed face and dripped onto the faded letters of the high school track team's uniform, which was close to her skin. Jasmine could barely focus on the present moment because her heart was pounding too loud in her ears.

Then, she heard someone ask, "Wilson! Ms Wilson, are you all right?" The familiar voice brought her back to her senses.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

When she looked up, it was the coach of their team, Betty Jones. _____

_____

Jasmine took a deep breath and suddenly felt full of energy. _____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Green Travel

There are many ways we can choose from to travel to and from school. As is shown in the pie chart, the most popular transportation among students is cycling, accounting for 50%. Private cars come in second place with 35%, while walking only makes up 10%. Only a small percentage of students choose shared bicycles or public transportation.

While it's great to see a high percentage of students using bicycles, we should also consider the impact of private cars on the environment. Cars give out harmful gases that contribute to air pollution and climate change.

From my point of view, we should try to reduce our dependence on cars and encourage the use of more environment-friendly transportation methods. Small changes in our daily lives can make a big difference.

第二节 读后续写

When she looked up, it was the coach of their team, Betty Jones. It was then that Jasmine twitched her mouth with tears and sweat on her face and told her that she couldn't move an inch. No sooner had she uttered the last syllable than Betty gently stroked her head. "Do you still remember the questions that I asked you the other day?" Betty encouraged her, adding, "Confronted with tiredness, you are supposed to beat yourself with determination as well as persistence, which should be your ultimate goal of running." With her words echoing in her ears, Jasmine plucked up courage to give it a try, determined and motivated!

Jasmine took a deep breath and suddenly felt full of energy. Puffing and panting, she dragged her legs with all her strength, moving towards the finishing line. With her heart thumping furiously and pulse racing, she dashed as swiftly as she could in the last 50 metres. Instantly she reached the finishing line, and thunderous applause erupted. Betty embraced her in a big hug. It was then that Jasmine shed tears of joy mingled with appreciation. Had it not been for the case, she wouldn't have realised the goal that she was running for—beating herself with steely will and determination.

Unit 4 Stage and screen

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Society", whose topic is stage and screen. The unit will present multi-modal texts such as stories and film reviews. This unit starts with introducing different kinds of stage performance forms and TV programmes, then you will read a story "When *HAMLET* meets PEKING OPERA" to raise awareness of the charm of traditional Chinese art. Then you will have the chance to listen to the cultural activities about the Music Festival. Next you will learn to write a movie review by reading the text "Good Book, Bad Movie?". In the end, you are expected to create a great living theatre about life to form the views on cultural activities. Through this unit, you are expected to figure out the differences and integration of Chinese and foreign cultures, to appreciate Chinese and foreign cultural activities by recognising cultural diversity.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"舞台艺术"主题相关的单词和词组。
		语法	能恰当使用现在分词作状语表达观看表演和参观的感受。
		语篇	能围绕"舞台艺术"的主题语境内容，基于单元提供的多模态语篇，综合运用各种语言技能，读懂语篇内容，深入理解中外文化活动。
		语用	能使用新学语言点谈论中外文化活动，恰当使用现在分词作状语，能书面表达自己对某文娱表演活动的观点。
	语言技能	听	听关于"音乐节"的对话，了解音乐节的相关事宜，思考在不同文化背景和情景下应如何对待音乐节。
		说	能谈论与舞台有关的话题，且能根据语境和情境的需要正确使用现在分词作状语，使表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读个人故事，了解京剧的鲜明特点，体会中华传统艺术的魅力； 2. 阅读影评，深入思考文学作品和影视改编的关系，初步学习影评的文体特点和写作手法。
		写	能正确运用现在分词作状语，并在真实语境中加以运用。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	通过阅读，从文章中提取事实和细节，并基于这些信息推导出合理的结论。
文化意识	了解中外文化的差异与融合，体会文化多样性，理解中外文化活动的特点。
思维品质	通过运用各种学习策略，在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中，结合所提供的反思性和评价性问题，不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程，提高自己的理解和表达能力，最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。

必备知识

必背单词	opera，movement，aspect，female，technique，transform，energetic，clap，poetry，extremely，ballet，romantic，documentary，absolutely，appealing，definitely，transport，arrangement，brief，turkey，escape，extent，original，awkward，normal，responsibility，absence，combine，absorb，behave
重点表达	be full of confidence，get across，transform... into，on the edge of one's seat，tick all the right boxes，base... on，all too often，result in，put on，live up to，stand out，to some extent，in one's own right，turn to，date back to，stay up，end up doing，be familiar with
重点知识	1. so... that... 引导结果状语从句 2. find＋宾语＋宾语补足语 3. have＋宾语＋宾语补足语
单元语法	现在分词作状语
单元写作	影评

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Master basic knowledge of this lesson and use it freely.
2. Learn about differences and similarities between opera and Peking Opera.
3. Develop reading comprehension abilities by discussing and collaborating with others.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. technique *n*. 技巧,手法
2. aspect *n*. 方面
3. incredible *adj*. 难以置信的
4. emotion *n*. 强烈的情感
5. combine *v*. (使)结合,(使)组合
6. explosive *adj*. 爆炸(式)的,爆发的
7. movement *n*. 运动,动作
8. female *adj*. 女(性)的
9. energetic *adj*. 精力充沛的,充满活力的
10. poetry *n*. 诗,诗歌
11. anger *n*. 愤怒,怒火
12. get across 解释清楚,传达
13. be familiar with 熟悉
14. date back to 追溯到

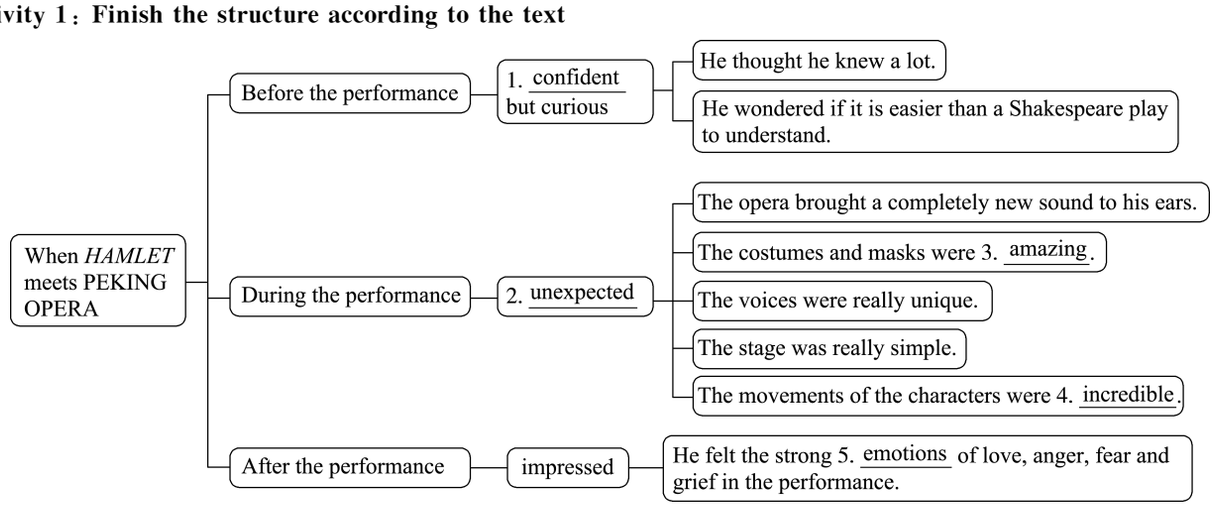
(二)阅读词汇

1. opera *n*. 歌剧
2. version *n*. 版本
3. universe *n*. 宇宙,天地,万物
4. clap *v*. 拍(手),鼓(掌)
5. string *n*. (乐器的)弦
6. grief *n*. 悲痛
7. at first 最初;首先
8. transform... into... 把……转变成……
9. on the edge of one's seat 极为激动
10. tick all the right boxes 事情发展如人所愿,一切顺利

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What do we know from the first paragraph?

A. The author majored in English literature at university.

B. Shakespeare's *Hamlet* is the most popular play in the world.

C. The author had seen the Peking Opera before.

D. The author thought he knew a great deal about *Hamlet*.

2. What made the author amazed when watching the Peking Opera?

A. The traditional Chinese instruments.

B. An instrument with two strings called *jinghu*.

C. The costumes and masks of the actors.

D. The exaggerated movements and mime.

3. What did the author like best about the play?

A. The unique voices of the actresses.

B. The movements of the performers.

C. The music made by Chinese instruments.

D. The screen with Chinese characters.

4. What does the phrase "on the edge of my seat" probably mean?

A. Very anxious.

B. Really puzzled.

C. Quite bored.

D. Very excited.

答案：1～4 DCBD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. At first, I thought what I heard was a violin, but later I learnt that it was an instrument with two strings called *jinghu*.

[句子分析]本句是一个由 but 连接的并列复合句。what 引导宾语从句作 thought 的宾语，其中 what 在从句中又作 heard 的 宾语；that 引导的宾语从句作 learnt 的宾语；called *jinghu* 作定语修饰 instrument。

[尝试翻译]起初，我以为我听到的是小提琴的声音，但后来我了解到那是一种有两根弦的乐器，叫作京胡。

2. Easily my favourite part of the show was how the characters moved on stage.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 how 引导表语从句。

[尝试翻译]很显然，我最喜欢的部分是剧中人物在舞台上的动作。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Why does the author think he knows a lot about *Hamlet*?

Because one of the author's major subjects is English literature.

2. How could you help a friend overseas understand Peking Opera?

I can introduce some knowledge about Peking Opera such as the orchestra, costumes and masks, stage sets, performers' movements and recommend some excellent Peking Opera works to them.

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十三）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Music is not just a set of sounds and rhythms. Its influence on the brain is much deeper than any other human experience. Keep on reading to know all the amazing power of music.

A recent study suggested that preterm（早产的）babies appeared to experience less pain and feed more when listening to music. Experts led by Dr Manoj Kumar of the University of Alberta, Canada, found that music had a beneficial effect on reducing the pain of preterm babies when experiencing painful medical tests. It also appeared to benefit full-term babies during operations.

Many people experiencing brain damage often have speech- and movement-related problems. Music can help them recover from brain injuries. As a different and effective treatment, doctors often advise such patients to listen to good music to improve the parts of the brain responsible for these two functions. When people with neurological（神经系统的）disorders hear a musical beat, it helps them regain a balanced walk.

Though music cannot make deafness disappear, it really can stave off the loss of hearing. There was an experiment involving 163 people, 74 of whom were musicians. Participants were asked to do some

listening tests. Musicians heard the sounds better than non-musicians, and this difference got clearer with age. This means that a 70-year-old musician hears better than a 50-year-old non-musician, even in a noisy environment.

Besides, music can mend a broken heart. It is not about a thrown-away love, but about a heart attack. The matter is that music can help people recover from a heart attack or a heart operation by reducing blood pressure, slowing down the heartbeat rate and reducing anxiety. Listening to quality music produces positive emotions, improves the movement of blood and expands blood vessels, thus promoting quick recovery of the whole cardiovascular system.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了音乐对人的大脑和心理产生的积极影响。

1. How does music affect preterm babies?

A. It helps reduce their pain.

B. It helps develop their potential in music.

C. It helps improve their hearing system.

D. It helps repair their neurological system.

A　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"A recent study suggested that preterm(早产的)babies appeared to experience less pain and feed more when listening to music."可知，早产儿在听音乐时，似乎经历的痛苦更少，吃得更多，即音乐可以帮助早产儿减少痛苦。故选A。

2. What does the underlined phrase "stave off" in Paragraph 4 probably mean?

A. Lead to.　　B. Increase.

C. Prevent.　　D. Break into.

C　词义猜测题。画线短语所在句的句意为"虽然音乐不能使耳聋消失，但它确实可以延缓听力的丧失"。由此可知，stave off意为"延缓"，四个选项中选项C意为"阻止；防止"，意思最接近。故选C。

3. Why can music mend a broken heart?

A. Because it has a positive effect on human body system's work.

B. Because it can help people prevent diseases caused by anxiety.

C. Because it helps make a person feel optimistic about life.

D. Because it can help patients recover in a slow way.

A　细节理解题。根据最后一段最后两句可知，音乐通过对人体系统的工作产生积极的影响来修复受损的心脏。故选A。

4. Which may be the best title for the text?

A. Who Can Benefit from Music

B. The Best Time to Listen to Music

C. The Way to Choose Quality Music

D. How Music Affects Our Mind and Body

D　标题归纳题。通读全文可知，本文主要介绍了音乐对人的大脑和身体产生的影响。D项最适合作本文的标题。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Painting

The art of creating pictures using colours, shapes and lines is called painting. Museums and galleries show the paintings of professional artists. But painting is also a popular form of entertainment and creative expression.

__1__ Experienced painters usually use a brush to apply oil paints to a canvas cloth surface. Young painters usually use watercolours on pieces of paper. Very young children may use finger paints to create paintings.

Painters can use their art to tell a story, to express feelings and ideas, or simply to present a pleasing picture. Some common paintings have been famous legends and events in history, as well as scenes from daily life. Artists also paint portraits or pictures of people. __2__ All of these types of paintings show the human figure in some way.

Some kinds of paintings do not focus on people. In landscape painting the focus is on scenes from nature. Artists also paint still objects such as fruit and vegetables. __3__ Some artists communicate their ideas through pictures that do not represent any object.

__4__ Paintings dating back around 15,000 years have been found on the walls of caves in France and Spain. __5__ Samples of painted pottery (陶器) from at least 5,000 years ago have been found in China and Iran. The ancient Egyptians decorated their temples with beautiful paintings. People in ancient Greece painted decorative objects such as vases in addition to the walls of temples.

A. These works are called still-life paintings.

B. These works can communicate a special feeling.

C. Humans have been making paintings for thousands of years.

D. People of all ages create pictures using a variety of materials.

E. Cave paintings generally show animals that early humans hunted.

F. The design of a painting is the plan of its lines, shapes and colours.

G. Sometimes artists make portraits of themselves, which are called self-portraits.

答案：1～5　DGACE

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Learn to use new vocabulary and expressions about Peking Opera.
2. Expand vocabulary by learning synonyms, antonyms, and related phrases.
3. Identify and understand some important sentence structures used in the text.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. An **opera** is a play with music in which all the words are sung. 歌剧
2. Climate and weather affect every **aspect** of our lives. 方面
3. The new **version** of this dictionary is not in use yet. 版本
4. He went off to change a guitar **string**. 弦
5. All the **female** workers in this factory got a present on March 8th. 女(性)的
6. When you **clap**, you hit your hands together to express appreciation or attract attention. 拍(手),鼓(掌)
7. Don't put that glass so near the **edge** of the table. 边缘
8. The **poetry** *Thoughts in a Tranquil Night* (《静夜思》) by Li Bai is popular with people from home and abroad. 诗,诗歌

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
movement *n*. 运动,动作	move *v*. 移动,搬动;搬家,搬迁;迁移;使感动 *n*. 行动,举措;移动
	movable *adj*. 活动的;可移动的
transform *v*. 使改观,使变形,使转化	transformation *n*. (彻底的)变化,转变;改革
universe *n*. 宇宙,天地,万物	universal *adj*. 宇宙的;全世界的;共同的;普遍的
energetic *adj*. 精力充沛的,充满活力的	energy *n*. 能量;精力

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
emotion *n*. 强烈的情感	emotional *adj*. 情感(上)的;情绪(上)的
anger *n*. 愤怒,怒火	angry *adj*. 生气的,愤怒的
technique *n*. 技巧,手法	technology *n*. 科技;工艺,技术,技艺
	technical *adj*. 技术(上)的;技巧的
	technician *n*. 技师;技术人员;巧匠
combine *v*. (使)结合,(使)组合	combination *n*. 结合;联合;组合;联合体;结合物
explosive *adj*. 爆炸(式)的,爆发的	explode *v*. 爆炸
	explosion *n*. 爆炸;爆发;激增

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. date back to 追溯到
2. transform... into ... 把……转变成……
3. at first 最初;首先
4. be full of ... 充满,装满……
5. get across 解释清楚,传达
6. in fact 实际上,事实上
7. combine... with ... 把……与……结合起来

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词的完成式作状语
Having seen quite a few productions of *Hamlet* and read the play many times, I was full of

confidence—until the Peking Opera came to town!

我看过好几部《哈姆雷特》的影视作品，这部戏剧我也读过很多遍了，因此我信心满满——直到城里来了京剧表演！

2. 句型公式：现在分词短语作后置定语

Starting with an orchestra playing traditional Chinese instruments, the opera brought a completely new sound to my Western ears.

戏一开场，是乐队演奏中国传统乐器，给我这个西方人的耳朵带来了一种全新的声音。

3. 句型公式：what 引导名词性从句

At first, I thought what I heard was a violin, but later I learnt that it was an instrument with two strings called *jinghu*.

起初，我以为我听到的是小提琴的声音，但后来我了解到那是一种有两根弦的乐器，叫作京胡。

4. 句型公式：so... that... 引导结果状语从句

The voices themselves sounded really unique—some of the female voices were so high that I was sure they could break glass!

那些唱腔听起来非常独特——有的女声音调太高了，以至于我肯定它们能震碎玻璃！

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. transform *v*. 使改观，使变形，使转化

[教材原文]Using such techniques, the opera had **transformed** a small stage into the whole universe.

运用这样的技巧，京剧把一个小小的舞台变成了整个宇宙。

[归纳拓展]

(1)transform... into... 把……转变成……

be transformed from... into... 由……转变成……

(2)transformation *n*. (彻底的)变化，转变；改革

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①The way in which we work has gone through a complete transformation (transform) in the past ten years.

② The movie transformed her almost overnight from an unknown schoolgirl into a star.

(2)写作微练

(2024·全国甲卷应用文写作之发言稿)从马车到今天的便捷交通工具，中国的交通发生了**显著的变化**。

From wagons to today's convenient transport, Chinese transport has undergone remarkable transformations.

2. combine *v*. (使)结合，(使)组合

[教材原文]So, if you want to see a show that **combines** music, singing, drama, poetry and costume design with explosive effect, *The Revenge of Prince Zidan* ticks all the right boxes!

所以，如果你想看一场融合了音乐、演唱、戏剧、诗歌以及惊艳服饰的表演，《王子复仇记》再合适不过了！

[归纳拓展]

(1)combine... with/and... 把……与……结合起来

combine to do sth. 联合起来做某事

(2)combination *n*. 结合；联合；组合；联合体；结合物

in combination (with) (与……)联合/结合

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① The firm is working on a new product in combination with several overseas partners.

②The two old schools are to combine to form (form) one big new school.

③Only when combined (combine) with goals can great efforts help people realise their full potential (潜力).

④(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷)It contains around 163,000 words, plus word combinations (combine) and idiomatic phrases.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)只有**将勤奋与好方法结合**，我们才能取得进步。

Only by combining diligence with good methods can we make progress.

3. get across 解释清楚，传达

[教材原文]The performers of course sang in Chinese, but the music, exaggerated movements and mime helped **get** the meanings **across** to the audience.

表演者当然用中文演唱，但音乐、夸张的动作和手

势都能帮助观众理解其中的含义。

[归纳拓展]

get along with 进展;相处

get away from 摆脱;回避;离开

get down to (doing) sth. 着手认真做某事

get into 陷入;染上(坏习惯)

get over 克服

get through 设法联系上(尤指打通电话);(设法)做完;通过;渡过(难关);用完,耗尽

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①As we all know, our friends lend us a helping hand when we need help and they help us get through difficult situations.

②(2025·全国一卷)After all, I had left him little choice. Well, he'll get over it, I reasoned.

③How can I get it across to you how important this is?

④(2025·浙江1月卷)He never got into trouble, though sometimes he wanted to do risky things.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之情节发展)做完实验后,他**开始着手准备下周的演讲**。

Having finished the experiment, he got down to preparing for the next week's speech.

②(应用文写作之建议信)听说你**和同学相处**有困难,我想给你一些建议。

Learning you have difficulty getting along with your classmates, I'd like to offer you some advice.

4. so... that... 引导结果状语从句

[教材原文]... some of the female voices were **so** high **that** I was sure they could break glass!

……有的女声音调太高了,以至于我肯定它们能震碎玻璃!

[归纳拓展]

(1)so... that... 如此……以至于……

so+{adj./adv. / adj.+a(n)+可数名词单数 / many/few+可数名词复数 / much/little(少)+不可数名词}+that...

(2)such... that... 如此……以至于……

such+{a(n)+adj.+可数名词单数 / adj.+可数名词复数 / adj.+不可数名词}+that...

名师点拨

so/such... that... 结构中,so/such... 置于句首时,主句用部分倒装,从句不倒装。

- So cold is it that you can't go outside.
- Such a difficult problem is it that I find it hard to solve.

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①There were so many goods bought on this day that the delivery time was long.

② Besides, I have such a good command of English that I am elected as the assistant to my English teacher.

③All the Chinese paintings on display are so vivid that I could hardly tell whether they are living or just painted.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之发言稿)我们**拥有如此好的机会以至于**我们应该珍惜并充分利用它。

We have such a good chance that we should value it and make full use of it.

②(读后续写之动作描写)**那只小熊幼崽玩得太入神了,都**没有察觉到有人正在靠近。

So absorbed was the bear cub in playing that it wasn't aware that someone was approaching.(so位于句首的倒装句)

多义词汇 专练

In the future, the team hopes to develop a **version** of the technology that can be sprayed onto plant leaves in a one-off treatment that would last the plant's lifetime. B

A. *n*. 改编形式,改写本

B. *n*. 变体;变种

C. *n*. (从不同角度的)说法

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十四）

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. We should pay attention to combining listening with/and speaking in learning spoken English.
2. Although the tradition of drinking tea dates back to 3000 BC in China, it was not until the mid-17th century in the UK that the concept of "afternoon tea" appeared.
3. Not having received (receive) any letter from him, I gave him a call.
4. Mr Green is energetic (energy) though he is in his seventies.
5. Loose clothing gives you greater freedom of movement (move).
6. He was filled with anger (angry) at the way he had been treated.
7. The artist combines different techniques (technique) in the same painting.
8. They find it important to give their children emotional (emotion) support.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

get... across; on the edge of one's seat; date back to; transform... into; combine... with

1. The game had the crowd on the edge of their seats.
2. It is said that Chinese dumplings date back to the Southern and Northern Dynasties.
3. As we all know, solar energy can be transformed into power.
4. My sister working in a kindergarten often uses pictures and body language to get her point across to the children.
5. If you can combine your ability with hard work, you should be very successful.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 饱受严重空气污染之苦多年后，许多市民的环保意识已显著增强。（现在分词作原因状语）
   Having suffered from severe air pollution for years, many citizens have become more aware of environmental protection.
2. 直到有一天失去健康，我们才会意识到它的真正价值。（not... until...）
   We will not realise the true value of health until we lose it one day.
3. 会议上提出的计划非常值得考虑。（过去分词短语作后置定语）
   The plan put forward at the meeting is well worth considering.
4. 这里的风景如此迷人以至于每年都有成千上万的游客蜂拥而至。（so... that...）
   The scenery here is so attractive that thousands of tourists flood in every year.
5. 我想知道我们是否能立刻采取行动改善现状。（if/whether 引导宾语从句）
   I wonder if/whether we can take immediate action to improve the situation.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

17-year-old Kate was chatting on the phone with her grandparents who had just moved into a nursing home in Birmingham. They asked if she'd come to __1__ her music in their nursing home.

Kate had been __2__ about music since her first piano lesson at 5 years old. Her __3__ were her biggest fans. She would miss seeing them in the audience. But even __4__ on her heart, Kate's family would soon be moving from Birmingham to Atlanta, and she wouldn't be able to __5__ them so often anymore.

"Of course I'll come to play for you," she told them.

Kate __6__ a date and performed a set of songs on guitar and piano, and something __7__ happened. Not only did her grandparents smile brightly, but all of the residents __8__.

The thought that her music had brought a little light into their world __9__ Kate's heart. And she decided that when she __10__, she would contact nursing homes in Atlanta and __11__ to perform for residents. Six months later, she made her first __12__ at Belmont Village Senior Living near Atlanta. As she played and sang, Kate looked out and was overjoyed to see the residents smiling happily as they __13__ along with her.

"For the longest time, I had played music for myself, but when I started playing for the __14__, I found a meaning for something that I __15__," Kate shares.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了17岁的Kate应祖父母邀请,去养老院演奏音乐,意外温暖了老人们。之后,Kate决定继续为老人演奏,并在演奏的过程中找到了音乐的意义。

1. A. create B. perform
C. write D. record
B 根据下文的"Kate __6__ a date and performed a set of songs on guitar and piano"可知,此处指Kate去养老院"演奏"音乐。故选B。

2. A. crazy B. curious
C. patient D. familiar
A 根据下文的"Her biggest fans"可知,Kate对音乐非常热爱。be crazy about意为"对……痴迷",符合语境。故选A。

3. A. parents B. grandparents
C. friends D. classmates
B 根据上文的"17-year-old Kate was chatting on the phone with her grandparents"以及下文的"She would miss seeing them in the audience."可知,此处指Kate的"祖父母"是她的粉丝。故选B。

4. A. further B. easier
C. closer D. harder
D 根据下文的"she wouldn't be able to __5__ them so often anymore"可知,搬家后不能经常去看望祖父母,这件事让她更伤心。故选D。

5. A. serve B. contact
C. visit D. comfort
C 根据上文搬家的语境可知,Kate不能经常去"看望"祖父母。故选C。

6. A. set B. missed
C. cancelled D. checked
A 根据下文的"performed a set of songs"可知,Kate"确定"了一个去演奏的日期。set a date意为"确定日期",符合语境。故选A。

7. A. important B. terrible
C. strange D. wonderful
D 根据上文祖父母笑得灿烂可知,老人们也都很喜欢这场演奏,这场演奏是"极好的"。故选D。

8. A. gave up B. broke up
C. lit up D. woke up
C 根据上文的"smile brightly"可知,老人们因为音乐而变得开心,light up在此处表示"(脸上)喜形于色"。故选C。

9. A. hurt B. warmed
C. calmed D. upset
B 根据上文音乐给老人们带来积极影响可知,Kate的内心感到"温暖"。故选B。

10. A. recovered B. graduated
C. moved D. succeeded
C 根据上文的"Kate's family would soon be moving from Birmingham to Atlanta"可知,此处指Kate"搬家"到亚特兰大后。故选C。

11. A. offer B. manage
C. agree D. promise
A offer to do sth.意为"主动提出做某事",符合Kate想为老人演奏的语境。故选A。

12. A. lecture B. meeting
C. practice D. appearance
D 根据上文的"contact nursing homes in Atlanta and __11__ to perform for residents"可知,此处指Kate再次在养老院"亮相"并演奏。故选D。

13. A. sang B. danced
C. talked D. laughed
A 根据上文的"As she played and sang"可知,老人们会跟着她一起"唱歌"。故选A。

14. A. deaf B. elderly
C. sick D. poor
B 根据上文的"nursing homes"可知,此处指为"老人"演奏。故选B。

15. A. loved B. organised
C. recommended D. preserved
A 根据上文的"Kate had been __2__ about music since her first piano lesson at 5 years old."可知,Kate一直"热爱"音乐。故选A。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify the language phenomenon of the present participle as adverbial, and summarise its usage.
2. Use the present participle as adverbial in real context.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I would be very **grateful** if you are willing to help us. 感谢的,感激的
2. If you **overcome** a problem or a feeling, you successfully deal with it and control it. 克服
3. There's nothing like candlelight for creating a **romantic** mood. 浪漫的
4. A **comedy** is a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh. 喜剧
5. He began to tell me the **plot** of the film vividly. 情节
6. He was famous for writing the music for the **ballet** *Swan Lake* in 1876. 芭蕾舞剧
7. We were watching a **documentary** about the famous war. 纪录片

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
applaud *v*. (为……)鼓掌	applause *n*. 鼓掌;喝彩
extremely *adv*. 极度,极其	extreme *adj*. 极度的
absorbed *adj*. 专心致志的	absorb *v*. 吸收;理解;吸引,使全神贯注
	absorbing *adj*. 十分吸引人的,引人入胜的
	absorption *n*. 吸收;并入;专注
absolutely *adv*. 完全地,绝对地	absolute *adj*. 绝对的,完全的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
appealing *adj*. 有吸引力的,有趣的	appeal *v*. 呼吁,恳求;上诉;有吸引力 *n*. 呼吁,恳求;上诉;吸引力;感染力
rude *adj*. 粗鲁的,无礼的	rudely *adv*. 粗鲁地,无礼地
	rudeness *n*. 粗鲁
definitely *adv*. 确切地,肯定地	definite *adj*. 明确的;确定的
arrangement *n*. 安排,筹划	arrange *v*. 安排,筹划;整理;布置;排列
transport *n*. 交通运输系统,运输方式	transportation *n*. 交通运输系统,运输方式;运输,运送

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. stay up late 熬夜
2. thanks to 多亏;由于
3. more or less 或多或少
4. put on 表演(节目);上演
5. give up 放弃;屈服
6. take place 发生;举行

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:what 引导感叹句
   What a rude person the host was!
   这个主持人真是个粗鲁的人!
2. 句型公式:it 作形式主语
   It's a wonder they didn't walk out of the studio.
   他们没走出摄影棚真是个奇迹。

3. 句型公式：现在分词短语作状语

Dating back to the 1970s, Glastonbury Festival is a music and arts festival that takes place on a large farm in Somerset in South-west England.

格拉斯顿伯里艺术节可以追溯到20世纪70年代，是在英格兰西南部萨默塞特的一个大型农场里举行的音乐艺术节。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. appealing *adj*. 有吸引力的，有趣的

[教材原文]Leopards are such **appealing** creatures and the cubs are adorable!

豹子是如此吸引人的动物，幼崽多么可爱！

[归纳拓展]

(1)appeal *v*. 呼吁，恳求；上诉；有吸引力

appeal for sth. 呼吁某事；请求给予某物

appeal to... 对……有吸引力；呼吁……

appeal to sb. for sth./to do sth. 向某人呼吁/恳求(做)某事

(2)appeal *n*. 呼吁，恳求；上诉；吸引力，感染力

make an appeal to sb. to do sth. 呼吁/恳求某人做某事

hold little appeal for sb. 对某人没什么吸引力

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国二卷)They appeal more to students.

②I am writing to make an appeal to everyone to take (take) an active part in building a more beautiful school.

③They're appealing for clothes and blankets to send to the disaster area.

④(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷)When I got back home, suddenly riding my bike didn't seem quite as appealing (appeal).

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)为了强身健体，我们学校**呼吁我们**每天至少**留出**一个小时来进行锻炼。

①Our school appeals to us to spare at least an hour every day to take exercise to build up our health. (appeal *v*.)

②Our school makes an appeal to us to spare at least an hour every day to take exercise to build up our health. (appeal *n*.)

2. arrangement *n*. 安排，筹划；布置

[教材原文]Make **arrangements** to attend a concert in another city.

安排去另一座城市听一场音乐会。

[归纳拓展]

(1)make arrangements for... 为……做出安排

make an arrangement with sb. 与某人商定或约好

come to/arrive at an arrangement 谈妥；达成协议

(2)arrange *v*. 安排，筹划；整理；布置；排列

arrange (for sb./sth.) to do sth. 安排(某人/某物)做某事

arrange that... 安排好；商定……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①I've arranged for a car to pick you up.

②I arranged (arrange) with my parents that I would borrow their car.

③After discussing for a while, we came to an arrangement (arrange) to go hiking on Saturday and have a picnic on Sunday.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动安排)我想告诉你，我和我的同学们**已安排好**下周六重阳节**去参观附近的敬老院**。

I'd like to tell you that my classmates and I have arranged to visit the nearby nursing home next Saturday for the Double Ninth Festival.

多义词汇 专练

1. **overcome**：A. *v*. 克服(困难)　B. *v*. 被(感情)控制

① He was **overcome** with grief and his friends were disappointed with his behaviour. B

② He is consciously trying to **overcome** his weaknesses. A

2. To make sure you get enough Vitamin D—but still protect your skin—**put on** sunscreen right as you head outside. A

A. 涂抹(化妆品)　B. 表演(节目)

C. 穿衣服

3. **appeal**：A. *v*. 上诉　B. *v*. 呼吁

C. *v*. 有吸引力　D. *v*. 启发

①They needed to **appeal** to his sense of justice. D

②The police are **appealing** to the public for any information about the missing girl. B

③She's not happy with the decision of the judges in the court and plans to **appeal.** A

④The range has long **appealed** to all tastes. C

语法研习课

现在分词作状语

◦语法感知

①**Having seen** quite a few productions of *Hamlet* and read the play many times, I was full of confidence—until the Peking Opera came to town!

②**Dating back to** the 18th century, Peking Opera has over two hundred years of history.

③**Starting with** an orchestra playing traditional Chinese instruments, the opera brought a completely new sound to my Western ears.

④Then, **seeing** the main characters come on stage, I was surprised!

⑤**Using** such techniques, the opera had transformed a small stage into the whole universe.

⑥**Feeling** the strong emotions of love, anger, fear and grief in the performance, I could easily recognise the theme of *Hamlet*.

1. 句①中黑体部分为现在分词的完成式,表示动作发生在谓语动词之前。句②至⑥中黑体部分为现在分词的一般式,表示动作与谓语动词同时发生。
2. 句①至⑥中现在分词的逻辑主语都是句子的主语。

◦语法精讲

一、概念理解

现在分词作状语时,表示的动作是主语动作的一部分,用来修饰谓语,常表示动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、方式、伴随、让步等,并可以转换成相应的状语从句或并列句。

动词		形式	意义
以do为例	一般式doing	主动式doing	与句子主语构成逻辑上的主谓关系,与谓语动作同时发生或基本上同时发生
		被动式being done	与句子主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系,且与谓语动作同时发生
	完成式having done	主动式having done	与句子主语构成逻辑上的主谓关系,先于谓语动作发生
		被动式having been done	与句子主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系,且先于谓语动作发生

二、语法规则

(一)现在分词作状语的用法

现在分词在句中作状语用来修饰谓语动词或整个句子,表示动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、方式、让步或伴随状况。

1. 作时间状语

现在分词作时间状语时,常放在句首,相当于一个时间状语从句。

Hearing the noise, I turned round.

=When I heard the noise, I turned round.

听到响声时,我转过身去。

2. 作原因状语

现在分词作原因状语时,相当于一个原因状语从句,也可以放在句首。

Having lived in the village for years, I know everyone quite well.

=Because I have lived in the village for years, I know everyone quite well.

因为在这个村里住了很多年,所以我非常熟悉每个人。

3. 作条件状语

现在分词作条件状语时,相当于一个 if 引导的条件状语从句。

Working hard, you'll certainly succeed.

=If you work hard, you'll certainly succeed.

如果努力工作,你肯定会成功的。

4. 作结果状语

现在分词作结果状语时,通常放在句末,中间用逗号隔开,表示自然而然、意料之中的结果,分词前可接 thus。

More highways have been built in China, **making** it much easier for people to travel from one place to another.

中国建造了更多的公路,这使人们从一个地方到另一个地方变得更容易了。

名师点拨

现在分词作结果状语,是随着谓语动作的发生而产生的自然结果,其逻辑主语往往是前面整个句子所描述的情况,前面有时候可以加 thus。而不定式作结果状语常表示出乎意料的结果,有时候前面可以加 only。

5. 作让步、方式和伴随状语

现在分词作让步、方式和伴随状语时,说明动作发生的背景和情况。作伴随状语时,表示分词的动作和谓语动作同时发生,此时可以转换成并列句。

Mary sat by the window of the classroom, **reading** a book.

= Mary sat by the window of the classroom and was reading a book.
玛丽坐在教室的窗边读一本书。

6. 作评论性状语

有些现在分词用于句首，没有逻辑主语而独立存在，作为句子的独立成分来修饰全句，表明说话者的态度、观点等，这被称为评论性状语或评注性状语。

常见的有 generally speaking 一般说来；roughly speaking 大致说来；frankly speaking 坦率地说；judging from/by 由…… 判断；considering... 考虑到；supposing... 如果；providing... 如果；assuming... 假设。

Generally speaking, children are naturally curious.
一般说来，孩子天性好奇。

Judging from his accent, he is from Henan Province.
从其口音判断，他来自河南省。

Considering the budget, we decided to give up the travelling plan.
考虑到预算，我们决定放弃这项旅行计划。

(二)现在分词作状语的注意事项

1. 时态

现在分词作状语时，要注意分词的时间性，是用现在分词的一般式(doing)，还是用完成式(having done)。

(1)当现在分词的动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生时，用分词的一般式。

Walking in the street, I met an old friend of mine.
我正在大街上行走时，遇到了一位老朋友。(walking 和谓语动词 met 同时发生)

(2)当现在分词的动作先发生，而谓语动词的动作后发生时，用分词的完成式。

Having finished the letter, he went to post it.
他写完信后就把它寄了出去。(having finished 是先发生的，went to post 是后发生的)

2. 语态

使用现在分词的主动式还是被动式，这主要取决于现在分词和句子主语之间的关系。句子的主语就是分词的逻辑主语。

Having been shown around the factory, they were very happy.
被领着参观了工厂后，他们很高兴。(现在分词的被动式)

Having finished his homework, he went to bed.
完成他的家庭作业后，他就去睡觉了。(现在分词的主动式)

3. 逻辑主语

现在分词作状语时，其逻辑主语必须与句子的主语一致。如果不一致，必须用独立主格结构来表示，也就是在分词前面加上它的逻辑主语。

My wife had a long talk with Sally, **explaining** why she didn't want the children to play together.
我的妻子与萨莉谈了很长时间，解释她为什么不想让孩子们在一起玩。(explaining 是句子主语 my wife 做出的动作，它们之间是主动关系，即 explaining 的逻辑主语就是句子的主语 my wife)

The train **having gone**, we had to wait another day.
火车已经离开，我们只好再等一天。(The train having gone 为独立主格结构，having gone 的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致)

4. 否定式

现在分词的否定式是在分词前面加上 not，never 等否定词。

Not knowing how to find the subway, I asked a policeman for help.
我不知道怎样找到地铁，就去找警察帮忙。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. (2025·全国一卷) I walked into class believing (believe) that writing is important as a means of communication.
2. (2025·全国一卷) One August afternoon, I sat in my kitchen staring (stare) at a glass vase that hadn't seen daylight since my wedding.
3. Having been asked (ask) to work overtime that evening, I missed a wonderful film.
4. Having milked (milk) cows as a boy and worked with beef cattle, I knew—so I thought—all about cows.
5. When facing (face) so many options, the lion chose to wait instead of attacking the man.
6. Not knowing (know) what to do, the children had to wait for their parents to come back.
7. Judging (judge) from the appearance, it is very peaceful, but in fact, a war will break out soon.
8. (2025·全国一卷) A couple of messages came in, one wanting (want) additional photos, another asking (ask) for a price cut.

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. Not having finished her work in time, the boss fired her.
由于没有及时完成工作，老板解雇了她。
2. Personally speaking, I'm satisfied with your performance.
就我个人而言，我对你的表现很满意。
3. There being no teacher in the classroom, the pupils began to talk freely.
由于教室里没有老师，学生们开始自由交谈。
4. Setting off earlier, you'll get to the small town at dusk.
如果早点出发的话，你就会在傍晚的时候到达小镇。
5. Having tried many times, he still couldn't succeed.
尽管尝试了多次，但他仍未成功。

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十五）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 词语填空

appealing; transport; definitely; grateful; stay up late; put on; overcome; more or less

1. Please tell us definitely whether you will be coming or not.
2. As long as we have a strong will, we will be able to overcome any difficulty.
3. No words are strong enough to express how grateful I am to you for your help.
4. We've tried to make the design more appealing to young people.
5. With so many audience in front of us, we felt more or less nervous.
6. Since the film was put on in 2024, it has scored the second biggest opening in the film company's history.
7. You shouldn't stay up late at night. It's bad for your health.
8. China's large, twin-engine unmanned transport aircraft made its maiden flight on August 11, 2024.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. Combining (combine) two or more elements in a chemical way, you will get at least one new substance.
2. Kids usually finish school at 3:30 pm, but most parents work until 6:00 pm, making (make) it hard for them to pick their kids up.
3. This isn't as hard as it sounds, and it is far better than any other methods because you improve your vocabulary while reading (read) an interesting piece of literature.
4. Facing (face) tough challenges, the Chinese women's volleyball team still won the Olympic title in Rio.
5. It rained heavily in the south, causing (cause) serious flooding in several provinces.
6. Translated (translate) into English, the sentence has an entirely different word order.
7. Traditional Chinese activities, such as the dragon dance and Peking Opera, are performed as fixed programmes, adding (add) diversity to local culture.

Ⅲ. 句型转换

1. I stood there and waited for her.
   →I stood there, waiting for her.
2. Please answer the question and use another way.
   →Please answer the question using another way.
3. If you turn to the right, you will find a path leading to his cottage.
   →Turning to the right, you will find a path leading to his cottage.
4. Although I admit what she has said, I still think that she hasn't tried her best.
   →Admitting what she has said, I still think that she hasn't tried her best.
5. When they heard the news, they immediately set off for Shanghai.
   →Hearing the news, they immediately set off for Shanghai.

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Peking Opera is considered to be a Chinese national treasure. Though it's called that name, it is not performed only in Beijing.

While we were in Yunnan, we watched a community performance of Peking Opera. The leader and the teacher of this group had retired from the Peking Opera Troupe. The rest of the group consisted of local retired men and women.

Our guide gave us an example of how each of the characters would be played. The male characters include an old man, a middle-aged man, a young man, and a small boy. Each of these characters will wear different costumes. The old man will move around like he has no sense of balance. The middle-aged man will walk slowly with large steps around the stage as if he owns the world. And the young man will dance around. Everyone laughed when the young man put on artificial hair and danced around the stage as if he was ten years old.

Our guide even told us about the different roles of women. The main differences with the women's ages are how a woman walks and her water sleeves. For the older women, they are more dignified (高雅的) in the way they walk. For the younger women,

it is more about being graceful（优雅的）with the water sleeves.

The costumes of both the men and women hang according to the rank of the character being played and the age of the characters. It doesn't matter what age the actors are because the make-up will either make them look younger or older.

After seeing that performance, we began to fall in love with this great Chinese national treasure.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者在云南旅游时观看一场京剧表演的经历。

1. What do we know about the guide?
A. He knew very well about Peking Opera.
B. He taught the author to sing Peking Opera.
C. He was good at performing Peking Opera.
D. He dreamed of performing Peking Opera.
A 推理判断题。根据第三、四段的内容可知，导游讲了很多关于京剧的知识。由此可推知，他对京剧很了解。故选A。

2. What mainly helps show the women characters' ages?
A. The clothes they wear.
B. The colour of their hair.
C. The colour of their face.
D. The way they move.
D 细节理解题。根据第四段第二句可推知答案。故选D。

3. What does the author think of Peking Opera?
A. It's simple and boring.
B. It's well worth seeing.
C. It's hard to understand.
D. It's helpful to his career.
B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知，作者认为京剧是很值得观看的。故选B。

4. What's the text mainly about?
A. The author's opinion about Peking Opera.
B. How the retired people continued their career.
C. The author's experience of watching Peking Opera.
D. How to recognise different characters in Peking Opera.
C 主旨大意题。文章主要讲述了作者在云南旅游时观看一场京剧表演的经历。故选C。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Acquire the main idea of this text.
2. Analyse the structure of argumentative essays.
3. Argue why some literature failed to be changed into movies.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you **escape** from a place, you succeed in getting away from it. 逃离
2. It is well-known to us that rainforests are disappearing to an alarming **extent**. 程度

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
brief *adj*. 短暂的	briefly *adv*. 短暂地；简明地
disappointed *adj*. 失望的，沮丧的	disappoint *v*. 使失望，使扫兴
	disappointing *adj*. 令人失望的
	disappointment *n*. 失望，沮丧

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
original *adj*. 原先的，最初的	originally *adv*. 原先，最初
	origin *n*. 起源；出身，血统
fictional *adj*. 虚构的，编造的，小说(中)的	fiction *n*. 小说
awkward *adj*. 紧张的；不舒适的	awkwardly *adv*. 尴尬地
	awkwardness *n*. 尴尬
behave *v*. 表现	behaviour *n*. 行为，举止；表现方式
responsibility *n*. 责任	responsible *adj*. 有责任的，应负责任的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
absence *n*. 缺乏，没有	absent *adj*. 不在的，缺席的
normal *adj*. 正常的，平常的	normally *adv*. 通常，平常；正常地
	abnormal *adj*. 不正常的，反常的；变态的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. base... on 以……为基础
2. stand out 突出；显眼；杰出
3. turn to 转向；求助于
4. result in 导致；造成
5. live up to 符合(标准)，不负(盛名)
6. to some extent 在某种程度上
7. all too often 时常，经常是
8. in one's own right 凭借自身，靠自己

Ⅳ. 补全句子

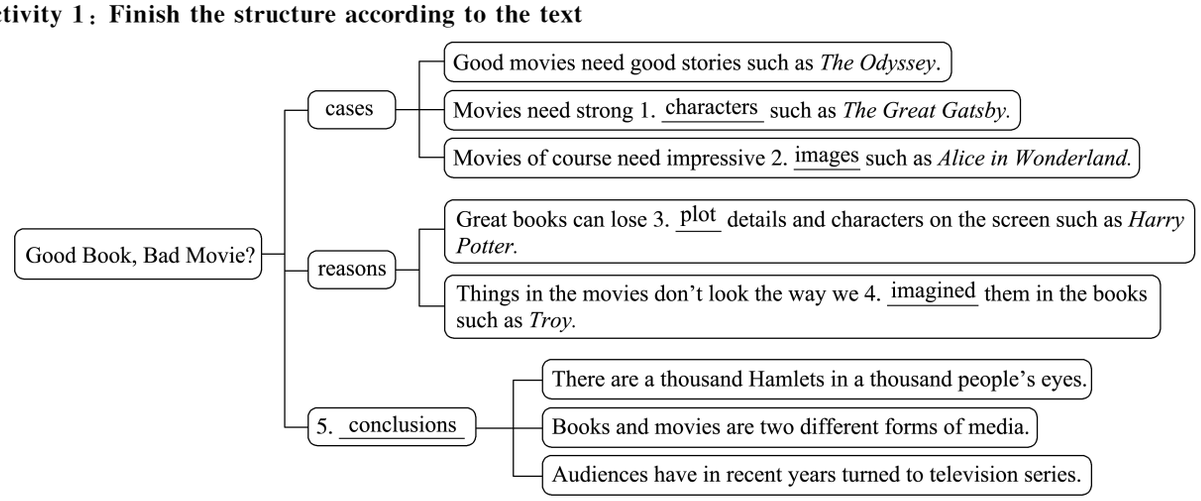
1. 句型公式：have＋宾语＋宾语补足语
   They say that "a picture is worth a thousand words", but the briefest look at books and the movies based on them would have anyone questioning this common saying.
   人们常说"一图胜千词"，但是简单对照一下书籍和由之改编的电影，就会让人开始质疑这种说法。
2. 句型公式：if so
   If so, why has one of the earliest and greatest works in Western storytelling, Homer's *The Odyssey*, never had an equally great movie based on it?
   如果是这样，那为什么西方最早也是最优秀的叙事文本之一——荷马的《奥德赛》从未产生过同样优秀的改编电影呢？
3. 句型公式：现在分词短语作结果状语
   Many people thought she didn't live up to Helen's title of "the most beautiful woman in the world", influencing opinions of the movie to some extent.
   许多人认为她配不上海伦"世上最美女人"这一称号，这在某种程度上影响了人们对这部电影的评价。
4. 句型公式：find＋宾语＋宾语补足语
   Perhaps, one day, readers of F.Scott Fitzgerald's most admired work will find themselves glued to their screens by episodes of *The Great Gatsby*.
   或许有一天，F. 斯科特·菲茨杰拉德最受推崇的作品的读者们会发现自己已被《了不起的盖茨比》的剧集牢牢地吸引住了。
5. 句型公式：not... but...
   Courage is not the absence of fear, but rather the judgement that something else is more important than fear.
   勇气不是没有恐惧，而是一种判断，认为别的东西比恐惧更重要。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why do so many people feel disappointed when a good book is made into a film?
   A. Because the film usually fails to satisfy their imagination.
   B. Because the film ignores the main characters in the book.
   C. Because the film changes the background without permission.
   D. Because the film uses too many expensive special effects.
2. In the author's opinion, how should we judge the quality of a movie?
   A. Whether the movie has received high praise from people.
   B. Whether the movie is good or not by its own rules.
   C. Whether the movie has more details and characters.
   D. Whether the movie has a fascinating plot.
3. What's the most controversial issue of the movie *Troy*?
   A. The actress chosen to play Helen.
   B. The mixed reviews from the audience.
   C. The beautiful images of the movie.
   D. The background music of the movie.
4. What is the writer's attitude towards books and their film versions?
   A. He thinks films are always better than books.
   B. He believes books are always better than films.
   C. He accepts they are different art forms.
   D. He suggests people who only read books should not watch films.

答案：1～4 ABAC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. One of the key reasons behind this is that while a book usually takes a few days to read, a movie typically lasts under two hours.
   [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。其中 that 引导的是表语从句。
   [尝试翻译]这背后的一个关键原因是，读一本书通常需要几天的时间，而看一部电影通常持续不到两个小时。
2. This is something that even the highly successful Harry Potter movies can't escape from, with fans of the books disappointed not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions.
   [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。that 引导的定语从句修饰 something；with fans of the books disappointed 是 with 复合结构；not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions 是不定式短语作原因状语。
   [尝试翻译]这是连大获成功的“哈利·波特”系列电影也无法避免的事情，有的书迷因为在电影中看不到自己最喜欢的一些角色而大失所望。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Which movie adaptation is your favourite? Why?
   略
2. Have you ever read the book *Dream of the Red Chamber*? What is it about?
   略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. escape *v.*（从危险或糟糕的处境中）逃离，逃避，摆脱；被忘掉，被忽视；泄漏 *n.* 逃走，逃脱

[教材原文]This is something that even the highly successful Harry Potter movies can't **escape** from, with fans of the books disappointed not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions.

这是连大获成功的“哈利·波特”系列电影也无法避免的事情，有的书迷因为在电影中看不到自己最喜欢的一些角色而大失所望。

[归纳拓展]

(1)escape from 从……逃脱；逃避

escape (doing) sth. 逃避(做)某事

escape one's attention/notice 逃过某人的注意

sth. escape(s) sb. 某人忘记某物

(2)make one's escape 逃跑

fire escape 太平梯

a narrow escape 九死一生；死里逃生

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① The young man was lucky enough to escape from the burning car.

②No one can escape being punished (punish) if he/she breaks the law.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之场景描写)最后,我们**九死一生**,幸运地**逃过了**被那头饥饿的北极熊**伤害**。

At last, we had a narrow escape, fortunately escaping being hurt by the hungry polar bear.

②(读后续写之情绪描写)昨天,我碰见了一位我以前的同学,但是**我记不起来他的名字了**,这让我很尴尬,脸上发烫。

Yesterday, I came across one of my former classmates, but his name escaped me, which made me embarrassed, feeling my face burning.

2. responsibility *n*. 责任

[**教材原文**]The movie explores the theme of **responsibility** in an intelligent and humorous way.

这部电影以智慧和幽默的方式探讨了责任的主题。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)bear/take (the) responsibility for 承担对……的责任,为……负责

have responsibility for (doing) sth. 有(做)某事的责任

It's one's responsibility to do sth. 某人有做某事的责任。

a sense of responsibility 责任感

(2)responsible *adj*. 有责任的,应负责任的

be responsible for 应对……负责,对……有责任

be responsible to sb. 对某人负责

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国一卷) Moving goods and people around the world is responsible for a large part of global CO_2 emissions (排放).

②It is his sense of responsibility (responsible) and devotion (奉献) to the medical career that makes us admire him.

③(2023·新课标Ⅰ卷) Taking responsibility for mistakes is a positive step, but don't beat yourself up about them.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)**呼吁人们**保护我们的环境免受污染**是我们的责任**。

It is our responsibility to appeal to people to protect our environment from being polluted.

3. stand out 突出,显眼,杰出

[**教材原文**]The characters do not **stand out**.

这些角色并不突出。

[**归纳拓展**]

stand by 站在旁边;袖手旁观

stand for 代表,表示;主张,支持;容忍

stand on one's own feet 自立;不依靠他人

stand up for 支持;维护

can't stand (doing) sth. 不能忍受(做)某事

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国一卷) What do the numbers on the signs stand for?

②Some parents worry about their children who are not able to stand up for themselves in life.

③Good Heavens! How could you stand by and allow such a thing to happen!

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之邀请信)你一定会**在这场**艺术人才云集的**摄影比赛中脱颖而出**。

You are certain to stand out in the photography contest where artistic talents gather.

②(应用文写作之建议信)在中国,红色**代表美丽**、生命和幸福,所以你可以穿红色衣服去拜访一个中国家庭。

In China, red stands for beauty, life and happiness, so you can visit a Chinese family dressed in red.

4. absence *n*. 缺乏,没有;缺席,不在

[**教材原文**]Courage is not the **absence** of fear, but rather the judgement that something else is more important than fear.

勇气不是没有恐惧,而是一种判断,认为别的东西比恐惧更重要。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)absence from 缺席;不在

absence of mind 心不在焉

in one's absence 某人不在时

in the absence of 在不存在……的情况下

(2)absent *adj*. 不在的,缺席的

be absent from 不参加;缺席

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国二卷)The sun-dried clothes smell especially pleasant where I live, thanks to the absence (absent) of smog...

② In the proper instructions' absence, I don't know how to combine what I've learnt with practice.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之道歉信)我写这封信是为了向你道歉,**因为我没有参加**英语俱乐部的**活动**。

I am writing to make an apology to you for being absent/my absence from the activity of the English club.

5. find+宾语+宾语补足语

[**教材原文**]Perhaps, one day, readers of F. Scott Fitzgerald's most admired work will **find themselves glued to their screens** by episodes of *The Great Gatsby*.

或许有一天,F. 斯科特·菲茨杰拉德最受推崇的作品的读者们会发现自己已被《了不起的盖茨比》的剧集牢牢地吸引住了。

[**句式分析**]find oneself... 意为"发现自己处于某种境地",而且含有"在不知不觉中……"的意思。

[**归纳拓展**]

"find+宾语+宾语补足语"的结构形式归纳:

find+宾语+{现在分词(表示主动、进行); 过去分词(表示被动、完成); 形容词/副词; 介词短语}

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①It was not until I got to the office that I found my key left (leave) at home.

②He hurried to the store, only to find the door closed (close).

③(2025·全国二卷)Over time, I've found myself feeling (feel) extremely at home here.

④With so much noise around, he found it hard to settle down to his work.

(2)写作微练

①(2026·浙江1月卷应用文写作之投稿)你是否曾翻开一本图书馆的书,却**发现里面满是划线和笔记**?

Have you ever opened a library book only to find it filled with highlights and notes?

②(读后续写之动作描写)当我打开门时,我**发现我们的数学老师正被**一群好奇的孩子们**围着**。

When I opened the door, I found our maths teacher being surrounded by a group of curious kids.

多义词汇 专练

1. escape: A. *n*. 逃脱 B. *n*. 泄漏 C. *v*. 被忘掉 D. *v*. 逃离

①Bob looked back only to find an old classmate whose name **escaped** him for the moment. C

②The thief jumped into a car and made his **escape**. A

③They tried to stop the **escape** of gas from the damaged pipe (管道). B

④He broke down the locked door and **escaped**. D

2. brief: A. *adj*. 短暂的 B. *adj*. 简洁的 C. *n*. 案情摘要

①The article gives a **brief** analysis of Western composing skills in the 1990's. B

②We have a tight schedule for your **brief** visit. I hope you don't mind. A

③Courts have rules governing the format and content of **briefs**. C

Unit 4 课后素养评价(十六)

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. He had a brief (短暂的) visit to the city last week.

2. His latest movie is a real turkey (失败之作).

3. The movie was an epic (史诗般的) masterpiece, earning praise from critics and audiences alike.

4. He broke down the locked door and escaped (逃走).

5. The writer's room still has many of its original (最初的) features.

6. He tried to dance, but he was too clumsy and awkward (不舒适的).

7. Most parents agree that it's hard to train children to behave (表现) well at the table.

8. With her parents' help, Lucy is generally able to live a normal (正常的) teenage life.

9. She noticed the absence (缺乏) of pictures in the book.

10. Stepping into the theme park, she felt like she had entered a wonderland (仙境) of colour, excitement, and endless fun.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. They gradually add more and more fictional (fiction) elements.
2. He looked disappointed (disappoint) when he saw that his favourite team had lost the game.
3. The stage is simple, but the performance (perform) will not make the audience disappointed.
4. Whenever he has a bit of spare time, he uses it to memorise (memory) English words.
5. It is their responsibility (responsible) to ensure that the rules are enforced.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

(be) based on; all too often; stand out; result in; take responsibility for; live up to; to some extent; turn to; in one's own right; in the absence of

1. Those with a vivid imagination tend to stand out in some creative work.
2. Research has shown that having a preference for junk food can result in obesity.
3. Have you ever seen the movies or TV plays based on these fictional stories?
4. She was full of anger and grief because he had failed to live up to his original promise.
5. There is no doubt that overusing the Internet to some extent does harm to people's mental and physical health.
6. Some people get awkward all too often because they are rude to others.
7. Advertising is not just propaganda (宣传). A super TV advertisement has become an art in its own right.
8. After he left university he became a teacher, but later turned to journalism.
9. In the absence of teachers' instruction, I don't know how to combine what I've learnt with practice.
10. We are supposed to take responsibility for our own behaviours and try our best to protect the environment.

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 电影的历史要短得多，尤其是与音乐、绘画等艺术形式相比。(省略句)
   Film has a much shorter history, especially when compared to such art forms as music and painting.
2. 人们喜欢旅游的主要原因是它不仅可以令人放松而且还可以开阔视野。(The reason why... is that...)
   The main reason why people like travelling is that it can not only relax people, but also broaden their horizons.
3. 他发现这篇课文很难理解，所以向老师求助。(find+宾语+宾语补足语)
   He found the text difficult to understand so he turned to his teacher for help.
4. 记住这一点，你就会发现理解这个长句很容易。(with 复合结构)
   With this point in mind, you will find it easy to understand the long sentence.
5. 重要的不是发生了什么，而是你如何应对它。(not... but...)
   It's not what happens to you, but how you react to it that matters.
6. 很抱歉让你在这里等了这么久。(have+宾语+宾语补足语)
   I'm sorry to have you waiting here so long.

Ⅴ. 语法填空

The newly published book, *Qinqiang Opera*, offers a close look into the time-honoured art form. The guide to Qinqiang Opera **1.** was published (publish) by CITIC Press Group in Beijing last month. Titled *Qinqiang Opera*, the volume serves as both a systematic art collection and a visual (可视化的) album, covering 300 high-quality stage **2.** images (image) and detailed hand-drawn pictures that offer readers a close look into the difficult art form and its thousand-year development.

The publication represents an important **3.** contribution (contribute) to the efforts to document and safeguard the cultural heritage. Not only does it track the art form's historical development over a thousand years, but it also **4.** clearly (clear) shows the artistic lives and hard work of 14 inheritors (继承人), highlights the stagecraft of 12 modern master performers and explores the **5.** creative (create) work of nine key troupes (剧团) and institutions. Together, these factors provide materials of Qinqiang Opera as a living cultural tradition.

Author Ding Kemin, **6.** a researcher in Chinese opera arts, explains that Qinqiang Opera experienced transformative development in its musical and performative form, reaching its highest point in the Qing Dynasty **7.** when it enjoyed nationwide popularity.

Despite its rich heritage, most publications on the subject **8.** are intended (intend) for specialists and professional troupes, leaving a gap in attractive materials for general readers. Thus, Ding created the book to bridge scholarship and popular understanding, **9.** mixing (mix) ancient tradition with youthful interest and classic art with modern performance. The book aims to introduce Qinqiang Opera **10.** to a broader audience and bring the art form beyond professional circles.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华，上周六你校组织观看了《我和我的祖国》(*My People, My Country*)，请就此电影写一篇影评。

注意：词数80左右。

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once, when I was a teenager, my father and I were standing in line to buy tickets for the circus (马戏). Finally, there was only one family between us and the ticket counter.

This family made a big impression on me. There were eight children, all probably under the age of twelve. You could tell they didn't have a lot of money.

Their clothes were not expensive, but they were clean. The children were well-behaved, all of them standing in line, two-by-two behind their parents, holding hands. They were excitedly talking about the clowns, elephants, and other acts they would see that night with their brothers or sisters in a low voice.

One could sense they had never been to the circus before. It promised to be a highlight of their young lives. The father and mother were at the head of the pack, standing proud as they could be. The mother was holding her husband's hand, looking up at him as if to say, "You are my knight in shining armor."

He was smiling and responding in pride, looking back at her as if to say, "You got that right." The ticket lady asked the father how many tickets he wanted. He proudly responded, "Please let me buy eight children's tickets and two adult tickets, so I can take my family to the circus."

The ticket lady gave the price. The man's wife let go of his hand. Her head dropped, and her lips began to tremble. The father leaned a little closer and asked, "How much did you say?"

The ticket lady again quoted the price. The man didn't have enough money.

How was he supposed to turn and tell his eight children that he didn't have enough money to take them to the circus? Actually we were not wealthy in any sense. So I understood how the kids would feel. I felt sorry for them.

注意：续写词数应为150左右。

Seeing what was going on, my dad put his hand in his pocket, pulled out a 20-dollar bill and dropped it on the ground. _____

That day my father and I went back to our car and drove home without any tickets. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

My People, My Country is an outstanding film. It presents seven significant historical events in China.

Each of the seven stories in *My People, My Country* is a microcosm of the larger narrative of China's development and progress. It serves as a reminder of the sacrifices, efforts, and joys that have accompanied China's journey from a newly-founded nation to a global power. In terms of acting, the actors manage to bring authenticity to their roles, making the characters feel like real people we might have met in our daily lives. Their performances are so impressive that the audience can't help but be drawn into their joys, sorrows, and struggles.

This film is a must-watch for anyone who wants to understand the complex and beautiful relationship between the Chinese people and their motherland.

第二节 读后续写

Seeing what was going on, my dad put his hand in his pocket, pulled out a 20-dollar bill and dropped it on the ground. Then he picked it up and tapped the man on the shoulder and said, "Excuse me, sir, this fell out of your pocket." The man turned around and saw the money. He knew what was going on. He looked straight into my dad's eyes, took my dad's hand in both of his, squeezed tightly onto the 20-dollar bill, and with his lip shaking and eyes filled with tears, he replied, "Thank you, thank you, sir. This really means a lot to me and my family."

That day my father and I went back to our car and drove home without any tickets. We didn't go to the circus that night. When I asked Dad why he did so, Dad said, "My child, it was a desperate, heartbreaking and embarrassing situation for a father. Surely he wasn't begging for a handout, but he reminded me of my father, when I was young." He paused for a while, as if wandering in his memory. "We should appreciate what we have obtained from life and seize every opportunity to help others. We didn't go to the circus tonight, but we didn't go without anything. Now, who wants an ice cream?"

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——影评

○写作指导

写影视评论时，评论者要选择评论影片的角度。通常评论者对于评论角度的选择应遵循以下原则：

第一，影片最突出的方面；

第二，影片中最具有特色的方面；

第三，影片中最具有思想价值的方面。

1. 主题思想。主题思想即影片的主旨，是指影片通过人物形象塑造和生活场景描绘所表现出的中心思想。
2. 人物形象。影片中的人物通常是人们评论的重点，人物形象的塑造是否具有特色，是影片能否成功的关键。

○典题示例

假如你是李华，上周日你校组织观看了《长津湖》(*The Battle at Lake Changjin*)，请就此写一篇影评。词数：80左右。

参考词汇：恶劣的 harsh；繁荣 prosperity

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 介绍该电影取得的成就 2. 简要介绍影片主要内容 3. 发表评论

Step 2：要点补全

①Many famous actors play the leading roles in the film（主演这部电影）*The Battle at Lake Changjin*.

②The film makes many people moved（使很多人感动）and gets a huge box office success.

③One of the most impressive scenes（最令人感动的一幕之一）is that the enemy took advantage of（利用）the gap between the wars to enjoy delicious food, while each of our soldiers（而我们的每一名战士）could only be allocated one mouldy potato.

④ These heroes have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity（用他们的生命换来了现在的和平与繁荣）.

⑤Their stories deserve to be heard（值得被听到）by us and the history should never be forgotten.

Step 3：句式升级

①用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的句①②

The film *The Battle at Lake Changjin*, in which many famous actors play the leading roles, makes many people moved and gets a huge box office success.

②用强调句改写 Step 2 中的句④

It is these heroes who have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity.

Step 4：连句成篇

The film *The Battle at Lake Changjin*, in which many famous actors play the leading roles, makes many people moved and gets a huge box office success.

In the film, under the extremely cold and harsh environment, the Chinese People's Volunteer Army went to Korea to fight. One of the most impressive scenes is that the enemy took advantage of the gap between the wars to enjoy delicious food, while each of our soldiers could only be allocated one mouldy potato. Although our soldiers did not have the advanced equipment of the enemy, they moved forward bravely with strong will and faith until the victory!

It is these heroes who have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity. Their stories deserve to be heard by us and the history should never be forgotten.

○学以致用

假定你是李华，你校在学校礼堂放映了电影《一条狗的回家路》。请你根据表格提示，介绍并评论这部电影。

英文名称	*A Dog's Way Home*
类型	冒险
导演	查尔斯·马丁·史密斯（Charles Martin Smith）
剧情	一只名叫贝拉（Bella）的狗，在与主人失散后走上了一条充满未知的冒险回家路。

【参考范文】

The film *A Dog's Way Home* is an adventure film directed by Charles Martin Smith. The film tells the story of a dog named Bella who travels four hundred miles in search of her home.

On Bella's way home, she overcomes various difficulties and even faces the risk of losing her life several times. However, Bella never gives up and finally makes her way home. The plot of the film is smooth and touching, and the character Bella's image as a dog arouses the audience's pity. Some parts are humorous while others are exciting. Besides, the friendship between Bella and other characters is heart-warming.

Animals are human's friends and should be treated kindly. May all of the lost dogs find their way home.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章，完成任务。

I stared at myself in the mirror: blue tights, a yellow vest, a fish tail trailing behind me, and large eyes sitting atop my head. I raised my eyebrows and sighed.

"Mum, I don't think this costume is right," I said. "Maybe the makeup will add something," Mum replied hopefully.

Somehow Mum had convinced me to play the Fish Footman in *Alice in Wonderland*. I can't say it's been the time of my life.

"What if I forget my lines?" I hesitated.

"Oh Riley, is that what you're afraid of? I know you've been rehearsing for two months, you were the first off-book in your scene, and I couldn't be prouder of you," Mum said, kneeling down and hugging me.

The next day we pulled into the parking lot, and I stepped out of the car, wearing the questionable costume. I shrank inside myself, but Mum pulled me towards the makeup room. When the makeup was done, I looked at myself in the mirror. My jaw dropped.

"Mum! I can't go onstage like this!" I cried. "Why not?"

"I'd be a laughing stock (笑柄)!"

"Riley, look around you! You're not the only one in an odd costume." "What if we just sneak out? No one will miss me," I whispered.

Mum's lips disappeared into a thin line, and I knew I had gone too far. "Riley, I'm going to watch you go out on that stage tonight. And that's the end of it." Then Mum disappeared into the audience. I sat there, alone and bored, as the play began and the curtain rose on.

The two boys dressed as Two of Clubs (梅花 2) near me chatted casually about this and that. Suddenly, they asked, "You're awfully quiet. Is this your first show?" I tried to respond, but my voice caught in my throat and refused to escape. I coughed and nearly yelled, "YES!"

The Ace of Diamonds (方块 A) sitting nearby laughed. "The audience will certainly hear you if you talk that loud. But you might have to clear your throat first," she chuckled. I gave them a weak smile.

"Don't worry about us," the Ace said. "We're only teasing."

"Yeah," the Two said. "When you've done as many shows as we have, projecting will be second nature to you."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

When my name was called, I stepped onto the stage uneasily. _____

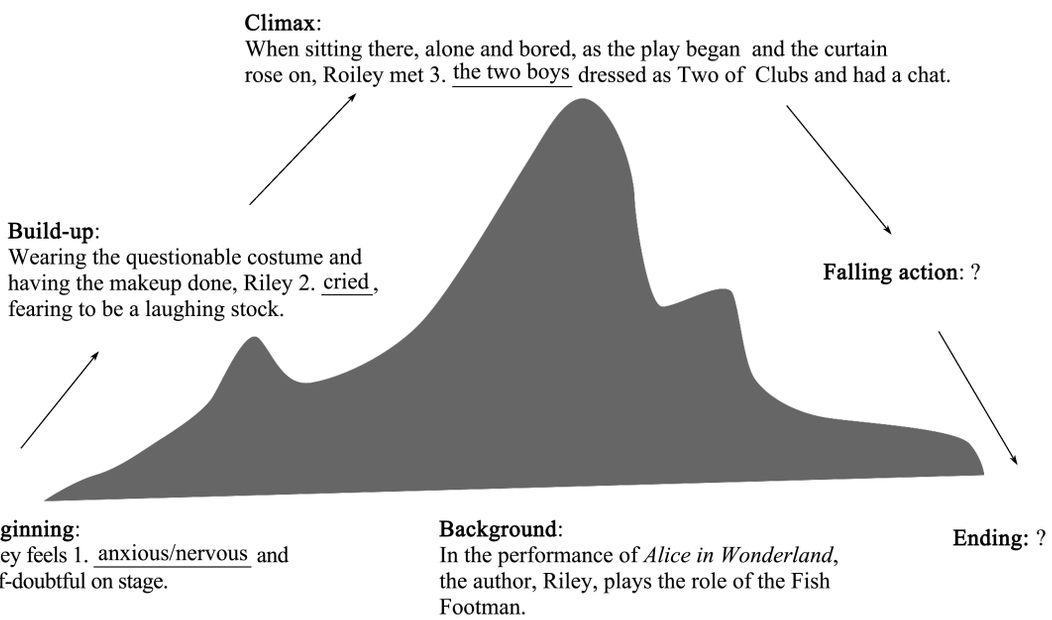
_____

Suddenly I was determined to make a lasting impression. _____

_____

_____

任务一:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务二:根据段落开头提示语,构思故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1: When my name was called, I stepped onto the stage uneasily. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. Why did I step onto the stage with unease? Because of the bright lights and the weight of the audience's expectant gazes. 2. What did I react on the stage? I just recited lines which were rehearsed under the stage before. 3. What did the audience react to my performance? The audience seemed uninterested and just remained silent.
Paragraph 2: Suddenly I was determined to make a lasting impression. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What inspired me to change my performance? Remembering the confidence of others who had also stepped onto the stage. 2. What did the audience react to my changes? The audience warmly applauded my changed performance. 3. How did the audience's reaction affect me? It fuelled my confidence.

任务三:细化情节,遣词造句。

1. The bright lights blinded me for a moment (片刻), and I felt the weight of the audience's expectant gazes.
2. Despite that, my muscle memory took over (接管).
3. We had rehearsed so many times that I was like a robot, reciting my lines (背台词) in the most monotone (单调的) voice imaginable.

4. A small part of my brain whispered that I had said these lines much better in rehearsal, but I pushed that voice away (把那个声音推开了).
5. I just wanted to get off stage (离开舞台) as fast as possible.
6. Soon, the end of my scene was approaching, and I grew uncomfortably aware (不安地意识到) that the audience had indeed been very quiet during it.
7. Had I done something wrong (做错了事)?
8. Didn't they like me (他们不喜欢我吗)?
9. I remembered the Two of Clubs and the Ace of Diamonds, and their easy confidence (他们从容不迫的自信).
10. They, too, had started somewhere, likely just as nervous and uncertain as I was now (和现在的我一样紧张和迟疑).
11. Then I straightened my spine, cleared my throat (清了清嗓子), and yelled with all the force I could muster.
12. Obviously, the audience heard me (观众听到了我的话).
13. As the dialogue began, I found my voice, clear and strong (清晰而有力), resonating through the theatre.
14. I moved with purpose, embracing the absurdity of my costume and transforming it into a character (把它转变成了一个角色) that was both comical and endearing.
15. With each passing minute, my confidence grew, fuelled by the audience's laughter and applause (在观众的笑声与掌声的鼓舞下), their enjoyment tangible proof that I had overcome my fears (我已经战胜恐惧).
16. As the final curtain fell, Mum found her way backstage, her eyes shining with pride (闪烁着自豪的光芒).
17. "You were amazing, Riley," she whispered (她小声说).
18. In that moment, I realised that stepping out of my comfort zone (走出我的舒适区), despite the initial hesitation and fear, had led me to discover a strength within myself (发现自己身上的力量) that I never knew existed.

任务四:连句成篇,完整呈现。

【参考范文】

When my name was called, I stepped onto the stage uneasily. The bright lights blinded me for a moment, and I felt the weight of the audience's expectant gazes. Despite that, my muscle memory took over. We had rehearsed so many times that I was like a robot, reciting my lines in the most monotone voice imaginable. A small part of my brain whispered that I had said these lines much better in rehearsal, but I pushed that voice away. I just wanted to get off stage as fast as possible. Soon, the end of my scene was approaching, and I grew uncomfortably aware that the audience had indeed been very quiet during it. Had I done something wrong? Didn't they like me?

Suddenly I was determined to make a lasting impression. I remembered the Two of Clubs and the Ace of Diamonds, and their easy confidence. They, too, had started somewhere, likely just as nervous and uncertain as I was now. Then I straightened my spine, cleared my throat, and yelled with all the force I could muster. Obviously, the audience heard me. As the dialogue began, I found my voice, clear and strong, resonating through the theatre. I moved with purpose, embracing the absurdity of my costume and transforming it into a character that was both comical and endearing. With each passing minute, my confidence grew, fuelled by the audience's laughter and applause, their enjoyment tangible proof that I had overcome my fears. As the final curtain fell, Mum found her way backstage, her eyes shining with pride. "You were amazing, Riley," she whispered. In that moment, I realised that stepping out of my comfort zone, despite the initial hesitation and fear, had led me to discover a strength within myself that I never knew existed.

单元质量评估(四)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Towns That Shaped American Music

While cities like Nashville, Memphis, and New Orleans are famous for music, there are smaller towns like Lubbock, Clarksdale, and Macon, which have shaped some of the most influential musicians of all time.

Lubbock

Lubbock is a small town with a big heart for art. It's best known as the birthplace of Buddy Holly, one of the most important figures in rock and roll. The town honours Holly with street art featuring his famous glasses, and a performance centre named after him—the Buddy Holly Hall. His influence can be seen all over the town.

Shreveport

In the 1940s and 1950s, Shreveport was a major centre of American music. It was home to the *Louisiana Hayride*, a radio show where music stars like Elvis Presley, Hank Williams, and Johnny Cash began their careers. The show was so influential that it was called "The Cradle of the Stars", and it became second only to the Grand Ole Opry in importance for country music.

Clarksdale

Clarksdale is a small town in the Mississippi Delta where the sound of blues music started. It's famous as the place where musicians like Robert Johnson, Muddy Waters, and Howlin' Wolf grew up. It seems like you could hear blues playing around every corner, seven nights a week.

Macon

Macon is a town full of history and music, with a mix of Southern charm and modern culture. It's known as "the city where the soul lives", and that's true because it's where both Little Richard, the "Architect of Rock and Roll", and Otis Redding, the "King of Soul", grew up. Visitors can tour the Capricorn Sound Studios, where Southern rock music was born.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四座塑造了美国音乐的小城,讲述了它们与摇滚、乡村、蓝调及灵魂乐等音乐流派的渊源。

1. Which town has a close connection to Buddy Holly?

A. Macon. B. Lubbock.

C. Shreveport. D. Clarksdale.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Lubbock** 部分中的"Lubbock is a small town with a big heart for art. It's best known as the birthplace of Buddy Holly, one of the most important figures in rock and roll."可知,Lubbock 这座小城与 Buddy Holly 有着紧密的联系。故选 B。

2. What is Clarksdale famous for?

A. Jazz music. B. Blues music.

C. Rock and roll. D. Country music.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Clarksdale** 部分中的"Clarksdale is a small town in the Mississippi Delta where the sound of blues music started. It's famous as the place where musicians like Robert Johnson, Muddy Waters, and Howlin' Wolf grew up."可知,Clarksdale 以蓝调音乐而著称。故选 B。

3. Where will you go if you want to explore the history of Southern rock music?

A. The Grand Ole Country.

B. The Louisiana Hayride.

C. The Buddy Holly Hall.

D. The Capricorn Sound Studios.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Macon** 部分中的"Visitors can tour the Capricorn Sound Studios, where Southern rock music was born."可知,如果想探寻南方摇滚乐的历史,应该前往 Capricorn Sound Studios。故选 D。

B

As a child, Rob Stewart loved the natural world. "He loved everything in the sea, but sharks the most," said his mother, Sandy Stewart.

Stewart spent his life studying and photographing sharks and other sea creatures, and creating films. Sadly, he died in 2017 at the age of 37 in a diving accident. The accident happened while

Stewart was filming *Sharkwater Extinction*, which members of his crew completed after his death.

Knowing that about 25% of shark species were endangered and sharks might soon be extinct, Stewart worked hard to raise awareness of people about sharks' key role in nature. Stewart believed that they should be protected against humans and other enemies. He studied how illegal shark finning has led to a great fall in the shark population.

When Stewart found out about the finning, he tried to end it. As an experienced diver and skilled cinematographer, he was able to raise awareness of the problem by filming sharks in their natural environment. "His films," said Sandy Stewart, "showed people how beautiful the underwater creatures are. People would fall in love with them and work to protect them."

As of 2013, 55 countries had banned shark finning. Stewart lived and died a hero in the pursuit of saving sharks and the sea. He is believed to have saved one-third of the world's sharks.

Stewart's parents hope kids will continue his story by supporting shark-friendly actions. They encourage kids to buy or ask their parents to buy shark-free products.

Another thing that young people can do is learn more about sharks. A good place to start is "Shark Database", an online resource that was created by Rob Stewart's friends.

"It's your generation that we want to make sure sees the world that Rob saw and does whatever you can to protect the big fish," said Stewart's father. "One person can make a big difference."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。Rob Stewart 喜欢海洋动物,尤其是鲨鱼,他通过拍摄相关影片来呼吁人们保护鲨鱼和维护海洋生态平衡。

4. What do we know about Rob Stewart?

A. He died because of a shark attack.

B. He was interested in sea animals.

C. He led a research team studying the sea.

D. He made *Sharkwater Extinction* in 2017.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"He loved everything in the sea, but sharks the most"和第二段中的"Stewart spent his life studying and photographing sharks and other sea creatures, and creating films."可知,Rob Stewart 对海洋里的一切感兴趣,尤其是鲨鱼。故选 B。

5. What did Rob Stewart do to end illegal shark finning?

A. He made films showing sharks living naturally.

B. He encouraged people to buy shark-free products.

C. He wrote to the government asking for a ban on shark finning.

D. He collected information to show the influence of illegal shark finning.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"When Stewart found out about the finning, he tried to end it. As an experienced diver and skilled cinematographer, he was able to raise awareness of the problem by filming sharks in their natural environment."可知,Rob Stewart 通过拍摄在自然环境下生存的鲨鱼使人们了解鲨鱼的困境。故选 A。

6. How may Rob Stewart's action to save sharks be described?

A. Creative. B. Successful.

C. Fruitless. D. Unwelcome.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可推知,Rob Stewart 为保护鲨鱼所做的努力颇有成效。故选 B。

7. Which of the following is true in "the world that Rob saw" of the last paragraph?

A. Little action was taken to protect sharks.

B. Less than 50 countries banned shark finning.

C. About a quarter of shark species were in danger.

D. Human behaviour was the main cause of shark extinction.

C 句意理解题。根据最后一段的内容以及第三段中的"Knowing that about 25% of shark species were endangered and sharks might soon be extinct, Stewart worked hard to raise awareness of people about sharks' key role in nature."可知,在 Stewart 看到的世界中,有四分之一的鲨鱼种类濒临灭绝。故选 C。

C

The robots are coming! In science fiction, this phrase often signals danger, but in reality, it's a welcome prediction. The field of robotics has made

significant progress in the past year as researchers in universities and industry have applied advances in artificial intelligence (AI) to machines. The same technology that powers chatbots and systems to create images from text is now giving robots a major cognitive upgrade.

As a result, robots are becoming more capable, easier to program, and able to explain their actions. Investors are flocking to robotics startups, and even OpenAI, which had previously stepped away from robotics, is reentering the field with a new team. When AI is applied to the physical world, its potential becomes significant.

While robots can inspire fear, partly due to Hollywood's portrayal of them as uncontrollable creations, they also pose the risk of displacing decent-paying jobs in factories and warehouses. However, the latest advances in robotics offer substantial benefits. For example, new "multimodal" AI models combine language understanding and vision with data from robotic sensors, allowing robots to follow commands like "pick up the yellow fruit" by recognising objects such as a banana. These models also enable robots to explain their reasoning, making programming and debugging simpler and reducing errors because their understanding is grounded in real-world observations.

Additionally, robots are improving in their ability to learn quickly through imitation and to generalise skills from one task to another. This opens the door for robots to move out of factories and warehouses and into everyday environments. As labour markets in advanced economies tighten due to aging populations, the need for more automation becomes critical. More capable robots could help boost productivity, assist with household chores, and provide care for the elderly and those in need.

Advanced economies will require more automation to maintain their standards of living. Countries like South Korea, Japan, and China, which lead in robot-to-worker ratios, are also aging rapidly. Without robots, more people may need to work longer and retire later. In the coming years, societal attitudes could shift from fearing the arrival of robots to eagerly expecting their presence.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了人工智能对机器人技术的影响和未来潜力。

8. Why are investors increasingly interested in robotics?

A. Robotics has become more affordable.

B. The entertainment industry has supported robotics.

C. The fear of robots displacing jobs has eased.

D. AI advancements have advanced robot abilities.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,"人工智能的进步提升了机器人的能力"是投资者对机器人领域越来越感兴趣的原因。故选D。

9. What is a key benefit of "multimodal" AI models for robots?

A. Understanding human emotions.

B. Reducing production costs.

C. Improving real-world interaction.

D. Competing with human workers.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段第二、三句可知,"多模态"人工智能模型对机器人的一个关键好处是改善其与现实世界的交互。故选C。

10. How might societal views on robots change?

A. From job loss concern to economic necessity.

B. From fear to equal partnership.

C. From viewing robots as a threat to seeing them as tools.

D. From ethical (伦理的) concerns to acceptance.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段最后一句可知,社会对机器人的看法可能会从担忧工作岗位被机器人取代转变为使用机器人是出于经济上的必要。故选A。

11. What's the main purpose of the passage?

A. To compare robots' fictional dangers with their real benefits.

B. To explain AI's influence on robotics and future potential.

C. To examine robots' job displacement and labour market effects.

D. To predict robots' effects on daily life in the near future.

B 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段第二句和第二段最后一句可知,本文的主要目的是解释人工智能对机器人技术的影响和未来潜力。故选B。

D

We all remember that first cry at the movies. Whether tears of joy or sadness, it's remarkable how moving images on a screen can command our emotions. In fact, such moments are often carefully planned. But what about those heart-breaking stories made for children? They don't seem to sugarcoat the harsh realities of the world.

Actually, many great children's films filled with tragedy are purposefully designed to evoke strong feelings. According to Aristotle, tragedy helps us confront life's unsolvable dilemmas through thoughtful reflection. Therefore, the presence of tragedy in kids' movies serves to teach them how to handle, understand, and ultimately heal from pain. One of the hardest lessons for a child is learning to deal with loss, especially when it's sudden. The classic cartoon *The Lion King* tells the story of Simba, who experiences the profound loss of his father. Children see themselves in Simba—a character with dreams, a desire to grow, and a longing to be part of a bigger world. Yet, witnessing his loss is truly heart-breaking.

Why, then, is a film that brings children to tears so beloved? The lesson it imparts is about overcoming suffering and moving forward. Hakuna Matata! Yes, this phrase from *The Lion King* teaches children that it's okay to move on from tragic loss and not let it define them. It's a crucial lesson learned at a very young age. Sadness should not be ignored; it's important to feel it, which is why these films are so powerful. In *Dumbo*, *Charlotte's Web*, and *Bridge to Terabithia*, we lose beloved characters. This deeply upsets young viewers, but it also teaches them to accept sadness and create something new from it.

So, what is the core message behind a sad children's movie? It aims to teach the audience, especially children, how to gain independence and free themselves from the grip of tragedy. These stories act as a cushion, separating fiction from reality. They help children navigate sad feelings when they arise in real life, or at least find relief by embracing the spirit of Hakuna Matata.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了儿童电影中包含悲伤情节的原因,以及这些情节如何帮助儿童理解、应对痛苦,学会从悲剧中前行。

12. Why does the author mention "first cry" in Paragraph 1?

A. To promote a movie.

B. To explain the reason.

C. To support an argument.

D. To introduce the topic.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,作者提及"第一次落泪"是为了从大众对电影情感共鸣的普遍体验切入,进而引出本文的核心话题——儿童电影中的悲伤情节。故选D。

13. What does the underlined phrase "Hakuna Matata" in Paragraph 3 mean?

A. Defining sadness as a treatment.

B. Challenging oneself with tragic losses.

C. Searching for knowledge to enrich life.

D. Heading forward without being trapped.

D 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的"The lesson it imparts is about overcoming suffering and moving forward. Hakuna Matata! Yes, this phrase from *The Lion King* teaches children that it's okay to move on from tragic loss and not let it define them."可知,画线短语的前文提到它所传递的道理,画线短语的后文提到这个道理就是《狮子王》告诉孩子们的。由此可推断,"Hakuna Matata"的含义与"克服困难、继续前行,不被悲剧困住"一致。故选D。

14. What can we learn from the last paragraph?

A. Sad kids' movies help children to escape from reality.

B. Sad kids' movies prepare children for life struggles.

C. Children can learn to ignore sadness in tragedy.

D. Children can find a way to hide sad feelings.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"They help children navigate sad feelings when they arise in real life, or at least find relief by embracing the spirit of Hakuna Matata."可知,悲伤的儿童电影能帮助儿童为应对现实生活中的困难和挑战做好准备。故选B。

15. What is the best title for the text?

A. Why Are Great Kids' Movies So Sad?

B. What Is the Power of Great Kids' Movies?

C. Life's Hardest Lesson: How Movies

Encourage Us?

D. Moving Beyond Reality: What Kids' Movies Teach Us?

D　标题归纳题。通读全文，尤其是根据最后一段中的"So, what is the core message behind a sad children's movie? It aims to teach the audience, especially children, how to gain independence and free themselves from the grip of tragedy."可知，文章围绕儿童电影中的悲伤情节展开，重点阐述其教会儿童理解悲剧、应对现实情感的意义，D项"超越现实：儿童电影教会我们什么?"最能概括文章主旨，最适合作为文章标题。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Castles（城堡）and temples wear away after hundreds of years, but the symbols and words on the stone often survive. **16** E-books came from the development of science and technology, and can be read online. Many people believe that regular books will be one day replaced by e-books.

Books and e-books share lots of similarities. They are both items created by great minds. **17** You can draw lines or highlight some details on books or e-books as notes. The notes can be kept for a long time.

18 Firstly, books don't have to be charged, while e-books need electricity if we want to read them. Meanwhile, spending too much time reading e-books may do harm to our eyes. Moreover, e-books don't share the same weight when held in the hand as regular books, nor do they give that sense of fulfilment that comes from finishing a thick book. However, e-book devices are easy to carry. **19**

A disadvantage of e-book devices is that people tend to get distracted（分心）when they're using one, as many devices often have apps or games on them. **20**

Whichever you prefer, both books and e-books are just a way to help us gain knowledge and get to know other people's experiences. They are both necessary, so it's too early to say one will disappear.

A. But they have differences as well.

B. They take less space than books.

C. Indeed our lives are formed by what books we read.

D. This is similar to how the words in books manage to live on.

E. They both have an index（索引）to introduce the main topic of each book.

F. But with a regular book, your mind is always absorbed in the words.

G. Each individual can decide which reading method is best for them based on their own needs.

答案：16～20　DEABF

Ⅲ. 完形填空

I live with my husband Jack in Iowa, which is far away from Florida. One day, my husband suddenly decided to play __21__ in Florida.

"Why Florida?" I wanted to know. "We are so busy every day with our work. Why not someplace __22__?"

"Because," he said, "Florida is famous for golf. It's just something I __23__ of doing."

__24__, I did understand. Just a week or so before, I __25__ a diary of mine from my teenage years. What really got me about it was the list I'd __26__ on the very first page—Things I'm Going To Do. But until now I haven't done a third of them!

So when Jack talked about playing in __27__, it got me thinking. There were a lot of things I wanted to __28__. They were all the same things as I'd decided to do __29__ I was sixteen. But always because of some reasons, my plans __30__ to be carried out.

In order to make our life without __31__, I told Jack, "Now, let's draw up all our life lists and have them __32__ one by one together." That was how our journey to Florida __33__.

After many years, our plans were all finished. __34__, I've learned that the secret is to take life __35__. If you're in too much of a hurry, you need to stop, or you will fly past all the things that are the most fun.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章讲述了作者因为丈夫想去佛罗里达州打高尔夫球而想起了自己十几岁时写下的"我要做的事情"的清单，为了让生活更加充实，作者决定与丈夫一起制订生活清单并逐一完成。作者认识到生活的秘诀在于放慢脚步，否则会错过人生中最有趣的事情。

21. A. football　　B. golf

C. basketball　　D. volleyball

B 根据下文的“Florida is famous for golf.”可知，作者的丈夫要去佛罗里达打高尔夫球。故选B。

22. A. farther B. closer
C. larger D. warmer
B 根据上文的“We are so busy every day with our work.”可知，作者觉得每天工作都很忙，应该选择一个近一点的地方。故选B。

23. A. dream B. hurry
C. refuse D. afford
A 根据下文的“What really got me about it was the list I'd 26 on the very first page—Things I'm Going To Do. But until now I haven't done a third of them!”可知，通过翻看自己之前的心愿清单，作者理解了丈夫的想法，因此用dream呼应Things I'm Going To Do，表示去佛罗里达打高尔夫球是丈夫一直以来的梦想。故选A。

24. A. In fact B. For example
C. At once D. In case
A 根据下文的“What really got me about it was the list I'd 26 on the very first page—Things I'm Going To Do. But until now I haven't done a third of them!”可知，通过翻看自己之前的心愿清单，作者确实理解了丈夫想去佛罗里达打高尔夫球的梦想。故选A。

25. A. lent B. bought
C. missed D. found
D 根据下文的“a diary of mine from my teenage years”可知，作者发现了自己十几岁时的一本日记。故选D。

26. A. called B. practised
C. made D. explained
C 根据上文的“the list”可知，作者制作了这份清单。故选C。

27. A. Georgia B. Hawaii
C. Iowa D. Florida
D 根据上文的“One day, my husband suddenly decided to play 21 in Florida.”可知，作者的丈夫杰克谈到去佛罗里达打高尔夫球。故选D。

28. A. support B. learn
C. finish D. prepare
C 根据上文的“What really got me about it was the list I'd 26 on the very first page—Things I'm Going To Do.”可知，清单上列举着作者想要完成的事情，此处表示作者有很多事要完成。故选C。

29. A. where B. when
C. although D. because
B 根据下文的“I was sixteen”可知，作者16岁时，有很多事情想做。故选B。

30. A. came B. rose
C. failed D. happened
C 根据上文的“But always because of some reasons...”可知，作者的计划总是由于一些原因未能执行。故选C。

31. A. regret B. hope
C. difficulty D. difference
A 根据下文的“Now, let's draw up all our life lists and have them 32 one by one together.”可知，作者认为去执行一个又一个人生清单中的事会让生活不带有遗憾。故选A。

32. A. turned down B. taken away
C. put out D. carried out
D 根据下文的“one by one together”可知，作者去执行一个又一个人生清单中的事。故选D。

33. A. started B. changed
C. appeared D. stopped
A 根据上文的“our journey to Florida”可知，作者和丈夫的旅行是通过制订一个又一个的人生清单并且去执行而开始的。故选A。

34. A. Simply B. Finally
C. Quietly D. Sadly
B 根据上文的“After many years, our plans were all finished.”可知，经过了多年时间，作者最终明白了生活的秘诀。故选B。

35. A. early B. busy
C. slow D. fast
C 根据下文的“If you're in too much of a hurry, you need to stop, or you will fly past all the things that are the most fun.”可知，作者明白了生活的秘诀是慢下来。故选C。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Watching a movie is a wonderful way to relax and enter another world. However, what seems like pure magic on screen actually combines art with science in a fascinating way.

First of all, consider the artistic side. A filmmaker's job is like that of a chef. Just as a chef selects the most **36.** nutritious (nutrition) ingredients to create a healthy meal, a director

chooses the best stories and images to feed our minds and emotions. This imaginative process relies more on feeling and vision than on **37.** scientific (science) rules.

But art alone is not enough. To realise their vision, filmmakers need tools. This is where science becomes essential. Cameras, sound equipment, and editing software are all **38.** functional (function) tools with very specific jobs. Each one is the result of years of technological research. If a tool fails or a scene doesn't serve the story logically, the film's power weakens. **39.** Therefore/Thus, every element must have a clear purpose.

Our own biology also plays a part. The human **40.** adaptation (adapt) that allows us to see still images as motion (运动) is the very foundation of cinema. Meanwhile, colour theory—a blend of art and science—is used deliberately **41.** to guide (guide) our feelings.

The most successful films, **42.** which use technology not as the main goal but as a means to tell a touching story, find a perfect balance. The science makes **43.** the impossible look real, while the art makes it feel true. This creative blend is **44.** what gives a film its unique power.

So next time you are deeply moved by a film, remember that you are also witnessing an achievement of human intelligence. It is the beautiful outcome of art and science **45.** in perfect harmony.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

根据下列提示，用英语写一篇 80 词左右的关于影片《百万英镑》(*The Million Pound Note*)的评论。

影片讲述了一个美国穷小子亨利·亚当斯(Henry Adams)在伦敦的奇遇。伦敦的两位富翁打赌，把一张无法兑现的百万支票借给亨利，想看他在一个月内如何收场。一个月的期限到时，亨利不仅没有饿死或被捕，反倒成了富翁，并且赢得了爱情。

参考词汇：奇遇 fortuitous adventure；讽刺的 sarcastic

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

One weekend in July, Jane and her husband, Tom, had driven three hours to camp overnight by a lake in the forest. Unfortunately, on the way an unpleasant subject came up and they started to quarrel. By the time they reached the lake, Jane was so angry that she said to Tom, "I'm going to find a better spot for us to camp." and walked away.

With no path to follow, Jane just walked on for quite a long time. After she had climbed to a high place, she turned around, hoping to see the lake. To her surprise, she saw nothing but forest and, far beyond, a snowcapped mountain top. She suddenly realised that she was lost.

"Tom!" she cried. "Help!"

No reply. If only she had not left her mobile phone in that bag with Tom. Jane kept moving, but the farther she walked, the more confused she became. As night was beginning to fall, Jane was so tired that she had to stop for the night. Lying awake in the dark, Jane wanted very much to be with Tom and her family. She wanted to hold him and tell him how much she loved him.

Jane rose at the break of day, hungry and thirsty. She could hear water trickling (滴落) somewhere at a distance. Quickly, she followed the sound to a stream. To her great joy, she also saw some berry bushes. She drank and ate a few berries. Never in her life had she tasted anything better. Feeling stronger now, Jane began to walk along the stream, hoping it would lead her to the lake.

As she picked her way carefully along the stream, Jane heard a helicopter. "Is that for me?" Unfortunately, the trees made it impossible for people to see her from above. A few minutes later,

another helicopter flew overhead. Jane took off her yellow blouse, thinking that she should go to an open area and flag them if they came back again.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

But no more helicopters came and it was getting dark again. _____

_____

_____

_____

It was daybreak when Jane woke up. _____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

I am going to introduce a movie, *The Million Pound Note*, to you. It describes a fortuitous adventure of Henry Adams, a poor American lad in London. Two rich men in London had a bet on him and wanted to see what would become of him a month later if they gave him a million pound bank note which couldn't be cashed. A month later, Henry wasn't starved or arrested, but became a millionaire. What's more, he even won the love of a pretty lady.

Through humorous and sarcastic language, the movie successfully gave us the wonderful story. I think the movie is well worth watching.

第二节 读后续写

But no more helicopters came and it was getting dark again. Immediately, an absolute darkness ruled the forest. Jane, exhausted and scared, lay down near a stone, missing her family at a distance. All the fantastic memories crowded in on her and she couldn't help crying, "Hadn't I quarrelled with Tom, walked away and climbed to the high place, I wouldn't be trapped in this awful place, confronted with the danger of dying." She regretted with endless anxiety, and then became sleepy with shining tears in her eyes.

It was daybreak when Jane woke up. Weak as she was, she struggled to her feet, continuing searching for assistance. To her great joy, a helicopter was flying overhead again and again. Eager and excited, she waved her yellow blouse and spared no effort to yell so as to attract others' attention. Fortunately, she was eventually noticed and brought into the helicopter. There, she saw her husband, a man staring at her, wearing an expression of relief. As tightly as possible, she hugged him and was too thrilled to say anything. Besides, they agreed never to quarrel again, determined to live the life to the fullest.

Unit 5 On the road

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Nature", whose topic is travel. This unit starts with a travel quiz, and then you will read "Blogging Australia" to learn about Lauren's story of becoming a photographing blogger. You'll also read the text "Coast to Coast" to know about Eva's family's travel experience. You will learn how to ask and give directions as well as describe locations by listening to the conversation of visiting a new place, and introduce your travel experience by writing a postcard. Through this unit, you are expected to develop a broader understanding of geographical knowledge of British and American countries, know the local customs and practices of different countries and regions, think deeply about the meaning of travelling, and learn to respect different cultures and appreciate cultural diversity.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"旅行"主题相关的单词和词组。
		语法	能恰当使用现在分词描述旅行中的景点的特色。
		语篇	能围绕"旅行"的主题语境，基于单元提供的多模态语篇，综合运用各种语言技能，读懂语篇内容。
		语用	能使用新学语言点谈论不同的旅行方式，恰当使用现在分词作定语谈论与旅行相关的内容，能写旅行明信片并介绍旅行经历。
	语言技能	听	听宾馆前台与游客间的一段对话，了解如何精准描述方位、问路以及指路，学习并运用旅行时问路的相关内容和用语。
		说	能谈论与旅行有关的话题，且能根据语境和情境的需要正确使用现在分词，使表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读访谈，概括文章的段落大意，理解采访话题之间的内在联系，了解摄影博主的工作内容，以及受访人对于自然和环保的看法； 2. 阅读电子邮件，简要复述 Eva 一家的旅行经历，理解并学习与旅行相关的表达，并初步了解明信片的特点和书写格式。
		写	能正确运用现在分词作定语，并能写一张旅行明信片，介绍自己的旅游经历。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	1. 能学习用英语描述不同国家和地区的风土人情，激发英语学习的兴趣； 2. 能多渠道获取英语学习资源，巩固本单元所学语言知识，开阔眼界，提高英语运用能力； 3. 能选择恰当的策略与方法，评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。
文化意识	能了解不同国家和地区的风土人情，加深对一些英语国家地理知识的了解，学会尊重文化多样性。
思维品质	通过运用各种学习策略，在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中，结合所提供的反思性和评价性问题，不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程，提高自己的理解和表达能力，最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。

◦必备知识

必背单词	destination, gallery, kangaroo, quit, profession, previous, route, aboard, landscape, dramatic, volcano, chain, credit, cash, flight, remote, engage, café, soccer, continent, vehicle, deer, mass, hike
重点表达	be determined to do, fall in love with, work full time, make an impact on, make a comment about, be used to, can't wait to do, come true, pick up, a sense of direction, cheer... up, make it, fall asleep, keep in touch, take every opportunity to do sth., work around the clock, in advance, in particular, on one's own
重点知识	1. when it comes to (doing) sth. 2. There is no doubt that... 3. had done sth. when...
单元语法	现在分词作定语
单元写作	写明信片

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Master basic knowledge of this lesson and use it freely.
2. Help to learn about the benefits of travelling.
3. Develop reading comprehension ability through discussion and cooperation.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. profession *n*. (需要高等教育和训练的)专业,行业
2. previous *adj*. 以前的,先前的
3. quit *v*. 离开(工作岗位、学校等);离任
4. make an impact on 对……产生影响
5. be used to 习惯于
6. fall in love with... 爱上……
7. in particular 尤其,特别
8. be aware of 意识到
9. set off 出发;动身
10. be determined to do sth. 决心做某事

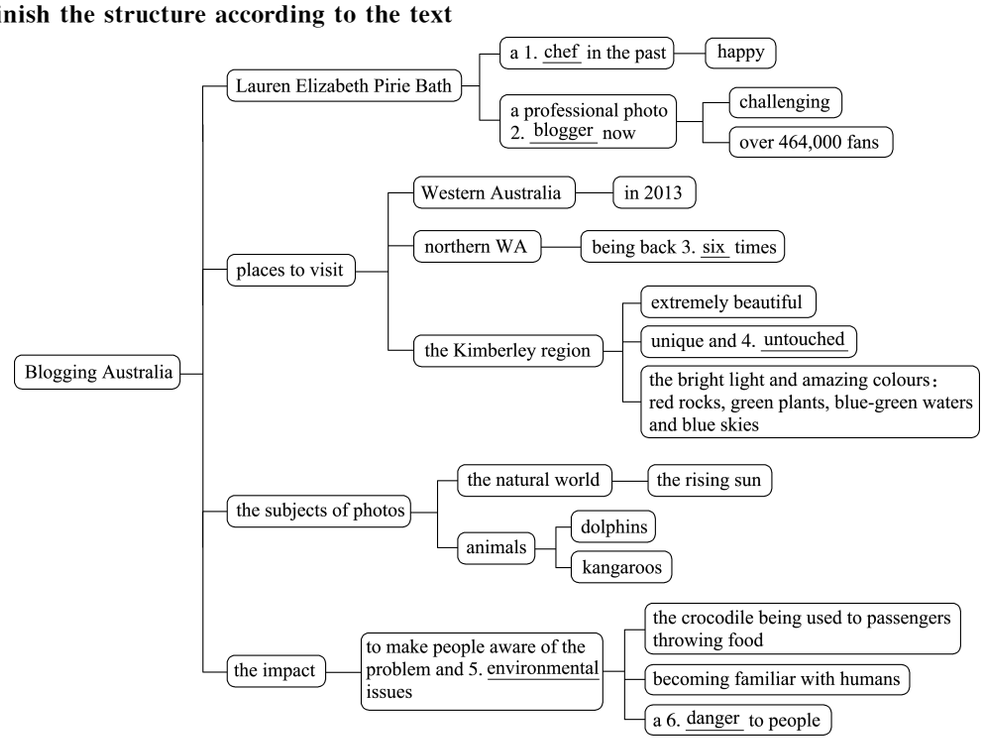
(二)阅读词汇

1. gallery *n*. 美术馆,画廊
2. kangaroo *n*. 袋鼠
3. destination *n*. 目的地,终点
4. over time 久而久之;随着时间的推移
5. make a comment about 对……做出评论
6. come true 实现
7. be familiar with 对……熟悉

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What does the author mainly do now?
A. She protects the environment in Australia.
B. She takes pictures of animals in Australia.
C. She shares online pictures about Australia.
D. She does nothing but travel all over the world.

2. What made the author become a professional photo blogger?
A. Taking pictures of people.
B. Liking writing blogs.
C. Wanting to challenge herself.
D. Being rewarded for her pictures.

3. What does the author have to do to photograph the rising sun?
A. Be close to nature.
B. Get up early in the morning.
C. Stay outside all night.
D. Climb onto the top of the mountain.

4. How does the author want to influence people?
A. By reminding people to love nature.
B. By posting pictures with warnings on them.
C. By commenting how people act.
D. By giving some negative examples.

答案：1～4 CDBB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. At that time I discovered blogging and found that I took pretty good pictures.
[句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。由 and 连接两个并列谓语动词 discovered 和 found，并且 and 后半句中包含一个 that 引导的宾语从句。
[尝试翻译]就在那时我接触了博客，而且我发现自己拍照不错。

2. When I post the picture online, I will make a comment about how bad it is to feed wild crocodiles.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 When 引导时间状语从句，主句中介词 about 后是以 how 开头的感叹句作宾语从句，语序为陈述语序。
[尝试翻译]当我把照片发到网上时，会附上评论，告诉人们投喂野生鳄鱼是非常糟糕的行为。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following question

Do you agree with the saying "Travel broadens the mind"? Give some examples to support your opinion.

略

Unit 5 课后素养评价（十七）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

An increasing number of travellers are actively looking for vacations free from the continuous demands of technology. These "digital detox" retreats (静修处), often located in natural settings far away, require guests to leave their smartphones and other devices alone upon arrival. The primary goal is to encourage guests to be fully present, connecting with their surroundings and fellow travellers without digital distractions (分心).

A recent market research report showed that over 60% of people questioned under 35 would consider a holiday that limits screen time. As a result, the tourism industry is changing to adapt to this. So a new travel trend (趋势) appears. Numerous travel companies now specialise in such experiences, offering activities like guided hiking, meditation, and workshops on traditional crafts—all designed to fill the time once covered by screens.

However, some experts question the long-term effectiveness of these short disconnections. They argue that the advantages might disappear quickly once travellers return to their daily lives, which are often structured around digital tools. True change, they suggest, requires changing one's relationship with technology in the long run, not just escaping it for a week.

Despite the debate, people who take part in questionnaires often report positive results. Many describe feeling a significant reduction in anxiety and a renewed ability to focus on single tasks. The experience, for them, isn't about quitting technology forever, but about resetting their digital habits and rediscovering the value of real-world engagement (参与), while also offering a chance for self-reflection (自我反思). This suggests that even a short detox can serve as a powerful reminder of life beyond the screen.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了“数字排毒”度假这一新兴旅游趋势，分析其兴起背景、市场现状，同时探讨了专家对其长期效果的质疑，以及这类度假对人们生活的积极意义。

1. What causes the tourism industry's active change to digital detox vacations?

A. The popularity of traditional craft workshops.

B. The rising demand reflected in market research.

C. The encouragement from many travel companies.

D. The proven success of such retreats in improving health.

B　细节理解题。根据第二段中的“A recent market research report showed that over 60% of people questioned under 35 would consider a holiday that limits screen time. As a result, the tourism industry is changing to adapt to this.”可知，市场调研中反映出的人们对“数字排毒”度假的上升需求促使旅游业积极做出相关调整。故选B。

2. Why do some experts question digital detox vacations?

A. Because their positive effects may not be lasting.

B. Because they fail to provide enough related activities.

C. Because they are too expensive for most people to afford.

D. Because they force people into an uncomfortable lifestyle.

A　细节理解题。根据第三段中的“However, some experts question the long-term effectiveness of these short disconnections. They argue that the advantages might disappear quickly once travellers return to their daily lives, which are often structured around digital tools.”可知，专家质疑“数字排毒”度假，是因为他们认为其带来的积极效果可能无法持续。故选A。

3. What can we learn from the last paragraph?

A. The short break offers a valuable chance for reflection and reset.

B. The debate over the effectiveness of digital detox is likely to continue.

C. The industry should create more diverse packages to attract customers.

D. Digital detox vacations are the only solution to technology dependence.

A　细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Many describe feeling a significant reduction in anxiety and a renewed ability to focus on single tasks. The experience, for them, isn't about quitting technology forever, but about resetting their digital habits and rediscovering the value of real-world engagement (参与), while also offering a chance for self-reflection (自我反思).”可知，短暂的“数字排毒”假期为人们提供了宝贵的反思机会，也让人们得以重置数字习惯。故选A。

4. What is the passage mainly about?

A. The best places for a peaceful vacation.

B. The influence of social media on tourism.

C. The growing trend of digital detox vacations.

D. The mental health problems caused by digital devices.

C　主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“An increasing number of travellers are actively looking for vacations free from the continuous demands of technology. These ‘digital detox’ retreats (静修处), often located in natural settings far away, require guests to leave their smartphones and other devices alone upon arrival.”并结合全文内容可知，文章围绕“数字排毒”度假展开，介绍了该度假方式的出现背景、旅游业的应对措施、专家的质疑以及游客的反馈，核心是讲述“数字排毒”度假这一日益兴起的旅游趋势。故选C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Travelling is what makes your life complete. You may often complain that there is too much work and no time to travel. __1__ There are hundreds of reasons why you should travel. Here are only four of them:

Tomorrow or an accident—you never know which will come first, so take a break now.

Be spontaneous and travel whenever you feel like leaving your daily routine. It is wrong to wait for certain time of the year so that you can spoil yourself.

Your company won't be bankrupt or disappear if you leave it for a week or two.

There are plenty of people who can substitute for you and do your job while you are away. __2__ Here the point is to plan a week ahead. If you work hard, you can play hard. Always remember that the quality of your work will improve if you have a good

rest and let yourself relax and recharge with energy and positive emotions.

You cannot be a good employee if you are unhappy and tense.

Your family suffers, too. When your mind is free, you can perform at 200 percent. **3** You lose your balance and harmony if you experience too much stress, perform a lot of demanding routine and constantly take responsibilities. Take care of yourself. Make sure that your well-being does not suffer.

4

We all want to excel in our profession. We want to be in charge even at home. We like to be appreciated by the community. Being such a person requires several important qualities. To gain the required qualities you must have a multidimensional personality. The more new activities you practise, the more chances you can have to become a better leader. **5**

A. Making excuses is much easier than acting.

B. Finding a balance isn't easy, yet it is worth trying.

C. Have a richer life if you want to be a better leader.

D. Travelling is also a means of broadening your horizons.

E. You are useless as a worker if your body does not feel great.

F. You can do some of it in advance or you can put it on hold.

G. Be an instructor, inspire others and do what you would like others to do.

答案:1～5 BFECG

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of each paragraph.

2. Obtain the detail information about Lauren Bath and learn some expressions related to travel by careful reading.

3. Have a better understanding of the old saying—"Travel broadens the mind" by thinking and sharing.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **destination** of someone or something is the place to which they are going or being sent. 目的地

2. The exhibition of Chinese painting will be held at the **gallery** next month. 美术馆,画廊

3. A **kangaroo** is a large Australian animal which moves by jumping on its back legs. 袋鼠

4. It is unwise of parents to **quit** their jobs in order to provide better conditions for their children. 离开(工作岗位)

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
profession *n*. (需要高等教育和训练的)专业,行业	professional *adj*. 职业的,专业的 *n*. 专业人员;职业选手
	professor *n*. 教授,(大学的)讲师

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
previous *adj*. 以前的,先前的	previously *adv*. 以前,先前

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. be aware of 意识到

2. come true 实现

3. make an impact on 对……产生影响

4. make a comment about 对……做出评论

5. be familiar with 对……熟悉

6. be determined to do sth. 决心做某事

7. be used to sth. 习惯于某事

8. fall in love with 爱上;喜欢上

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:find that...

At that time I discovered blogging and found that I took pretty good pictures.

就在那时我接触了博客,而且我发现自己拍照不错。

2. 句型公式：现在分词短语作定语

In less than 18 months, there were over 200,000 people reading my blog!

在不到18个月的时间里，就有20多万人看了我的博客！

3. 句型公式：make... do sth.

In 2013, I was determined to make my dream come true: I would become Australia's first professional photo blogger.

在2013年，我决心实现自己的梦想：成为澳大利亚第一位职业摄影博主。

4. 句型公式：when it comes to (doing) sth.

I use my photography to make an impact on people, especially when it comes to environmental issues.

我通过摄影来影响人们，尤其是涉及环境问题的时候。

5. 句型公式：how引导感叹句

When I post the picture online, I will make a comment about how bad it is to feed wild crocodiles.

当我把照片发到网上时，会附上评论，指出人们投喂野生鳄鱼是非常糟糕的行为。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. quit *v.* 离开(工作岗位、学校等)；离任；停止；辞职

[教材原文] Why Lauren Bath **quit** her job as a chef and chose a different profession.

为什么劳伦·巴思辞去了厨师的工作，选择了一份不同的职业。

[归纳拓展]

quit doing... 停止做……；放弃做……

quit one's job 辞掉某人的工作

quit office/school/smoking 离职/退学/戒烟

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

No matter what happens, we shouldn't quit trying (try) to achieve our dreams.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写)他最终下定决心**辞去工作**，开始自己创业。

He finally made up his mind to quit his job and start his own business.

2. come true 实现

[教材原文] In 2013, I was determined to make my dream **come true**...

在2013年，我决心实现自己的梦想……

[归纳拓展]

come about 发生；产生

come across 偶遇；无意中发现

come off 脱落；分开；结果；表现

come on (表示鼓励、催促等)快，走吧；开始，发生；进步，进展

come out 发表，出版；出现，显露；结果是

come up 走上前来；被提出；出现

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Where did you come across him?

②Can you tell me how the accident came about?

③It is said that her new novel will come out next month.

④The label had come off, so there was no way of knowing what was on the disk.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之主旨升华)唯有心怀希望、永不放弃，**我们的梦想才能成真。**

Only when we hold on to hope and never give up can our dream come true.

3. when it comes to (doing) sth.

[教材原文] I use my photography to make an impact on people, especially **when it comes to environmental issues.**

我通过摄影来影响人们，尤其是涉及环境问题的时候。

[归纳拓展]

when it comes to (doing) sth. 意为“一谈到；就……而论；当谈及……时”，是一个固定结构，to是介词，to后可跟动词-ing形式或名词。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2026·浙江1月卷) When it came to faking a review, length was important to believability, as was detail.

②When it comes to developing (develop) healthy habits, parents influence their children more than anyone else.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)**说到海洋**，我们已经意识到我们需要解决海洋污染问题。

When it comes to the ocean, we have been aware that we need to handle with its pollution.

Unit 5 课后素养评价（十八）

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. The girl had to quit learning (learn) painting because her parents couldn't pay the fee for her.
2. Favourable policies are in effect to encourage employees' professional (profession) development.
3. No matter what you may say, I am determined to do (do) what I think is right.
4. It is said that regular exercise has a positive impact on both physical and mental health.
5. Taking pictures of wild animals is a challenging (challenge) job.
6. Mount Tai is extremely (extreme) beautiful, and it attracts millions of tourists every year.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

in particular; fall in love with; be aware of; be familiar with; be used to; come true; make an impact on; make a comment about

1. Through the activity, we will be aware of the importance of preserving (保护) traditional Chinese culture.
2. I am familiar with Chinese painting, for my father is a Chinese painter.
3. I hope I will be an influential designer in the future and make an impact on the fashion world.
4. As a Chinese who is interested in travelling in particular, I would like to introduce my favourite city—Beijing.
5. His wish came true, and the museum opened in 1759, six years after he died.
6. I immediately fell in love with the English novel when my teacher first introduced it to me.
7. He made a comment about the parking problems and many people agreed with him.
8. She is used to dealing with all kinds of people in her job.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 我决心从现在开始更加努力地学习，以实现我的梦想。(determined; make+宾语+宾语补足语)
   I am determined to study harder from now on to make my dream come true.
2. 在院子里边跑边笑的男孩精力很充沛。(现在分词短语作后置定语)
   The boy running and laughing in the yard is very energetic.
3. 我以前也这样认为，但现在不这样认为了。(省略句)
   I thought so before, but not now.
4. 你无法想象登上泰山之巅是多么困难！(感叹句)
   You can't imagine how difficult it is to climb to the top of Mount Tai!
5. 当提及如何保护环境时，每个人都有自己的看法。(come)
   When it comes to how to protect the environment, everyone has an opinion.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

As I got on the Lijiang train for my first trip alone, I was worried but excited. I'd long wanted to __1__ the city's boring daily life, hoping to explore new things and __2__ myself outside my comfort zone (舒适区).

The train pulled away, and I pressed my forehead to the window, watching the __3__ places while my heart beat with mixed __4__. Hardly had I entered Lijiang's ancient town when the stone streets and the smell of local food __5__ me at once, making me more __6__ for this new adventure.

On the second day, I visited Jade Dragon Snow Mountain. The __7__ snow scenery amazed me so much that I hung around __8__. As evening fell, I found myself lost in the woods. I felt __9__ because my phone had no signal (信号) and I couldn't call for help. Just as I was __10__, an old local man came up. After asking about my situation, he led me to his small house, and his family __11__ me hot tea. By the fire, his local stories drove my __12__ away.

The next morning, he guided me down the mountain. I gave him a city guide, and __13__ his hand-made scarf in return. This trip taught me that the real beauty of travel is the __14__ with people—it makes our world feel bigger and shows __15__ is for everyone.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者第一次独自前往丽江旅行的经历。

1. A. focus on　　B. come along
C. give up　　D. get away from
D　根据下文的“the city's boring daily life”及“explore new things”可知，作者想要逃离单调的生活去探索新事物，get away from 符合语境。故选 D。

2. A. challenge　　B. protect
C. enjoy　　D. help
A　根据上文的“explore new things”及下文的“outside my comfort zone（舒适区）”可知，作者想要走出舒适区挑战自我，challenge 符合语境。故选 A。

3. A. similar　　B. neat
C. distant　　D. quiet
C　根据上文的“The train pulled away”可知，火车开动后窗外的景物会变得越来越远，distant 符合语境。故选 C。

4. A. purposes　　B. dreams
C. feelings　　D. opinions
C　根据上文的“I was worried but excited”可知，作者内心有着担忧又兴奋的复杂感受，feelings 符合语境。故选 C。

5. A. attracted　　B. scared
C. shocked　　D. cheated
A　根据上文的“Lijiang's ancient town”和“the stone streets and the smell of local food”及下文的“making me more __6__ for this new adventure”可知，古城的景致和美食的香气吸引了作者，attracted 符合语境。故选 A。

6. A. surprised　　B. eager
C. stressed　　D. responsible
B　根据上文的“Lijiang's ancient town”及“the stone streets and the smell of local food __5__ me at once”可知，丽江古城的魅力让作者对接下来的旅程更向往了，eager 符合语境。故选 B。

7. A. terrible　　B. common
C. beautiful　　D. simple
C　根据下文的“amazed me so much”可知，雪景让作者十分惊叹，说明雪景很美丽，beautiful 符合语境。故选 C。

8. A. carelessly　　B. patiently
C. nervously　　D. happily
D　根据上文的“snow scenery amazed me so much”可知，美丽的雪景让作者心情愉悦，happily 符合语境。故选 D。

9. A. amazed　　B. relaxed
C. afraid　　D. tired
C　根据上文的“As evening fell, I found myself lost in the woods.”及下文的“because my phone had no signal（信号）and I couldn't call for help”可知，夜幕降临，作者迷路且无法求救，内心会感到害怕，afraid 符合语境。故选 C。

10. A. losing heart　　B. checking out
C. taking risks　　D. calming down
A　根据上文的“my phone had no signal（信号）and I couldn't call for help”可知，作者孤立无援时几乎要灰心丧气了，losing heart 符合语境。故选 A。

11. A. prepared　　B. offered
C. afforded　　D. ordered
B　根据上文的“he led me to his small house”及下文的“me hot tea”可知，老人一家热心招待作者，为其提供热茶，offered 符合语境。故选 B。

12. A. sweat　　B. hunger
C. fear　　D. interest
C　根据上文的“As evening fell, I found myself lost in the woods.”及“my phone had no signal（信号）and I couldn't call for help”可知，老人的陪伴和故事消除了作者的恐惧情绪，fear 符合语境。故选 C。

13. A. received　　B. refused
C. compared　　D. packed
A　根据上文的“I gave him a city guide”及下文的“in return”可知，作者送出指南后，收到了对方回赠的围巾，received 符合语境。故选 A。

14. A. meetings　　B. connections
C. disagreements　　D. competitions
B　根据上文的“he led me to his small house”及“The next morning, he guided me down the mountain.”可知，与当地老人一家的互动经历让作者意识到，旅行的美好在于人与人之间的温暖联结，connections 符合语境。故选 B。

15. A. travel　　B. success
C. friendship　　D. kindness
D　根据上文的“As evening fell, I found myself lost in the woods.”及“he led me to his small house”可知，作者迷路时得到老人一家的热心帮助，这让作者感受到了陌生人的善意，kindness 符合语境。故选 D。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Discover and understand the rules of using the present participle as attributive.
2. Distinguish the gerund from the present participle.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She took out a map and indicated the quickest **route** to us. 路线
2. A **volcano** is a mountain with a large opening at the top through which melting rock, steam, gases escape from time to time with violent force from inside the earth. 火山
3. The song always reminds me of the natural **landscape** of Xizang. 风景
4. Payments can be made by cheque or in **cash**. 现金
5. Your **budget** is the money that is available to you. 预算
6. A large supermarket **chain** was just open. 连锁店
7. Many young people, most of whom were well-educated, headed for **remote** villages to realise their dreams. 偏僻的,偏远的
8. It is very convenient to pay by **credit** card. 赊购,信贷
9. Finally, his dream to **hike** the Appalachian Trail was realised. 在……徒步旅行
10. The hotel is set on three floors. There's a bar and a **café** at ground level. 咖啡馆,小餐馆

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
dramatic *adj*. 激动人心的;给人印象深刻的	dramatically *adv*. 剧烈地;戏剧地;显著地
	drama *n*. 戏剧,戏剧艺术
currency *n*. 货币,通货	current *adj*. 现在的;流通的
	currently *adv*. 当前;一般地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
flight *n*. 航班,班机	fly *v*. 飞行,飞越
engage *v*. 参与,参加	engaged *adj*. 忙碌的;已订婚的
	engagement *n*. 约会;交战;订婚
aboard *prep*. 在(船、飞机、火车)上	board *v*. 登(飞机、车、船等);接受乘客

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. take a look at 看一看
2. go on a trip 去旅行
3. apply for 申请
4. at the end of 在……末尾
5. by the way 顺便问一下
6. check in 办理登机手续
7. in advance 预先,提前
8. put on 穿上

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:There is no doubt that...
   There is no doubt that the Bernina Express is a journey for travellers who want to get back to nature...
   毫无疑问,伯尔尼纳快车是为想要回到大自然的旅行者准备的……
2. 句型公式:who 引导定语从句
   Are you one of those people who work around the clock?
   你是那种夜以继日地工作的人吗?

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. engage *v*. 参与，参加

[教材原文]Adventure tourism: travellers explore unusual or remote destinations, often **engaging** in risky activities.

冒险旅行：旅行者们探索不寻常的或者是偏远的目的地，经常会参与冒险活动。

[归纳拓展]

(1)engage in 参加；从事；忙于

engage to sb. 与某人订婚

(2)engagement *n*. 约会；交战；订婚

(3)engaged *adj*. 忙碌的；已订婚的

be engaged in... 从事于；忙于……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① The activity aims to encourage students to engage in making a difference in society.

②I can't see you on Monday because I have a previous engagement (engage).

③(2025·浙江1月卷)Even the most engaged (engage) and committed audience will eventually get bored.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)我们**应该参加有意义的活动**来丰富我们的校园生活。

We should be engaged in meaningful activities to enrich our school life.

2. There is no doubt that...

[教材原文]**There is no doubt that** the Bernina Express is a journey for travellers who want to get back to nature...

毫无疑问，伯尔尼纳快车是为想要回到大自然的旅行者准备的……

[句式分析]There is no doubt that... 意为"毫无疑问……"，that 引导同位语从句，解释说明 doubt 的具体内容。

[归纳拓展]

(1)含有 doubt 的其他常用句型及结构：

There is some doubt whether... 是否……仍有疑问。

I don't/never doubt that... 我不/从不怀疑……

I doubt/I have doubts... whether/if... 我怀疑……是否……

without/beyond doubt 毫无疑问

in doubt 不确定；怀疑

(2)that 引导同位语从句，that 只起连接作用，无实际意义，不充当句子成分。同位语从句一般由 that，wh-类连接词引导，常放在 doubt，fact，news，idea，truth，hope，problem，information，thought 等抽象名词之后，解释说明该名词的具体内容。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① There is some doubt whether we can use my credit card to pay for the ticket.

②Without/Beyond doubt, health is more important than wealth.

③I don't doubt that taking part in various school activities is beneficial to us students.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)**我怀疑**开展这项活动**是否**有益；也许我们应该考虑一种不同的方法。

I doubt whether/if it would be beneficial to carry out the activity; perhaps we should consider a different approach.

②(应用文写作之科技话题)**毫无疑问**，科技改变了我们的生活。

There is no doubt that technology changes our life.

多义词汇 专练

1. remote：A. *adj*. 远程的　B. *adj*. 关系较远的，远亲的　C. *adj*. 偏远的，偏僻的

① I'm grateful to Linda, a **remote** relative of mine, for her generous help. B

②(2024·全国甲卷)The Saint Lukas is one of five government-sponsored medical trains that travel to **remote** towns in central and eastern Russia. C

③ This article introduces some **remote** control methods of CNC system. A

2. credit：A. *n*. 借款，贷款　B. *n*. 学分　C. *n*. 信用

①You must pass the examination to get **credits** for the course. B

②Her **credit** isn't good anywhere now. C

③You can get the interest-free **credit** on all our products. A

3. It is a movie that **engages** both the mind and the eye. C

A. *v*. 聘用　B. *v*. (使)从事，参加　C. *v*. 吸引

语法研习课

现在分词作定语

语法感知

①... there were over 200,000 people **reading** my blog!

②I love to photograph the **rising** sun, ...

③... there were over 200,000 people **who read my blog**!

④I love to photograph the sun **that is rising**, ...

1. 句①②中黑体部分是现在分词作定语,与所修饰的名词之间是主动关系。
2. 句③④中黑体部分是定语从句作定语。

语法精讲

一、现在分词作定语的位置

现在分词作定语在句中通常有两个位置,如果是单个的现在分词作定语,常放在被修饰词前作前置定语;如果是现在分词短语作定语,常放在被修饰词后作后置定语。

He is an **attacking** player.

他是一名进攻型运动员。

A little child **learning to** walk often falls.

学走路的小孩常常摔跤。

Do you know the number of people **coming to** the party?

你知道来参加聚会的人数吗?

名师点拨

当现在分词作后置定语时,可转化为相应的定语从句。

A young man **writing novels** gave a speech to us yesterday.

→A young man **who writes novels** gave a speech to us yesterday.

一位写小说的年轻人昨天来给我们做演讲。

The girl **sitting next to me** is my cousin.

→The girl **who is sitting next to me** is my cousin.

坐在我旁边的女孩是我的表妹。

二、现在分词作定语的用法

1. 说明被修饰词的性质、特征或用途。现在分词和被修饰词之间没有主谓关系,相当于一个介词 for 引导的短语。

They set up **an operating table** (= a table for operating) in a hospital.

他们将手术台架设在一家医院里。

He may be in **the reading room** (= a room for reading).

他可能在阅览室里。

2. 与被修饰词之间为主动关系且表示正在进行的动作时,可改成相应的定语从句。

There were about 200 children **studying** (= who were studying) in the art school.

大约有两百个孩子在这所艺术学校学习。

3. 有些现在分词已经转化成形容词,常作定语,用来修饰物,表示"令人……"。这类词也可以转换成定语从句。常用的此类词有 exciting, amusing, amazing, astonishing, shocking, puzzling, confusing, disappointing, discouraging, pleasing, striking, boring, tiring, touching, moving, interesting, satisfying, terrifying, frightening 等。

That must have been a **terrifying** experience.

那一定是一段可怕的经历。

The experiment was an **amazing** success.

那项试验取得了惊人的成功。

There is a page **missing** from this book.

这本书缺了一页。

三、现在分词的被动式

如果现在分词与被修饰词之间是被动关系,就用它的被动式,即 being done。being done 通常表示正在被做,常作后置定语。

The tall building **being built** now is our new school.

正在被建的高楼是我们的新学校。

The question **being discussed** was presented by the headmaster.

正在被讨论的问题是校长提出的。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 改写短语

1. the meeting room → the room for meetings
2. a walking stick → a stick for walking
3. an embarrassing question → a question which is embarrassing
4. a sleeping child → a child who is sleeping
5. a listening child → a child who is listening

Ⅱ. 句型转换

1. The young man sitting between John and Mary was the editor of the campus newspaper.
→The young man who/that was sitting between John and Mary was the editor of the campus newspaper.
2. The man standing at the school gate is Professor Hua.
→The man who/that is standing at the school gate is Professor Hua.
3. The bike which is being repaired belongs to Mr Smith.
→The bike being repaired belongs to Mr Smith.
4. The topic being discussed is about environmental problems.
→The topic which is being discussed is about environmental problems.
5. I like to watch the leaves which are falling in the sky.
→I like to watch the falling leaves in the sky.

Unit 5 课后素养评价（十九）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 词语填空

aboard; remote; route; hike; chain

1. Scientists hope to send astronauts (航天员) to the remote universe one day to have a better knowledge of the universe.
2. Our school organises two travel routes to China, both of which are fascinating (极具吸引力的).
3. They are going to hike to the top of a mountain.
4. The whole food chain is affected by the overuse of chemicals in agriculture.
5. After all the passengers went aboard, the ship set sail.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. As we can see, computers have brought dramatic (drama) changes to the workplace.
2. In order to achieve our goals, we need to make a detailed plan in advance.
3. There is no doubt that she has the makings of a successful journalist.
4. Although she is busy, she remains actively engaged in regular exercise.
5. The details of today's flights (fly) are displayed on the monitor.
6. When I go camping, I sleep in a sleeping (sleep) bag.
7. Last night, there were millions of people watching (watch) the opening ceremony (仪式).
8. There was a terrible noise following (follow) the burst of light.

Ⅲ. 句型转换

1. The man who is taking a walk on the playground is my English teacher.
→The man taking a walk on the playground is my English teacher.
2. Tom received a phone call from his mother who said that she would visit him this weekend.
→Tom received a phone call from his mother saying that she would visit him this weekend.
3. The topic which is being referred to is about environmental problems.
→ The topic being referred to is about environmental problems.
4. This is one of the problems which are being discussed at the meeting at present.
→This is one of the problems being discussed at the meeting at present.
5. The book which belongs to him is lying on the ground.
→The book belonging to him is lying on the ground.
6. His first book that will be published next month is based on a true story.
→His first book to be published next month is based on a true story.

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

We live in a town with three beaches. There are two parks less than 10 minutes' walk from home where neighbourhood children gather to play. However, what my children want to do after school is to pick up a screen and stare at it for hours. They are not alone. Today's children spend an average of

four and a half hours a day looking at screens, addicted to watching television and using the Internet.

In the past few years, an increasing number of people and organisations have begun coming up with plans to resist this trend (趋势). A couple of years ago, film-maker David Bond realised that his children, then aged five and three, were addicted to screens to the point where he was able to say "chocolate" into his 3-year-old son's ear without getting a response. He realised that something needed to change. He documented his journey as he set about treating nature as a brand to be marketed to young people. The result was *Project Wild Thing*, a film which records the birth of the World Network, a group of organisations with the common goal of getting children out into nature.

"Just five more minutes outdoors can make a difference," David Bond says. "There is a lot of really interesting evidence which seems to be suggesting that if children are inspired up to the age of seven, then being outdoors will be a habit for life." His own children have got into the habit of playing outside now. "We just send them out into the garden and tell them not to come back in for a while."

Summer is upon us. There is an amazing world out there, and it needs our children as much as they need it. Let us get them out and let them play.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲述了电影制作人David Bond为了让孩子们远离屏幕,拍摄自己的自然旅行,制作成纪录片推销给年轻人。

1. What is the problem with the author's children?

A. They often annoy their neighbours.

B. They are tired of doing their homework.

C. They have no friends to play with.

D. They stay in front of screens for too long.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"However, what my children want to do after school is to pick up a screen and stare at it for hours."可知,作者的孩子放学后就拿起电子设备盯着屏幕看,他们的问题是在屏幕前待的时间太长了。故选D。

2. Which of the following can replace the underlined word "chocolate" in Paragraph 2?

A. Pudding. B. Handbag.

C. Wine. D. Crop.

A 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的"Today's children spend an average of four and a half hours a day looking at screens, addicted to watching television and using the Internet."和第二段中的"A couple of years ago, film-maker David Bond realised that his children, then aged five and three, were addicted to screens to the point where he was able to say 'chocolate' into his 3-year-old son's ear without getting a response. He realised that something needed to change."可知,孩子们对电子设备如此上瘾以至于家长说给他们拿巧克力吃,他们都不会有任何的回应。因此,pudding(甜点)可以替换画线词,指的是甜食。故选A。

3. How did David Bond realise his idea?

A. By organising outdoor activities.

B. By making a documentary film.

C. By advertising in London media.

D. By creating a network of friends.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"He documented his journey as he set about treating nature as a brand to be marketed to young people. The result was *Project Wild Thing*, a film which records the birth of the World Network, a group of organisations with the common goal of getting children out into nature."可知,David Bond通过拍一部纪录片来实现他的想法。故选B。

4. Which can be a suitable title for the text?

A. Let Children Have Fun

B. Young Children Need More Free Time

C. Market Nature to Children

D. David Bond: A Role Model for Children

C 标题归纳题。通读全文,根据第二段中的"He documented his journey as he set about treating nature as a brand to be marketed to young people. The result was *Project Wild Thing*, a film which records the birth of the World Network, a group of organisations with the common goal of getting children out into nature."可知,本文主要讲述了电影制作人David Bond为了让孩子们远离屏幕,拍摄自己的旅行,并将自然当作一个品牌,推销给年轻人,所以C项"把自然推销给年轻人"适合作为本文标题。故选C。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Get to know the travelling experiences and feelings of the author through reading.
2. Learn the usage of pronouns and find out what they refer to in the text.
3. Learn to respect cultural diversity, form a sense of cross-cultural awareness and deeply understand the meaning of travel.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Soccer** needs only two feet and a ball. 英式足球
2. A **vehicle** is a machine with an engine that carries people or things from one place to another, such as a bus, car, or truck. 交通工具,车辆
3. A **mass** of something is a large amount of it. 许多

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
continent *n*. 洲,大洲,大陆	continental *adj*. 大洲的,大陆的
direction *n*. 方向;指导	direct *v*. 指挥;指示
manage *v*. 管理;设法做成	management *n*. 管理;管理部门
	manager *n*. 经理
memorable *adj*. 值得纪念的;难忘的	memorise *v*. 记住;记录;记下
	memory *n*. 记忆力;回忆;记忆

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. make it 及时到达;取得成功
2. pick up (用车)接;搭载;捡起,拾起
3. cheer... up 使……高兴/振作起来
4. keep in touch 保持联系
5. fall asleep 入睡;睡着
6. can't wait to do sth. 等不及做某事;迫不及待做某事

Ⅳ. 补全句子

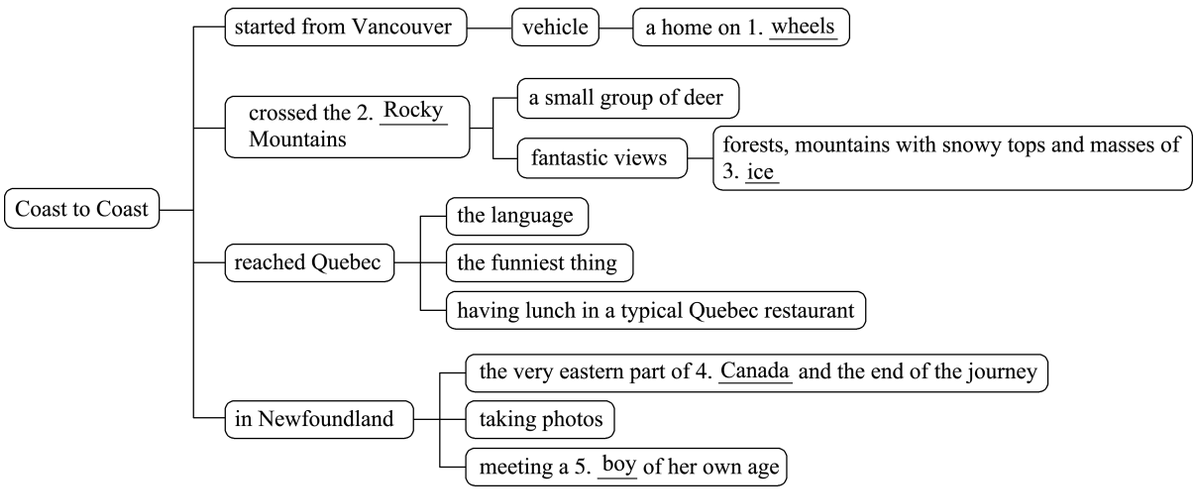
1. 句型公式:had done sth. when...
   I'd fallen asleep, when I heard Dad's phone ringing.
   我刚睡着,突然听到爸爸的手机响了。
2. 句型公式:强调句型
   It was then that I realised her seat was empty!
   直到那时我才意识到她的座位是空的!
3. 句型公式:while 引导时间状语从句
   Well, while I was sleeping, Dad stopped for some petrol and Mum also got out to take photos, and you can guess the rest...
   原来,在我睡着的时候,爸爸停车去加油,妈妈也下车去拍照了,你应该能猜到下面发生什么了……
4. 句型公式:be doing... when...
   Mum was using Dad's phone to take photos of the colourful little houses along the coast when we saw something amazing—a killer whale!
   正当妈妈用爸爸的手机给沿岸五颜六色的小房子拍照时,我们看到了令人惊喜的一幕——一头虎鲸!
5. 句型公式:so... that...
   Mum was so excited that she dropped the phone into the sea.
   妈妈太兴奋了,结果把手机掉进了海里。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What is the main idea of the text?
   A. Experiences in Canada.
   B. Trips across the North American continent.
   C. Funny stories happening in Quebec.
   D. Learning French in Canada.
2. How did the family travel?
   A. By train. B. By bus.
   C. By touring car. D. By boat.
3. What did the author think of the views of the Rocky Mountains?
   A. Wonderful. B. Terrible.
   C. Imaginable. D. Boring.
4. What happened in Quebec that day?
   A. The author's father lost his way.
   B. The author overslept.
   C. The author's mother was ill.
   D. The author's mother was left somewhere.
5. Why was the author's mother so excited at the end of their journey?
   A. Because she saw a bear.
   B. Because she was able to take photos.
   C. Because she met a killer whale.
   D. Because she watched a group of deer.

答案：1～5 BCADC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. We started from Vancouver, where we picked up our vehicle for the trip—a home on wheels.
   [句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中关系副词 where 引导的是非限制性定语从句，where 指的是 in Vancouver。
   [尝试翻译]我们从温哥华出发，在那里我们开上了我们旅行用的交通工具——一辆房车。
2. We had the famous "poutine", which is a dish of French fries, fresh cheese and a hot brown sauce called "gravy".
   [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。关系代词 which 引导非限制性定语从句，which 代指先行词 "poutine"。called "gravy"是过去分词短语作后置定语，修饰前面的名词 sauce。
   [尝试翻译]我们吃了有名的"肉汁奶酪薯条"，这是一道由炸薯条、新鲜奶酪和一种叫作"肉汁"的褐色热酱汁做成的菜。
3. Mum was using Dad's phone to take photos of the colourful little houses along the coast when we saw something amazing—a killer whale!
   [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。was/were doing/be about to do/had just done... when... 句型意为"正在做……/正要做……/刚做完……，突然……"，when 引导时间状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]正当妈妈用爸爸的手机给沿岸五颜六色的小房子拍照时，我们看到了令人惊喜的一幕——一头虎鲸！

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What do you think Eva enjoyed most about the trip?
   略
2. Could you describe a trip with your family that impressed you most?
   略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. mass *n*. 大量,许多;群众;民众;团;块 *adj*. 大规模的;群众的

[教材原文]There were forests, mountains with snowy tops and **masses** of ice.

那里有森林,白雪皑皑的群山以及大片的冰原。

[归纳拓展]

(1)a mass of/masses of 许多,大量(of后面所接的名词为可数名词的复数或不可数名词,并且谓语动词的单复数形式与该名词的数一致)

(2)the mass of 大部分(谓语动词的单复数形式与后面的名词的数一致)

(3)in the mass (=as a whole) 大体上;总的来说

(4)the masses 群众;大众

(5)mass production 批量生产

mass market 大众市场

(6)massive *adj*. 巨大的;大而重的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① In the mass, students are making steady progress in their studies.

②The mass of workers (worker) do not want this strike.

③(2023·新课标Ⅰ卷)At the end of the thirty days, you will then add back a small number of carefully chosen online activities that you believe will provide massive (mass) benefits to the things you value.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之主题升华)我们应该多参加社会实践,这样才能积累**大量的经验**。

We should take part in social practice more, so that we can accumulate masses of/a mass of experience.

2. make it 及时到达;取得成功;达到预定目标;约定时间、地点

[教材原文]We **made it**!

我们做到了!

[归纳拓展]

make up 组成,构成;编造;化妆;整理;和解

make up for 补偿,弥补

make out 辨别;理解;看清

make full/good use of / make the most/best of } 充分利用

make fun of(=laugh at) 嘲笑

make room for 为……腾出地方

make efforts 做出努力

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国二卷)If you're among the groups of people who are enjoying the mental and physical health benefits of surrounding yourself with plants, don't beat yourself up if one (or a few!) doesn't make it.

②Kate heard a man's voice, but she couldn't make out what he was saying.

③You ought not to make fun of him. He is not the one you laugh at but learn from.

④ Could you please make room for the old woman?

(2)写作微练

(2025·全国一卷读后续写)我深感愧疚,决定**弥补这个错误**。

Overcome with guilt, I decided to make up for the mistake.

3. had done sth. when...

[教材原文]**I'd fallen asleep, when** I heard Dad's phone ringing.

我刚睡着,突然听到爸爸的手机响了。

[归纳拓展]

be doing sth. when... 正在做某事,突然……

be about to do sth./on the point of doing sth. when... 正要做某事,突然……

had just done sth. when... 刚做完某事,突然……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Tom had just fallen asleep when someone knocked at the door.

②We were on the point of leaving when a big noise came from the next room.

③The thief was about to put (put) his hand into the lady's handbag when the bus suddenly stopped.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写)我**正在上网搜索**一些信息时,**我们的厨房突然着火了**。我哥哥和我立即采取行动灭火。

I was searching the Internet for some information

when our kitchen caught fire. My brother and I took immediate action to put out the fire.

多义词汇 专练

1. vehicle：A. *n*. 工具，手段 B. *n*. 交通工具，车辆

① **Vehicles** also cause air pollution, which produces city smog, leading to acid rain and global warming. B

②A television talk show is an excellent **vehicle** for self-promotion. A

2. mass： A. *n*. 群众 B. *adj*. 大批的，数量极多的 C. *n*. 团，块，堆

①The cold air **masses** are moving from Siberia towards Inner Mongolia. C

②The **masses** are the true creators of history. A

③These precise instruments have already gone into **mass** production. B

Unit 5 课后素养评价（二十）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. The soccer（英式足球）match had to be postponed because of the heavy rain.

2. Before the rain, the sky was a mass（团）of clouds.

3. There are two long rivers within the continent（大陆）.

4. Our first vehicle（交通工具）was an old broken-down bicycle.

5. A closed season on deer（鹿）hunting was established on Long Island.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. She picked up some French when living in Paris.

2. The girl can't wait to share (share) the good news with her good friends.

3. It is important to cheer up and look on the bright side of life when we get into trouble.

4. Do telephone me as often as you can. I don't want to lose touch with you.

5. Lily was about to study (study) when someone knocked at the door.

6. If you apply yourself to study, you can make it.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

pick up; fall asleep; masses of; keep in touch with; refer to

1. When I said some people were stupid, I wasn't referring to you.

2. The page was covered with masses of figures, making me dizzy（头晕目眩的）.

3. Keeping in touch with our friends is an important part of friendship.

4. He picks up this theme again in later chapters of the book.

5. His eyes were shut and he seemed to have fallen asleep.

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 毫无疑问，近视是青少年中的一个严重问题。(doubt)

There is no doubt that near-sightedness is a serious problem among teenagers.

2. 是什么使得他没按时来？(强调句型)

What was it that prevented him from coming on time?

3. 我们正收拾行李准备出去度周末，这时我女儿听到了呼救声。(be doing... when...)

We were packing to leave for a weekend away when my daughter heard cries for help.

4. 你等待时我会陪伴你。(while 引导时间状语从句)

I'll keep you company while you're waiting.

Ⅴ. 语法填空

In China's northwestern province of Shaanxi, Xi'an is primarily known **1.** for the Terracotta Army. But the city wall, on Saturday evenings, is where all the action is.

"The city walls tended to perform three main functions: defense, flood protection, and show of imperial might," says Kenneth Swope, professor of history at the University of Southern Mississippi.

The Xi'an wall, **2.** dating (date) back to the Tang Dynasty, is a famous landmark. The city wall **3.** runs (run) for 13.7 km and measures 12 to 14 metres in height and 15 to 18 metres in **4.** width (wide). Four main gates face each direction, and there are 14 minor gates in between.

Swope also says that the more **5.** powerful (power) the rulers, the higher and more impressive the walls. This **6.** certainly (certain) makes sense for Xi'an (formerly Chang'an), **7.** an important city through early imperial times, serving as capital for the Han, Sui, and Tang **8.** dynasties (dynasty). Xi'an is also the starting point of the network of trading routes known as the Silk Road. It was a planned city, built with a wall surrounding it in a

complete, rectangular (矩形的) shape. Even today, for some, it is possible **9.** to walk (walk) the entire length of the wall **10.** which/that goes all the way around the city without a break.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你的英国朋友 Mike 打算暑假来中国。他对中国传统文化非常感兴趣,希望你能为他推荐一些名胜古迹。请你用英语给他发一封电子邮件,向他推荐至少两个你喜欢的名胜古迹。内容包括:

1. 简要介绍你推荐的名胜古迹;
2. 说明你推荐的理由;
3. 表达你的祝愿。

注意:词数 80 左右。

Dear Mike,

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

My Life Camping Experience

Last year in October, my family and I took our first trip to the Lake Houston Wilderness Park and slept underneath the stars. As we walked through the beautiful park, the colours of the sun shined brightly on the pile of leaves. The gentle wind of the forest welcomed us with the sound of crackling (噼啪) of dried leaves. My family was all together, which was the most important part of the trip for me.

My brothers and sisters are adults with different lives, which makes it difficult for us to plan an activity, like this one, where we can be altogether at the same time and place.

We had finished setting up the tent when it suddenly started raining. Luckily, we had positioned the tent on a high flat surface where water could not come into our tent. Even with the rain, I had never been happier. The quiet forest and big trees surrounded the tent.

While we all enjoyed the sound of the rain dripping on our tent, Mum prepared some snacks and drinks for us while we played games and chatted about our daily life stories. We made wet-weather camping fun. I noticed how unique it was camping under the sound of the rain; we were gathered around in the middle of nature and it was a nice feeling, though it was a little bit cool.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

As darkness fell, Mum cooked a warm meal over the fire for the family.

We spent the rest of the evening exploring the rocky trails around our campsite.

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Mike,

I'm glad to know that you are coming to China during summer vacation. The following is a brief introduction about some places of interest that I strongly recommend.

The Great Wall of China is one of the great wonders in the world. Because of its rich history and magnificent appearance, the Great Wall attracts a lot of tourists, scientists, and historians. Besides, the famous West Lake is like a brilliant pearl embedded in the beautiful and fertile shores of East China Sea near the mouth of the Hangzhou Bay, whose view is charming and fascinating enough to make an impression on every visitor.

I'm looking forward to your arrival. There are many other wonderful places here. Wish you a nice journey!

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

As darkness fell, Mum cooked a warm meal over the fire for the family. The smell of delicious food filled the air, making our mouths water. By the dancing light of the campfire, we sat around, sharing stories and laughter. Each bite of the meal was filled with warmth and love. After dinner, we all leaned back, looking up at the starry sky through the thin gaps in the leaves. The stars twinkled brightly, as if they were joining our happy gathering. It was a peaceful and wonderful moment that I would always cherish.

We spent the rest of the evening exploring the rocky trails around our campsite. With flashlights in hand, we carefully made our way along the path. The sound of our footsteps echoed in the quiet forest. Along the way, we discovered interesting rocks and small insects. My siblings and I would stop from time to time, pointing out something amazing we saw. Even the youngest among us was full of curiosity. When we finally returned to the campsite, we were tired but excited. Lying in the tent, listening to the soft sounds of the forest, we slowly drifted off to sleep, looking forward to another wonderful day in this beautiful wilderness.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——写明信片

○写作指导

(一)明信片的书写目的

明确书写明信片的目的有利于写出条理清晰的明信片。一般来说,书写明信片有以下几个目的:

1. 告知他人自己旅游的情况;
2. 告知他人自己的新住址;
3. 寄送节日祝福;
4. 传递思念;
5. 询问对方近况;
6. 告知他人一些重要信息。

(二)书写明信片的注意事项

明信片的书写可以随意一些,但还是要注意以下几点:

1. 开头和结尾可以按照自己的喜好称呼和署名;
2. 正文书写应明确目的,力求言简意赅;
3. 明信片书写空间有限,不要堆积太多信息;
4. 尽量使用短句;
5. 对于明信片上的关键信息,可以用大写或者下划线突出显示。

(三)明信片的格式

通常明信片的背面分两栏,一栏用于书写,一栏用于填写寄送人的姓名和地址。

○典题示例

假如你是李华,请你用英语给好友 Emma 写一张关于此次假期旅行的明信片,告知她一些与你相关的旅行信息,主要包括:你和家人在这个国庆假期乘飞机去了海南旅行。你们去了沙滩,在当地参观了景点,还吃了海鲜。那里风景优美,一家人玩得很开心。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:海鲜 seafood;虾 shrimp;螃蟹 crab;鲍鱼 abalone

Step 1:审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	第一人称
要点	1. 概括总体行程以及记叙主要的参观过程 2. 说明以后的计划,表达感受

续表

Step 2:要点补全

①After getting off the plane (下飞机), we went to the beach to see the beautiful sand there.

②Afterwards we had lunch in a seafood restaurant (在海鲜馆) near the beach there.

③We ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup (喝了鲍鱼汤).

④We all didn't want to go home because the scenery was so beautiful (如此优美), and there were many other exciting things (其他许多令人兴奋的事情) to try.

Step 3:句式升级

①用 where 引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的句②③

Afterwards we had lunch in a seafood restaurant near the beach, where we ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup.

②用 so... that... 引导的结果状语从句改写 Step 2 中的句④

The scenery was so beautiful, and there were so many other exciting things to try that we all didn't want to go home.

Step 4:连句成篇

Oct. 3

Hi Emma,

I went on a trip to Hainan with my family on National Day by plane. After getting off the plane, we went to the beach to see the beautiful sand there. Afterwards we had lunch in a seafood restaurant near the beach, where we ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup. The scenery was so beautiful, and there were so many other exciting things to try that we all didn't want to go home, but sadly it was time for us to go.

If I have a chance to go there again, I will be more than happy.

Li Hua

○学以致用

假如你是李华,你和交换生John经常互相交流。这个寒假,你和妈妈去了哈尔滨。请你用英语给John写一张明信片,告知他相关的旅行信息。主要包括:

1. 冬天的哈尔滨很冷,是一个白色的冰雪世界;
2. 最令人兴奋的事情是玩雪和滑冰;
3. 你们玩得很开心,将永远记住哈尔滨这座冰雪城市。

注意:1. 词数80左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Jan. 29

Hi John,

This winter holiday I was in Harbin with my mother, which is very cold in winter.

There was snow and ice everywhere and I was always in a white world. I must wear warm clothes. The most exciting thing was playing with snow. Skating was very interesting as well.

I will always remember Harbin, for the snow, the ice and all the beautiful things. I had hoped to stay here another day, but I had to return because our new term was coming.

I love Harbin, and I miss you, too.

Li Hua

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Danny and Sarah stepped out of the terminal and into the sunshine. They looked up at the clear blue sky, then at the distant hills that were looming over the waving palm trees. They were eager to begin their vacation.

The cab stopped quickly and quietly. Danny put their bags in the trunk and got into the backseat with Sarah. "Palm Trees Hotel, please," Danny said in excitement. "Yes, sir," answered the driver as he turned his head and gave them a bright smile. Danny and Sarah exchanged confused glances as the cab slid gently through the traffic. "Excuse me, uh, you look really familiar. Actually, you look like the movie star Rocky Overton. But of course, you can't be."

Danny and Sarah were left in mute (沉默的) disbelief when the driver told them he wasn't a real person, but a robot created to resemble a well-known actor. "Rocky" told them that the cab company had bought the newest robotic drivers because they were programmed to be safer and more reliable than human drivers. "So here I am," "Rocky" added, "your first robotic cab driver!"

Danny and Sarah tightened their grips (把手). "Rocky" assured them, "You don't have to be concerned. I can guarantee you I'm a great driver. My eyesight is impeccable (无可挑剔的), my reflexes (反应) are superb, and I am familiar with all the streets of this town. I'm constantly updated with new traffic data, so I'll be able to avoid congestion (交通堵塞) and arrive at your destination as quickly as possible, without any stress. Have a seat, have a good rest, and have a good time on your way."

Danny and Sarah felt a bit more comfortable, so they leaned back in their seats and shut their eyes. "And another thing," "Rocky" continued, "my robot series stands for the highest level of computer technology. I'm beautifully designed and made of the finest materials, and have undergone the strictest quality control. That's why you're perfectly safe with me. Nothing could possibly go wrong... could possibly go wrong... go wrong... go wrong..."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

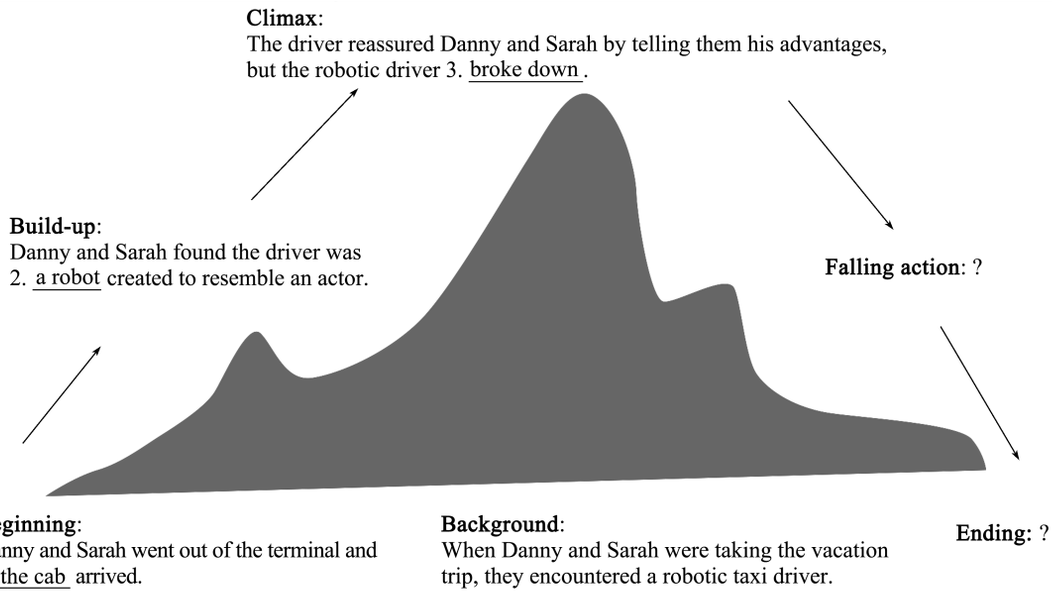
Danny and Sarah exchanged glances, their eyes wild with fear. _____

_____

"Don't worry, sir," came the calm reply on the phone. "Your cab is also an unmanned one." _____

_____

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1： Danny and Sarah exchanged glances, their eyes wild with fear. _____ _____ _____ _____	1. Why did Danny and Sarah feel fearful? Because there is something wrong with the cab. 2. How did Danny and Sarah react to it? Danny tried to call out to "Rocky" to slow down, but in vain. 3. How was the problem solved? They asked the cab company for help.
Paragraph 2： "Don't worry, sir," came the calm reply on the phone. "Your cab is also an unmanned one." _____ _____ _____ _____	1. How did the cab company solve the problem? The cab was changed into the automatic mode. 2. Did the solution work? Yes, they arrived at the destination safely. 3. How did Danny and Sarah feel after resolving the emergency and what decision did they make for the rest of their vacation? They felt relieved and grateful to be alive, and decided to go on foot for the rest of their vacation.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. As the cab sped up, "Rocky" appeared to have broken down (似乎出了故障).
2. "Slow down!" Danny called out (大声呼喊), but there was no response from "Rocky".
3. The cab moved at an even greater speed (以更快的速度), narrowly avoiding a vehicle.
4. Frightened, Danny picked up the phone (拿起电话).
5. With trembling fingers, he made a phone call (打电话) to the cab company.
6. "Hello?" Danny yelled into the phone (对着电话大喊). "Our robotic driver is having a breakdown and he's completely out of control (完全失控). We need help quickly!"
7. The answer went on, "We have the authority to disable the robotic driver (有权让机器人司机停止工作). I'll change your cab into (把你的车切换成) the automatic mode so that you can reach your destination safely."
8. The cab instantly slowed down and continued on its journey (继续它的行程), though the driver could still be heard muttering, "Go wrong... go wrong..."
9. When they reached their hotel, Danny and Sarah got out of the cab, relieved and grateful to be alive (松了一口气并对还活着心怀感激).
10. As they saw the cab drive off (开走), they decided to go on foot (决定步行出行) for the rest of their

vacation!

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

【参考范文】

Danny and Sarah exchanged glances, their eyes wild with fear. As the cab sped up, "Rocky" appeared to have broken down. "Slow down!" Danny called out, but there was no response from "Rocky". The cab moved at an even greater speed, narrowly avoiding a vehicle. Frightened, Danny picked up the phone. With trembling fingers, he made a phone call to the cab company. "Hello?" Danny yelled into the phone. "Our robotic driver is having a breakdown and he's completely out of control. We need help quickly!"

"Don't worry, sir," came the calm reply on the phone. "Your cab is also an unmanned one." The answer went on, "We have the authority to disable the robotic driver. I'll change your cab into the automatic mode so that you can reach your destination safely." The cab instantly slowed down and continued on its journey, though the driver could still be heard muttering, "Go wrong... go wrong..." When they reached their hotel, Danny and Sarah got out of the cab, relieved and grateful to be alive. As they saw the cab drive off, they decided to go on foot for the rest of their vacation!

单元质量评估(五)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Take this 5-day trip to explore North Atlantic wonders. It is equipped with a team of experts—from naturalists to local experts—who will share their knowledge and ideas about the wildlife, natural views and culture.

DAY 1

Arrive in Edinburgh and go to the city centre. Famous for Edinburgh Castle on the hill, this lively city has many kinds of experiences along its streets. Enjoy the city at will before getting on the ship in the afternoon.

Meals Included: Dinner

DAYS 2—3

Arrive in Kirkwall, the capital of the Orkney Islands. Take a guided walk through the historic streets of the old town, passing the walls of the Bishop's and Earl's palaces, and St Magnus Cathedral. Then, you can go out on your own to explore High Street.

Choose one of the activities for your own time:

Visit Scapa Flow—one of the world's greatest natural harbours (海港).

Visit the ancient stone buildings that stand on the north end of Mainland, an island of the Orkney Islands. They help us understand the lives of people thousands of years ago.

Meals Included: Breakfast, Lunch, Dinner

DAYS 4—5

The Shetlands, with amazing natural beauty, are close to Norway, so people here speak Scottish with a Scandinavian accent (口音). What's more, people here have their long-held cultural traditions. Discover some of these beautiful rural islands—there are ancient ruins and windy grasslands. You can visit the protected Burrafirth Harbour at the foot of the Hermaness National Nature Reserve and join a night of music and dance in a community hall nearby.

Meals Included: Breakfast, Lunch, Dinner

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了北大西洋五日之旅的行程安排与特色体验。

1. What is special about the 5-day trip?

A. It arranges many history courses.

B. It offers free breakfast every day.

C. It has experts from different fields.

D. It provides free transport in cities.

C　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"It is equipped with a team of experts—from naturalists to local experts—who will share their knowledge and ideas about the wildlife, natural views and culture."可知，这次旅行的特别之处在于配备了来自不同领域的专家团队。故选C。

2. What can travellers do freely in Kirkwall?

A. Explore Edinburgh Castle on the hill.

B. Walk through ancient stone buildings.

C. Take a short ship tour.

D. Discover the protected Burrafirth Harbour.

B 细节理解题。根据 **DAYS 2－3** 部分中的“Then, you can go out on your own to explore High Street.”以及下面的可选活动中“Visit the ancient stone buildings that stand on the north end of Mainland, an island of the Orkney Islands.”可知,在柯克沃尔,旅行者可以自由参观古老的石头建筑。故选 B。

3. Where can visitors enjoy a dance party?

A. In Edinburgh Castle.

B. At a hall in Scapa Flow.

C. Outside a famous palace.

D. Near Burrafirth Harbour.

D 细节理解题。根据 **DAYS 4－5** 部分中的“You can visit the protected Burrafirth Harbour at the foot of the Hermaness National Nature Reserve and join a night of music and dance in a community hall nearby.”可知,游客可以在布拉夫斯港附近欣赏舞会。故选 D。

B

In a small coastal community in Ecuador known as La Isla, I was handing out clothes and toys to children standing in a long line in their schoolyard. They had gathered there that morning, likely wearing the only clothes they owned. They were quiet and polite, eyes bright with excitement. Watching this, my mind flashed back to a day I would never forget.

I was five years old that New Year's Eve in 1988, growing up in Ecuador, with my parents and elder sister. My father came into my bedroom and gave me a plastic cowboy. I'd never owned a real toy of any kind. My family didn't have much. My mother stayed home, caring for my sister and me. My father drove a food delivery truck and was on the road for days at a time.

“I hope you like your toy,” my father said, kneeling down and holding me close. I felt the warmth of his body, as if in giving me this toy he was also giving me a part of himself. Even at age five, I knew that had been a gift.

By sixth grade our family moved to the US, and life got easier. I did really well in high school. Every good grade was a thank-you to my parents for all they'd done for me. I went on to college, and after graduation, with my degree in hand, I became a pharmacist (药剂师). I was finally able to buy nice gifts for my family, but I could never give in equal measure the love I'd felt from that unexpected gift I'd received as a little boy. I wished every child could know that feeling.

Two years into my career, I made my first trip to La Isla. Two years later, I returned with my nonprofit (非营利的) organisation called Toys for Ecuador. My parents, sister and I travelled to towns across rural Ecuador with New Year presents for children and gift baskets for seniors.

It was a journey that not only fulfilled a childhood wish to share that special feeling of love and generosity, but also reaffirmed (重申) my commitment to making a difference in the lives of others.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述的是作者在厄瓜多尔的一个社区给孩子们分发礼物时,孩子们收礼物的场景让作者回忆起自己童年时的故事。

4. What reminded the author of his childhood story?

A. The scene of children's receiving gifts.

B. The New Year celebration.

C. The children's happy school life.

D. The preparation of New Year gifts.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“They were quiet and polite, eyes bright with excitement. Watching this, my mind flashed back to a day I would never forget.”可知,看到孩子们收礼物的场景,作者想起来自己童年时的故事。故选 A。

5. Which words can best describe the author's father?

A. Thankful and positive.

B. Outgoing and romantic.

C. Responsible and confident.

D. Hard-working and caring.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“My father drove a food delivery truck and was on the road for days at a time.”可知,作者的父亲开着一辆送餐车,一连几天都在路上,由此推断,父亲工作很努力;结合第三段中的“‘I hope you like your toy,’ my father said, kneeling down and holding me close. I felt the warmth of his body, as if in giving me this toy he was also giving me a part of himself.”可知,父亲跪下来紧紧地抱着作者,作者感觉到好像父亲给他这个玩具的同时,也把自己的一部分给了他,由此推知,父亲很会关心人。综上可知,父亲工作努力并且会关心人。故选 D。

6. How did the author repay his parents?

A. By meeting their wish to make himself a pharmacist.

B. By improving his academic achievements.

C. By buying them some unexpected gifts.

D. By setting up a nonprofit organisation.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“I did really well in high school. Every good grade was a thank-you to my parents for all they'd done for me.”可知，作者在高中表现出色，每一次好成绩都是对父母为自己所做一切的感谢，由此可知，作者通过努力学习提高学习成绩来回报父母。故选B。

7. Which can be the best title for the text?

A. Toys for Ecuador Gave Children New Year Gifts

B. Father's Gift Pushed a Boy to Succeed Academically

C. Father's Love Never Left Boyhood Memories Behind

D. A Plastic Cowboy Inspired Toys for Ecuador

D 标题归纳题。通读全文，尤其是根据第一段中的“They were quiet and polite, eyes bright with excitement. Watching this, my mind flashed back to a day I would never forget.”可知，文章开篇点明作者在厄瓜多尔一个社区为孩子们发放礼物，接着作者回忆自己童年时收到父亲的礼物——一个塑料牛仔，珍惜教育机会，用优异成绩回报父母，最后学有所成，创建了非营利组织“Toys for Ecuador”，再结合选项可知，D项与文章内容吻合，且引出了本文作者回忆过去的经历，最适合作为本文的标题。故选D。

C

What if we had the power to control time, instead of moving from the past to the present to the future? What if we could jump and travel through time in a machine? What if we could go wherever and whenever we pleased?

The mysterious puzzle of time has kept people debating its nature for hundreds of years. Science fiction writers have turned it into imaginative stories. Some scientists have even attempted to explain it using maths, trying to make the dream of time travel come true.

Albert Einstein said that time and space are one thing called “spacetime”. He said there are three dimensions in space: height, width and depth. A scientist named Hermann Minkowski added time as a fourth dimension.

Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel. The first is relativity. The idea of relativity is that the force of gravity causes space to bend, which causes time to twist. The second idea focuses on special relativity. The idea is that a traveller moving super-fast through flat spacetime will enter the future. Einstein considered time “relative” because it is measured based on where we are on Earth or in space.

Stephen Hawking believes that a time machine will never be built. If it were possible, he thinks we would already know. If a time machine could be built, how come no one from the future has invaded us?

The first science fiction story with this theme is *The Clock That Went Backward* by Edward P. Mitchell, which was published in 1881. Since then, thousands of books, films and television shows have explored the idea of time travel, in which some tools such as phones, watches, photographs and old books take travellers backward and forward.

Will time travel ever happen? Who knows? The most important is to keep your eyes open and have a sense of wonder.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了时光旅行是否能够成为可能，分别引用了科学家阿尔伯特·爱因斯坦和斯蒂芬·霍金对于时空旅行的看法，并介绍了关于时间旅行的不同作品。

8. What is the author's purpose in writing the first paragraph?

A. To show time and space are connected.

B. To show people's interest in time travel.

C. To draw readers' attention to time travel.

D. To make people believe time travel is possible.

C 写作意图题。根据第一段的内容可知，作者写第一段的目的是吸引读者对时光旅行的注意。故选C。

9. Which of the following statements could Einstein agree with?

A. Time travel is possible in the future.

B. People can't move faster than light.

C. Time travel is against scientific rules.

D. Spacetime is not a real thing in theory.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel.”可推知，爱因斯坦的观点导致了关于时光旅行可能性的理论，这说明爱因斯坦会同意选项A“时光旅行在未来是可能的”的说法。故选A。

10. What is the last but one paragraph mainly about?

A. The first science fiction story.

B. Different works about time travel.

C. Edward P. Mitchell, the pioneer.

D. Some tools used in time travel.

B 段落大意题。根据倒数第二段的内容可知，倒数第二段主要介绍了关于时光旅行的不同作品。故选B。

11. What is the writer's attitude towards time travel?

A. Negative. B. Approving.

C. Doubtful. D. Hopeful.

D 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知，作者对于时空旅行是充满希望的。故选D。

D

Wang Mengshu, an expert at the Chinese Academy of Engineering, said at a group discussion on the sidelines of the annual session of the National People's Congress that Wi-Fi should not be provided on high-speed trains, as it might harm communication signals (信号) of trains and would also cost a lot in keeping trains in good condition. He also encouraged passengers to enjoy the views, instead of fixing their eyes on the tiny screens of smartphones and laptops. However, *Beijing Youth Daily* said it should be market demand that decides whether the Wi-Fi is offered on the trains or not.

An increasing number of people, especially young white-collar workers, are addicted to their smartphones rather than face-to-face communication, thanks to the extensive Wi-Fi coverage across the country. That partly justifies Wang's disagreement about the offering of Wi-Fi on high-speed trains, because they shouldn't depend on high-tech devices. It is also obvious that passengers on trains without free Wi-Fi will use their smartphones and other mobile devices less. However, whether the trains should provide a free Wi-Fi service mainly depends on customer demand.

In other words, the China Railway Corporation has to obey relevant market rules, and provide technologically possible services to passengers if that is what they want. It cannot turn a blind eye to customers' wants.

Free Wi-Fi, in fact, is already offered on a lot of buses and coaches. This is a natural response to their competition with trains (especially high-speed ones), which are significantly faster and safer. The bus companies have been forced to improve their services to survive. So it requires proper guidance, not total "no" on the use, to make up for the negative effects of high-end technologies, such as people's increasing addiction to smartphones.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讨论了是否应该在高铁等公共交通工具上提供Wi-Fi这一问题。

12. Why did Wang Mengshu think Wi-Fi shouldn't be offered on the train?

A. Because it may make the communication signals of trains stable.

B. Because it may cause a high cost in keeping trains in good condition.

C. Because it may help people enjoy the beautiful views throughout a journey.

D. Because it may prevent passengers being addicted to their smartphones and laptops.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"Wi-Fi should not be provided on high-speed trains, as it might harm communication signals (信号) of trains and would also cost a lot in keeping trains in good condition"可知，高铁上提供Wi-Fi会使得保持火车运行状态良好的成本提高。故选B。

13. What does the underlined word "justifies" in Paragraph 2 mean?

A. Gives an explanation.

B. Offers a response.

C. Confirms it incorrect.

D. Proves it reasonable.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句可知，"That"指代前文，即前文对王的部分观点表示同意，认为王的观点是合理的、有理有据的。再结合选项可知，D项"证明其合理"与画线词意思一致。故选D。

14. What's the purpose of providing free Wi-Fi on many buses?

A. To compete for more passengers.

B. To help drivers stay concentrated.

C. To prevent passengers feeling bored.

D. To encourage passengers to use phones.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"The bus companies have been forced to improve their services to survive."可知，公共汽车上提供Wi-Fi是为了在市场竞争中生存下来。由此可推知，在公共汽车上装Wi-Fi是为了吸引更多的乘客。故选A。

15. What is the author's attitude to saying "no" to free Wi-Fi on the train?

A. Positive. B. Negative.

C. Objective. D. Supportive.

C 观点态度题。根据最后一段最后一句可知，作者认为不应该完全不提供Wi-Fi，而是应该适当引导，让乘客不要沉迷于手机。由此可推知，作者的态度是客观的、就事论事的。故选C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Travelling and seeing the world provides a huge range of benefits and there are so many different types of trips and experiences you can go on. If you are doubtful about the benefits of travel, then keep reading. **16**.

17.

Life can sometimes be dull (枯燥无味的) with many people working a typical 9-5 Monday-to-Friday job. If that applies to you, then use your holidays to travel more. You'll probably get back from your holiday feeling so much happier and refreshed if you have wonderful experiences and visit beautiful destinations.

Travelling helps you open your eyes to different cultures.

When you travel quite far, then you will get to experience totally different cultures. For example, if you live in Fujian and then travel to Shaanxi, you'll find many things that are different, from climate, local customs, foods, transport, typical architecture, etc.

Travelling gives you new points of views.

Meeting people from other cultures will teach you that the way you've been looking at the world isn't the way everybody else does. **18**. Seeing the world for yourself will improve your vision (视野) and your understanding of reality.

Travelling improves mental health.

Travelling can also have a positive effect on your mental health. **19**. Additionally, a new place can help you disconnect from your daily life, which makes you relax.

20. You'll soon discover your adventures will be life-changing to the point where you let travelling help you shape your life in more positive ways.

A. Travelling helps you escape boring life
B. You will meet people from all walks of life
C. Travelling helps you go beyond outside influences
D. In fact, your view might have some major blind spots
E. Here are 4 reasons why we should travel and see the world
F. In sum, there are many benefits for everyone to get out of routine life
G. It can help you reduce stress and anxiety and offer a sense of excitement

答案:16～20 EADGF

Ⅲ. 完形填空

When I returned home after an overseas trip earlier this year, I was exhausted (筋疲力尽的) and burnt out. I had been on holiday, but why did I feel desperate for another 21?

The truth is, travelling is seldom as 22 as we hope it to be. It can be stressful. We try to 23 so many activities in a day. Jumping from one tourist attraction to the next doesn't give us the chance to really 24 a new place.

Slow travel is an increasing trend that focuses more on the 25 than the destination. Instead of spending a few days in a place, slow tourists stay for a longer time to connect with the 26 and experience their lifestyle.

Slow travel fan Jessica Harumi travelled to Cape Town last year where she initially 27 slow tourism. The popular blogger 28 with the intention of staying for less than one week in the city, but to her 29, found herself spending over one month there. A year on from her 30 slow travel experience, Jessica travelled to other cities such as Seattle and Lisbon, 31 her slow tourism practices.

Jessica says one of her top tips for people wanting to give slow travel a go is to get into a 32. "Doing daily things in a fixed order 33 grocery shopping at a market can really get you deeply involved in local 34. You start to see the 35 people, become familiar with the neighbourhood, and finally find you can see the world from another angle."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。慢速旅行能让你更深入地体验当地文化。

21. A. break　　B. chance
C. choice　　D. adventure

A　今年早些时候,"我"出国旅行归来后疲惫不堪,虽然之前一直在度假,但是"我"为何渴望再来一段休息时间呢?

22. A. convenient　　B. attractive
C. satisfying　　D. relaxing

D　根据下文的"It can be stressful."可知,事实上旅行很少能像我们希望的那样让人放松。

23. A. bring up　　B. fit in
C. call off　　D. check out

B　根据上下文"It can be stressful... so many activities in a day."可知,我们试图在一天里参加很多活动。

24. A. recognise B. select
C. explore D. visit
C 根据上下文“Jumping from one tourist attraction... give us the chance to really 24 a new place.”可知,从一个景点跳转到另一个景点不会让我们有机会真正地去探索一个新地方。

25. A. struggle B. challenge
C. result D. journey
D 根据上下文“Slow travel is an... than the destination.”可知,慢速旅行更关注旅程本身,而不是目的地。

26. A. officials B. locals
C. neighbours D. tourists
B 根据下文的“experience their lifestyle”可知,慢速旅行者会在某地多待一些时间,与当地人建立联系,体验他们的生活方式。

27. A. practised B. improved
C. discovered D. developed
A 根据语境可知,Jessica 最初在开普敦实践了慢速旅行。

28. A. waited B. stopped
C. arrived D. passed
C 根据下文的“but... found herself spending over one month there”可知,Jessica 到达开普敦的时候想着待不到一个星期。

29. A. relief B. amazement
C. disappointment D. regret
B 根据语境可知,令她感到惊讶的是,她发现自己在那里待了超过一个月。

30. A. first B. short
C. usual D. recent
A 上文提到 Jessica 在开普敦开启第一次慢速旅行,此处指在她第一次慢速旅行一年后。

31. A. imagining B. changing
C. considering D. continuing
D 根据上文的“she initially 27 slow tourism”可知,在 Jessica 的首次慢速旅行一年后,她去了其他城市,继续自己的慢速旅行实践。

32. A. relationship B. project
C. routine D. game
C 根据下文的“Doing daily things in a fixed order”可知,Jessica 给想要尝试慢速旅行的人的建议是:按照固定的顺序做日常的事情。

33. A. like B. with
C. beyond D. against
A 根据上文的“Doing daily things in a fixed order”和下文的“grocery shopping at a market”之间的关系可知,后者是前者的例子,故选 like。

34. A. business B. culture
C. reality D. entertainment
B 根据语境可知,过一过当地的常规生活可以让你深度融入当地的文化。

35. A. friendly B. strange
C. important D. same
D 根据下文的“become familiar with the neighbourhood”可知,你开始见到同样的人,熟悉了这里,最后发现自己能够从另外一个角度去看待世界了。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Students control shadow puppets (皮影木偶) as the singing voice of 71-year-old Liu Aibang echoes (回荡) across the classroom. They use thin straight pieces of wood **36.** to make (make) shadow puppets step onto the “stage”—a cloth screen. Those **37.** sitting (sit) in front of the stage play music on drums, *suona* horns (唢呐) and other instruments.

This is a Daoqing shadow puppetry class at Longdong University. Except Liu, **38.** the other performers of the show are all college students. Starting in the Han Dynasty, Daoqing shadow puppetry **39.** has been included (include) in the national intangible cultural heritage list since 2006. In the past, shadow plays **40.** were welcomed (welcome) by people of all ages, and were often performed during the festivals. **41.** However, with films and TV series becoming popular in the late 1980s, many performers moved on to other jobs. **42.** Faced (face) with the choice between protecting this art and making a good living, Liu chose to stay on.

One day in 2020, Liu received a phone call from Zhao Zhixue, **43.** who was head of the music school at Longdong University. Zhao told him that the school planned to **44.** introduce (introduction) Daoqing shadow puppetry into college classrooms and develop young students' long-term interest in intangible cultural heritage. Liu hopes to train more young people. “Just as true love is not a one-man show, the learning and keeping of **45.** cultural (culture) heritage needs efforts from both the old and the young,” Liu said.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是海南某中学学生李华,你的英国交换生朋友 Jack 对热带风光和地方文化很感兴趣。请你根据以下要点,用英语给他写一封电子邮件,向他介绍海南呀诺达雨林文化旅游区(Yanoda Rainforest Cultural Tourism Zone):

1. 位于海南省保亭黎族苗族自治县,占地约 45

平方公里,“呀诺达”在海南本土方言中表示“一、二、三”;

2. 植被茂密,动植物资源丰富,是天然的“动植物基因库”;

3. 欢迎他来游玩,体验雨林风光。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

On a sunny weekend, Avery decided to hike in the nearby forest park. She loves outdoor adventures and convinced her careful friend Eva to join the trip. The two girls wore comfortable clothes and carried backpacks with snacks and water. They started their hike from the park entrance.

As they walked along the forest paths, they shared funny stories from school, happy and excited. The sunlight shone through the leaves, making beautiful patterns on the ground, and the birds sang lovely songs. Everything felt peaceful and wonderful.

They stopped by a small stream to rest and have a picnic, feeling the cool breeze (微风) and listening to the gentle flow of the water. They took pictures of the flowers and the trees, taking photos of the beauty of nature. Time passed quickly as they enjoyed the beautiful natural scenery.

They were addicted to the natural scenery so much that they forgot time. It started to get dark, but they didn't return to the entrance. Although they were not lost, it was late. "We have to walk faster, Eva. There are no streetlights in the park," said Avery. "I couldn't agree with you more. Our phones will be out of power soon. We may be lost in that case," said Eva. They walked faster to get back. Unfortunately, their phones were out of power before they returned to the entrance, so they couldn't use the light and the map, which made them a little worried. But they remembered the way back and decided to follow it.

Hours passed, and it was completely dark. The park became quiet and a bit scary. The sounds in the forest at night made them nervous. Avery's and Eva's families started to worry because the girls didn't come home on time. Avery's mum called the park office to check if the girls were still in the park.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

The staff searched the main paths with flashlights. _____

_____

After saying thanks to the workers, their parents drove them home. _____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Jack,

I'm glad you're interested in tropical scenery and local culture. I'd like to introduce Yanoda Rainforest Cultural Tourism Zone to you. The name "Yanoda" means "one, two, three" in the local dialect, and it's a famous rainforest area in Hainan.

Located in Baoting Li and Miao Autonomous County, Hainan Province, Yanoda covers about 45 square kilometres. With thick vegetation, it is home to diverse plants and animals, known as a natural "gene bank". You can also enjoy hiking and fresh air here.

I really hope you can come and experience the amazing rainforest scenery here. I'm sure you'll love it.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

The staff searched the main paths with flashlights. They shouted the girls' names, hoping for a response. Meanwhile, Avery and Eva, trembling with fear, tried to stay calm and follow the path they remembered. Just as hope was fading, a flashlight beam caught their eye. "Over here!" Avery shouted with all her might. The staff rushed over and saw the two exhausted but relieved girls. They comforted the girls and led them back to the park office, where they could wait for their parents.

After saying thanks to the workers, their parents drove them home. On the way home, Avery and Eva felt a mix of emotions. They were ashamed of their carelessness and grateful for the help they received. They realised the importance of being more careful and responsible in the future. Also, they made a promise to always keep track of time and inform their families of their whereabouts when going on outdoor adventures. This experience taught them a valuable lesson about safety and the kindness of strangers.

Unit 6 Earth first

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Nature", whose topic is about environmental protection. This unit will present multi-modal texts such as advertisement, cartoon, interview and brochure. This unit starts with many environmental problems we human beings faced, then you will read an exposition "Sharks: Dangerous or Endangered?" to draw attention to the protection of ocean animals. You also read a passage on newspaper column "What's really green?" to know about misunderstanding of environmental protection. You will listen to the conversation with regard to smog in the past and present and write a persuasive letter of environmental protection. Through this unit, you are expected to know about the advanced environmental protection idea, green lifestyle and raise the awareness of environmental protection.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"人与环境"主题相关的单词和词组。
		语法	能理解分词作宾语补足语的功能及意义，并恰当使用其介绍如何应对环境问题。
		语篇	1. 阅读说明文，探究鲨鱼是危险动物还是濒危动物，增加对保护海洋动物这一话题的关注； 2. 阅读报刊专栏文章，了解生活中常见的关于环境保护的几个认知误区。
		语用	使用新学的语言点谈论人们面临的环境问题及解决措施。
	语言技能	听	听懂有关雾霾的对话，关注身边的环境问题。
		说	能组织一段对话，并正确运用"礼貌地打断别人"这一交际方法，且能根据语境的需要正确使用词汇，使口头表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 能了解倡议信的文体特点和内容要素； 2. 能分析说明文的文章结构与逻辑，深入理解课文。
		写	写一篇环保倡议信。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	1. 能使用所学语言点对“保护环境、关爱地球”这一话题展开讨论，激发英语学习的兴趣； 2. 能多渠道获取英语学习资源，巩固本单元所学语言知识，开阔眼界，提高英语运用能力； 3. 能选择恰当的策略与方法，监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。
文化意识	1. 能了解人们保护环境的做法，正确认识人类活动与自然环境的关系； 2. 形成人与自然和谐相处的共识，增强尊重自然、合理利用和开发自然资源、与自然和谐相处的意识。
思维品质	1. 能正确判断文章中作者的观点和态度，辩证地理解人类活动与自然环境的关系，科学地分析和评价不同地域人类活动的差异及原因，加强与自然和谐相处的意识； 2. 能在深入理解文本的同时联系自身实际，实现知识与思维能力的迁移。

必备知识

必背单词	scare, target, fortunately, extinction, attitude, devote, ocean, reserve, staff, establish, damage, drought, flood, affect, supply, adopt, carbon, greenhouse, brochure, reduce, release, smog, lecture, permission, slide, majority, amount, electricity, remove, urge, concerned, contribute, average, highlight, infection
重点表达	due to, refer to, in fear, cut off, have a(n)... effect on/upon, see... as, the other way round, mistake... for, break down, common sense, take... into account, be wrong about
重点知识	1. the＋比较级(＋主谓)，the＋比较级(＋主谓) 2. 倍数表达法 3. 部分否定
单元语法	现在分词和过去分词作补足语
单元写作	倡议信

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Summarise the main idea of each paragraph and analyse the structure of the text.
2. Find out the details about people's different attitudes towards sharks.
3. Figure out the author's purpose in writing.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. target *v*. 把……作为目标
2. attitude *n*. (尤指通过行为表现出的对某事的一般)看法,态度
3. scare *v*. 使(某人)惊恐,吓唬
4. extinction *n*. 灭绝,绝种
5. fortunately *adv*. 幸运地
6. due to 由于,因为
7. in fear 惊恐地,害怕地
8. be scared/frightened/afraid of 害怕……
9. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅

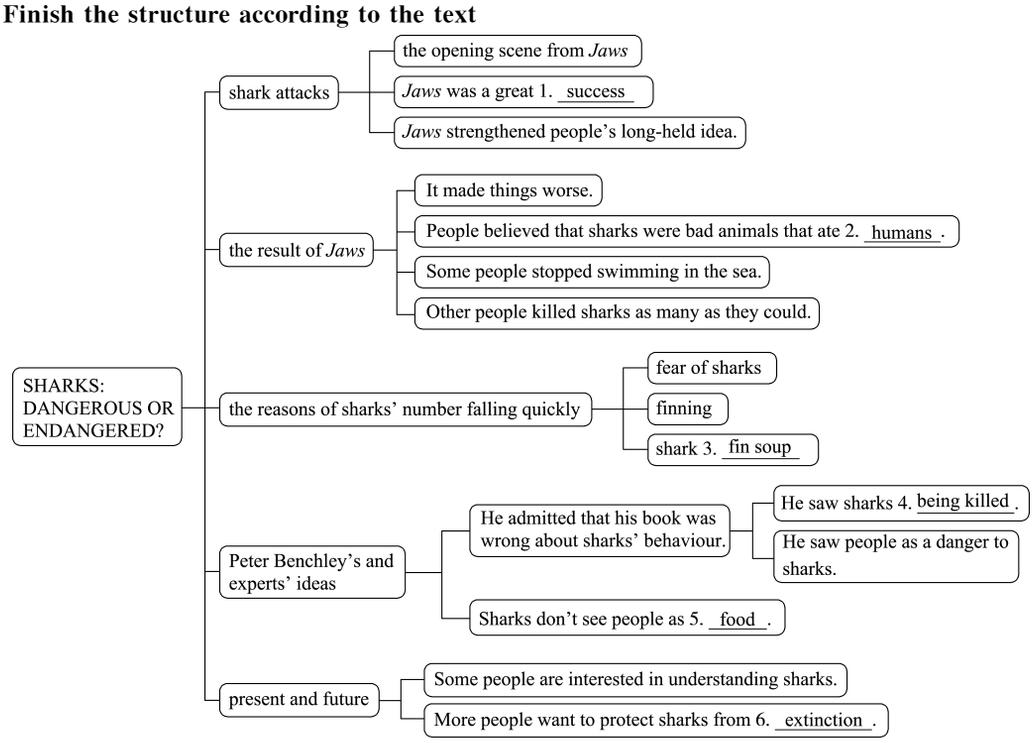
(二)阅读词汇

1. shark *n*. 鲨(鱼)
2. dive *v*. (通常指使用呼吸设备的)潜水
3. fin *v*. 切去(鱼的)鳍
   n. 鱼鳍
4. cut off 切断;中断
5. have a(n)... effect on/upon 对……有……影响
6. see... as... 把……看作……
7. the other way round 相反;正好相反

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why did some people stop swimming in the sea?
   A. Because swimming was forbidden.
   B. Because it's a dangerous behaviour.
   C. Because it's harmful to the protection of the environment.
   D. Because they were scared of being attacked by sharks.
2. Why did the number of large sharks fall quickly after 1975?
   A. Because finning killed millions of sharks.
   B. Because the water was seriously polluted.
   C. Because a lot of ocean creatures disappeared.
   D. Because sharks were thrown into other waters.
3. What's Peter Benchley's attitude now?
   A. The shark is a great danger to human beings.
   B. Sharks see people as their food.
   C. Sharks often attack people by design.
   D. It's urgent and vital to protect sharks.
4. What does the text want to tell us?
   A. Sharks are dangerous animals for human beings.
   B. It's we human beings that put sharks into dangerous situations.
   C. Films play an important role in our daily life.
   D. People haven't been aware of the importance of protecting sharks.

答案：1～4 DADB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Many people who saw the film started to believe that sharks were bad animals that ate humans.
   [句子分析]本句是一个含有三个从句的复合句。who引导定语从句，修饰先行词people；believe后that引导宾语从句；在此从句中that引导定语从句，修饰先行词animals，that在从句中作主语。
   [尝试翻译]很多看过这部电影的人开始相信鲨鱼是吃人的有害动物。
2. It was an area where fishermen were finning, and the sea floor was covered with dead sharks.
   [句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。关系副词where引导定语从句，修饰先行词area；后半句中and连接并列句。
   [尝试翻译]这是一个渔民割鱼鳍的区域，死去的鲨鱼覆盖着海底。
3. Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them.
   [句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。who引导的定语从句，修饰先行词everyone，破折号连接并列句。
   [尝试翻译]幸运的是，并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始变得有兴趣去了解它们。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What's the author's purpose of writing the text?
   To explain people's misunderstanding of sharks and raise awareness of shark protection.
2. How do you think Peter Benchley felt after diving in 1980?
   略

Unit 6 课后素养评价（二十一）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Plastic Upcycling Workshop Experience

Days in Brighton

Description

We all know that plastic rubbish is bad for our lives. Now is the moment to see waste as a raw material that can be changed into new designs to decorate your home. It's also a chance to learn about sustainable design with an informal talk and a Q & A. You are of course encouraged to bring your own plastic to recycle. The organiser operates a free collection service at the location where this workshop is based.

Artists

Weez and Merl are the artists behind this project, who want to challenge the throwaway culture, by showing the beauty of plastic. Rather than shipping huge amounts of plastic waste abroad, why not study the art of heating and shaping, and get hands on with the recycled economy?

Details

The workshop runs all day from 10 am to 4 or 5 pm.

All materials, tools and personal protective equipment will be provided. But we recommend you wear practical warm clothing and footwear that you wouldn't mind getting dirty.

The class is limited to 8 people at most. Throughout the day, tea, coffee, water, and free homemade vegetarian snacks will be offered.

Terms & Conditions

An e-voucher (电子凭证) will be delivered to your account once your order has been accepted by the seller, usually within 6—12 hours after buying. You will need to create an account at checkout if you do not have one to receive an e-voucher. Booking information for the experience will be provided on the voucher. If you wish to reschedule your booking, the seller needs at least 14 days' notice. Click here for more information.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了布莱顿的塑料回收创意工作坊,包括活动的背景、艺术家的理念、活动细节以及相关条款,旨在推广塑料回收利用与可持续设计的环保理念,吸引参与者体验并参与到塑料回收的创意实践中。

1. What will the organiser provide?

A. Professional design discussions.

B. All materials and equipment.

C. Protective clothes and footwear.

D. Free drinks and three meals.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Details** 部分中的"All materials, tools and personal protective equipment will be provided."可知,主办方会提供所有的材料和相关装备。故选 B。

2. Why do Weez and Merl make this art?

A. To show plastic can be beautiful.

B. To sell recycled plastic goods.

C. To sell plastic toys.

D. To advertise plastic materials.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Artists** 部分中的"Weez and Merl are the artists behind this project, who want to challenge the throwaway culture, by showing the beauty of plastic."可知,两位艺术家创作这项艺术是为了展现塑料也可以具有美感。故选 A。

3. How can participants be informed of their orders?

A. By asking the organiser.

B. By leaving a note at checkup.

C. By referring to the voucher.

D. By matching with a bank account.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Terms & Conditions** 部分中的"An e-voucher (电子凭证) will be delivered to your account once your order has been accepted by the seller, usually within 6—12 hours after buying. You will need to create an account at checkout if you do not have one to receive an e-voucher. Booking information for the experience will be provided on the voucher."可知,参与者可通过查阅电子凭证了解自己的订单及体验的相关预约信息。故选 C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Protecting Water Sources

By now it's clear that if we want to live on a planet with clean water, fresh air, and a diversity of plants and animals, we have to do everything we can to protect the Earth's health. __1__

__2__

It takes a lot of energy to bring water from rivers, groundwater, or whatever your local water source is into your home. Water must be pumped to a treatment plant, filtered and treated with chemicals to clean it, then pumped into your neighbourhood so you can use it home. Saving as much water as possible reduces the stress this whole process puts on natural bodies of water in the environment.

Use fewer chemicals.

Chemicals washed down the drain (排水沟) or applied directly to the grass can pollute the water supply. __3__ Figure out which chemicals you can replace with something else so you can avoid washing the poisonous things down the drain.

Never dump harmful waste materials down the drain or into the grass.

Paint, motor oil, ammonia, and other strong chemical solutions should not be dumped down the drain or into the yard, because they'll get into the groundwater. __4__ Check your local sanitation department's website to find out how to deal with the harmful waste. A specialised waste site will be of great help.

__5__ By conserving water in an everyday way, you're doing your part and setting a good example for other people. But to truly make an impact, consider taking your efforts a step further.

A. Conserve water at home.

B. Conserve electricity at home.

C. These items need to be disposed of properly.
D. This causes problems for wildlife and humans alike.
E. Join a community garden or make a plot in your backyard or on the balcony.
F. Changing your personal habits regarding water and chemical usage is a great first step.
G. Being environmentally friendly means having a lifestyle that helps the Earth more than you hurt it.

答案:1～5 GADCF

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Understand the basic structure of the text.
2. Grasp the core information through reading.
3. Use critical thinking to analyse people's different attitudes.
4. Raise the awareness of protecting animals.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you **dive**, you go under the surface of the sea or a lake. 潜水
2. If you **target** a particular group of people, you try to appeal to those people or affect them. 把……作为目标
3. Being unemployed produces negative **attitudes** to work. 态度

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
scare *v*. 使(某人)惊恐,吓唬	scary *adj*. 可怕的;恐怖的
	scared *adj*. 害怕的
extinction *n*. 灭绝,绝种	extinct *adj*. 灭绝的,绝种的
fortunately *adv*. 幸运地	fortunate *adj*. 幸运的
	unfortunately *adv*. 不幸地
	unfortunate *adj*. 不幸的,倒霉的,运气不好的;不成功的;可惜的,可叹的,令人遗憾的
	fortune *n*. 大笔的钱,巨款;运气;机遇;命运

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. in fear 惊恐地,害怕地
2. cut off 切断; 中断
3. have a(n)... effect on/upon 对……有……影响
4. due to 由于,因为
5. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅
6. be scared/frightened/afraid of 害怕……

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词短语作伴随状语
Jaws was a great success, attracting huge audiences and winning many awards.
《大白鲨》获得了巨大的成功,吸引了大批观众并赢得了许多奖项。
2. 句型公式:be scared of...
People have always been scared of sharks, but *Jaws* made things worse.
人们本就害怕鲨鱼,而电影《大白鲨》让事情变得更糟。
3. 句型公式:the number of...
After 1975, the number of large sharks around America fell quickly, and soon fell around the world.
1975年以后,在美国附近的海域里,大型鲨鱼的数量迅速下降,这一趋势很快蔓延到全球。
4. 句型公式:rather than
He came to see people as a danger to sharks, rather than the other way round.
他意识到人类才是鲨鱼的威胁,而不是相反的情况。
5. 句型公式:部分否定
Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them.
幸运的是,并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始变得有兴趣去了解它们。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. scare *v*. 使(某人)惊恐,吓唬 *n*. 惊恐,恐慌

[教材原文]People have always been **scared** of sharks, but *Jaws* made things worse.

人们本就害怕鲨鱼,而电影《大白鲨》让事情变得更糟。

[归纳拓展]

(1)scare sb. into doing sth. 威胁/恐吓某人做某事

scare... away/off 把……吓跑

(2)scared *adj*. 害怕的

be scared of (doing) sth. 害怕(做)某事

be scared to do sth. 不敢做某事

be scared to death 吓得要死

be scared (that)... 恐惧;害怕……

(3)scary *adj*. 可怕的;恐怖的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2023·新课标Ⅱ卷)Though some are initially scared of the insects and turned off by the dirt, most are eager to try something new.

②Seeing the angry mother, the boy was scared to tell (tell) the truth.

③(2025·全国二卷)If you're scared (scare) about something and thinking only about that, there's no way you're going to be able to learn.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之心理描写)当我意识到那头熊回来攻击我们的时候,我**几乎要吓死了**。

When I realised that the bear was coming back to attack us, I was nearly scared to death.

②(读后续写之场景描写)没有好心的保罗帮忙,马克绝不可能赤手空拳**把狼吓跑**。

Mac could by no means scare the wolf off/away with bare hands without the help of kind-hearted Paul.

2. fortunately *adv*. 幸运地

[教材原文]**Fortunately**, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them.

幸运的是,并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始变得有兴趣去了解它们。

[归纳拓展]

(1)fortune *n*. 大笔的钱,巨款;运气;机遇;命运

have good/bad fortune 运气好/不好

make a fortune 发财

try one's fortune 碰运气

tell one's fortune 给人算命

(2)fortunate *adj*. 幸运的

be fortunate to do sth. 做某事是幸运的

(3)unfortunately *adv*. 不幸地

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①The young man is determined never to come back before he can make a big fortune.

②(2025·全国一卷)Fortunately (fortune), analyses suggest that renewables are up to the task.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)我**有幸得到一次**沿丝绸之路旅行的**宝贵机会**。

①I am fortunate to get a precious opportunity to travel along the Silk Road.(fortunate)

②I have the good fortune to get a precious opportunity to travel along the Silk Road.(fortune)

3. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅

[教材原文]What environmental problem does each cartoon **refer to**?

每幅漫画都提到了什么样的环境问题?

[归纳拓展]

(1)refer *v*. 参考,查阅;涉及;提到

refer to... as... 把……称为……

refer sth. to sb. 把某物提交给某人

(2)reference *n*. 参考;涉及

for reference 以供参考

名师点拨

refer to/look up 都可以用来表示"查阅"之意,但其宾语有所不同:refer to+a book/dictionary;look up sth. in a book/dictionary。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·浙江1月卷)Referred to as matrix planting, this approach aims for nature to do a lot more of the heavy lifting in the garden, and even some of the designing.

②Apart from the textbooks, I often refer to other reference (refer) materials to assist my studies.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)如果你遇到了不认识的字，你可以**查字典**或者向他人求助。

If you meet with the characters you don't know, you can refer to a dictionary or turn to others for help.

4. cut off 切断；中断

[**教材原文**]Finning is a type of fishing where sharks are caught and their fins **cut off**.

割鳍是一种渔猎活动，人们捕到鲨鱼后将鱼鳍割下。

[**归纳拓展**]

cut down 砍倒；削减，缩减

cut in 插嘴

cut up 切碎

cut across 走捷径，走近路

cut out (机器)突然熄火；删去；切去；停止

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①Cut up the carrots before you put them into the pot.

②She kept cutting in on our conversation, which made us very angry.

③I usually encounter her when I cut across the park on my way home.

④The town was cut off from the rest of the world due to heavy snow.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之环境保护)因为我们在附近的地区**砍伐了太多树木**，现在许多鸟类在城市里寻找栖息之地。

Because we cut down too many trees in the nearby areas, many birds now find places within the city to live.

多义词汇 专练

1. refer to A. 参考 B. 查阅 C. 指的是 D. 提到，谈到

①If you don't know the exact meaning of the word, you may **refer to** the dictionary. B

②Your notes are excellent materials to **refer to** when you are studying for a test. A

③We have reached an agreement that we will not **refer to** the matter again. D

④I was not **referring to** her when I said so. C

2. Think about who will use your products, then **target** them with keywords. C

A. *v*. 把……作为攻击目标

B. *n*. 目标；指标

C. *v*. 把……对准(某群体)

Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十二)

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. It is reported that over 1,000 sharks were finned (fin) last year.

2. It was her first time to write a story which proved a great success.

3. What is your attitude towards/to senior high students taking up a part-time job?

4. She lost her watch, but fortunately (fortunate) her mother found it on her way to school.

5. The change in climate might be one of the causes for the extinction (extinct) of dinosaurs.

6. Hearing the bad news, they stood there in fear and trembling, not knowing how to do it.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

due to; have an effect on; be scared of; cut off; see... as; refer to; in fear; rather than

1. What attracted him is her personality rather than her beauty.

2. Even though I am scared of talking with strangers, I will sign up for the charity party.

3. It is reported that landslides (滑坡) have cut off many villages in remote areas.

4. Obviously, some animals are dying out due to some human activities.

5. The statistic figures in the report are not accurate. You should not refer to them.

6. A change in diet today could take several months to have an effect on your hair.

7. Many students now see university as a stepping stone to a good job.

8. Seeing the snake winding on the path, the girl ran away in fear.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 沉浸于绘画中，约翰没有注意到黄昏来临。（感官动词＋宾语＋宾语补足语）
   Absorbed in painting, John didn't notice evening coming on.
2. 听到这个消息，他们都高兴得跳了起来。（现在分词作状语）
   Hearing the news, they all jumped with joy.
3. 学生的人数依然不清楚。（the number of...）
   There is still confusion about the number of students.
4. 骑自行车不仅可以帮助我们强身健体，而且还可以减少空气污染。（not only... but also...）
   Cycling can not only build up our bodies but also reduce air pollution.
5. 并非所有人都已意识到全球变暖的严重后果。（部分否定）
   Not everyone has been aware of the serious consequence of global warming.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

Dogs are not allowed off-leash（不拴绳）in the Nature Reserve in Lewes, England. So dog owners were __1__ when they were told their dogs could run free in the reserve, as long as the pups would wear backpacks filled with __2__.

The Nature Reserve was so popular that many of its native wildflowers and grasses had __3__ after many years of use. People __4__ they wouldn't see any plants coming up. Railway Land Wildlife Trust decided that using dogs would be a __5__ way to help reseed the ground. As dogs __6__, the seeds would drop from the backpacks, which had small holes in them, in areas that humans couldn't easily __7__ on the 25-acre reserve.

Barbara Haydon was among the dog owners who came to help with the __8__. She put backpacks __9__ by the reserve on her three golden retrievers（金毛犬）and set them free to run around the area while __10__ seeds. "It was a good __11__ for my energetic dogs. I was glad to see them doing something __12__ for the environment, just by being themselves," Haydon said. "They __13__ it greatly, and so did I!"

Five months later, people are beginning to see the dogs' efforts pay off. Small green __14__ are appearing all over the forest floor. "It was brilliant to __15__ our local dog walkers in the project," said Helen Meade, CEO of the Wildlife Trust, "and we hope to keep it going for a couple of years."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了英国刘易斯自然保护区为解决本土野生花卉和草本植物消失的问题，邀请狗主人让狗狗背着装有种子的背包在保护区内活动，帮助重新播种的创意环保故事，体现了人与自然的和谐共处与巧妙的生态修复方式。

1. A. worried　　B. amazed
   C. ashamed　　D. disappointed
   B　上文提到"Dogs are not allowed off-leash（不拴绳）"，下文却说"their dogs could run free"，前后对比暗示狗主人的反应是"惊讶的"。故选B。
2. A. food　　B. water
   C. toys　　D. seeds
   D　下文第二段明确提到"help reseed the ground"，且背包有"small holes"让种子掉落，因此背包里装的是"种子"。故选D。
3. A. damaged　　B. returned
   C. grown　　D. disappeared
   D　上文"so popular that..."暗示野生植物遭到破坏，后句"wouldn't see any plants coming up"进一步说明植物"消失"。故选D。
4. A. admitted　　B. explained
   C. feared　　D. viewed
   C　"wouldn't see any plants coming up"是人们对未来的负面预测，属于"担忧"。故选C。
5. A. final　　B. real
   C. simple　　D. traditional
   C　让狗背着种子奔跑播种，操作简单直接，无需复杂技术，因此是"简单的"方法。故选C。
6. A. turned around　　B. raced around
   C. showed up　　D. lined up
   B　上文"run free"的状态对应"快速跑动"，且种子通过跑动掉落。故选B。
7. A. reach　　B. notice
   C. recognise　　D. count
   A　人类难以"到达"某些区域，而狗可以自由进入，因此种子被播撒在人类"难以触及"的地方。故选A。
8. A. offer　　B. game
   C. effort　　D. problem
   C　最后一段提到"dogs' efforts pay off"，因此狗主人参与的是这一"努力"。故选C。
9. A. produced　　B. supplied
   C. preserved　　D. deserted

B 背包是保护区为项目“提供”的工具，而非狗主人自带或捐赠。故选B。

10. A. saving　　B. collecting
C. removing　　D. spreading
D 种子从背包小孔掉落，目的是“传播”种子以播种。故选D。

11. A. fit　　B. treat
C. training　　D. lesson
B “energetic dogs”通过奔跑获得乐趣，这对狗来说是一种“享受”或“款待”。故选B。

12. A. familiar　　B. useful
C. convenient　　D. attractive
B 狗传播种子，帮助保护区恢复植被，这对环境是“有用的”。故选B。

13. A. trusted　　B. missed
C. enjoyed　　D. investigated
C 上文“doing something 12 ... just by being themselves”暗示狗“享受”这个过程，且狗主人也一样。故选C。

14. A. shoots　　B. roots
C. fruits　　D. flowers
A 根据上文的“Five months later”可知，种子播种五个月后长出的是“幼苗”，而非成熟的花或果实。故选A。

15. A. persuade　　B. employ
C. recommend　　D. involve
D 项目邀请狗主人参与，因此是让当地遛狗者“参与”到项目中。故选D。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Master basic knowledge of this lesson and use it freely.
2. Learn to use *-ing* and *-ed* as complement correctly.
3. Find the ways to deal with global warming and learn to interrupt others politely.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. As is known to all, smoking can seriously **damage** your health. 损害
2. People were concerned that wildlife could be **affected** by the pesticides (杀虫剂). 影响
3. This is a two-year course taught by means of **lectures** and seminars (研讨会). 讲座，讲课
4. The **staff** of an organisation are the people who work for it. 员工
5. The goal is to reduce the amount of pollution **released** into the atmosphere. 释放
6. More than 70 people were killed in the **floods**. 洪水，水灾
7. Due to the earthquake, the water **supply** is unsafe, making people's life more difficult. 供应(系统)
8. The soil is cracking up (龟裂) because of the **drought**. 干旱，旱灾
9. If not treated, the illness can become **severe**. 很严重的
10. A **brochure** is a magazine or thin book with pictures that gives you information about a product or service. 小册子

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
devote *v*. 致力，献身，倾注	devoted *adj*. 忠实的；深爱的
	devotion *n*. 深爱，热爱；奉献
cruelty *n*. 残忍，残酷，残暴	cruel *adj*. 残酷的，残暴的
presentation *n*. 报告，(观点的)陈述，说明	present *v*. 呈现；授予；提出；提交
establish *v*. 建立，设立	established *adj*. 已确立的；确定的
	establishment *n*. 建立；确立
adopt *v*. 采取(某种方法)	adopted *adj*. 收养的，领养的
	adoption *n*. 采用，采纳；收养，领养

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
reduce *v*. 减少,降低	reduction *n*. 减少,降低
infection *n*. 感染,传染病	infect *v*. 传染,使感染
	infected *adj*. 受感染的
permission *n*. 允许,许可	permit *v*. 允许,许可 *n*. 许可证;特许证
reserve *n*.(野生生物)保护区	reservation *n*.(美)(野生动物)保护区;预订;保留(意见)

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. be devoted to 致力于……

2. have a(n)... impact on/upon 对……有……的影响

3. keep... from ... 阻止……遭到……

4. get sb. involved in ... 使某人参与……

5. replace... with ... 用……取代……

6. aim at 旨在;瞄准

7. instead of 代替,而不是

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:过去分词短语作后置定语

We've also seen droughts and floods caused by these changes, which affect the water supply downstream.

我们也看到了这些变化引发了干旱和水灾,影响了下游的供水。

2. 句型公式:include doing sth.

This includes keeping the original environment from being touched, as well as adopting new, sustainable ways of feeding farm animals.

这包括阻止原始环境遭受破坏,以及采用新的、可持续的方式喂养农场动物。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. devote *v*. 致力,献身,倾注

[**教材原文**]Now, she is a model and performance artist **devoted** to ocean conservation.

现在,她是一名模特和行为艺术家,致力于海洋保护。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)devote one's life/time/energies to (doing) sth. 把某人的一生/时间/精力用在/献给(做)某事上

devote oneself to 致力于,献身于;专心于

(2)devoted *adj*. 忠实的;深爱的

be devoted to (doing) sth. 献身于/专心致志于(做)某事

(3)devotion *n*. 深爱,热爱;奉献

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①These doctors are determined to devote their energies to finding (find) a new cure for the lung cancer.

②My mother, a high school teacher, has won a number of teaching awards for her devotion (devote) to her work.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)我最钦佩的人是我的邻居,他**致力于帮助他人**。

①The person I admire most is my neighbour who devotes himself to giving others a helping hand. (devote)

②My neighbour is so devoted to giving others a helping hand that I admire him most.(devoted)

③Devoted to giving others a helping hand, my neighbour is the person I admire most.(分词作状语)

2. supply *n*.(煤气、电力、自来水等)供应(系统);供应量;补给 *v*. 供给,供应

[**教材原文**]We've also seen droughts and floods caused by these changes, which affect the water **supply** downstream.

我们也看到了这些变化引发了干旱和水灾,影响了下游的供水。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)water/food/blood supply 水/食物/血液供应

power supply 电源

a supply of 供应……

in short supply 供应不足

(2)supply sth. to sb. (=supply sb. with sth.) 给某人提供某物

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①What will happen when food and petrol supplies (supply) run low?

②The fresh vegetables are in short supply on the mountaintop, which has a negative influence on their life.

③Don't forget that camels need a large supply of plants grown in the desert to eat.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)这次采摘活动**为我们提供了一个**能更进一步理解农民艰辛的**机会**。

This picking activity supplied a chance to us/us with a chance to further understand the hardship of the farmers.

3. reduce *v*. 减少，降低；缩小

［教材原文］**Reduce** waste by choosing reusable products—get a reusable water bottle, for example.

通过选择可重复使用的产品以减少废弃物——比如，购买一个可重复使用的水瓶。

［归纳拓展］

(1)reduce (...) to... 把……减少到……

reduce (...) by... 把……减少了……

reduce sth. to ruins 把某物夷为废墟

(2)reduction *n*. 减少，降低

make a reduction 减少

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①With great effort, she has reduced her weight by five kilograms in the past 7 days.

②(2023·新课标Ⅰ卷) Somehow, these arguments and reasoning resulted in a global reduction (reduce) in error.

③(2025·浙江1月卷) With human inputs dramatically reduced (reduce), the garden's ecology can develop well.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信)我写信邀请你加入我们学校的乒乓球队，因为打乒乓球不仅能**缓解压力**，还能保持身体健康。

I am writing to invite you to join the table tennis team in our school because playing table tennis can not only reduce pressure, but also keep physically healthy.

4. permission *n*. 允许，许可

［教材原文］A polite interruption is usually framed as a request for **permission** to interrupt someone, often starting with *If*... , *May I*... ? or *Can I*... ? 礼貌的打断通常被理解为请求允许打断某人，通常以If...，May I...? 或 Can I...? 开头。

［归纳拓展］

(1)ask for permission 请求许可

give sb. permission to do sth. 允许某人做某事

without permission 未经许可

with sb.'s permission 经某人同意

(2)permit *v*. 允许，许可 *n*. 许可证；特许证

permit doing sth. 允许做某事

permit sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①To protect the wild animals, people are not permitted to gain (gain) access to natural reserves.

②The library does not permit talking (talk) loudly.

③(2025·全国二卷) Permission (permit) of parents and activity fees are required to participate in all field trips.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之通知)**如果天气允许**，比赛将于下午2点在我校体育馆举行，持续约3小时。

Weather permitting/If weather permits, the competition to be held in our school stadium will begin at 2 pm and last for roughly 3 hours.

②(2025·浙江1月卷应用文写作之演讲稿)**未经允许**拍摄他人可能会造成不适或引发冲突。

Capturing someone without their permission can lead to discomfort or conflict.

5. the＋比较级(＋主谓)，the＋比较级(＋主谓)

［教材原文］**The less** energy you use, **the less** carbon dioxide is released.

你消耗的能量越少，释放的二氧化碳就越少。

［归纳拓展］

(1)“the＋比较级...，the＋比较级...”意为“越……，就越……”，第一个“the＋比较级”是表示条件的状语从句(在表示将来意义时，从句用一般现在时表示将来)；第二个“the＋比较级”是主句。

(2)“比较级＋and＋比较级”表示“越来越……”。

(3)“the＋比较级＋of (the)＋名词/代词”，表示“(两者中)较……的”。

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①As far as I'm concerned, the more you practise drawing, the better (good) at it you will become.

②The more objective a negative report is, the more likely (likely) it was to take the reader in.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)你练习得**越多**，你说中文**就越流利**。

The more you practise, the more fluently you will speak Chinese.

②(读后续写之心理描写)走在那条泥土路上的时候，**天越黑我越害怕**。

While I was walking on the dirt path, the darker it was, the more frightened I was.

多义词汇 专练

1. His mother, grandmother and great grandmother were all born at the **reserve** and still live there. B

A. *n*. 预约　　B. *n*. 保护区

C. *n*. 保留

2. But when he finally reached her, the woman **flooded** him with questions: “Who are you? What antique shop?” C

A. *v*. 大量涌入　　B. *v*. 泛滥

C. *v*. (使)充满

语法研习课

现在分词和过去分词作补足语

语法感知

①It made people **frightened** of sharks, ...

②I wanted two tickets **reserved.**

③We see a woman **swimming** at night in a dark sea.

1. 句①②中黑体部分是过去分词作补足语,与宾语之间是被动关系。
2. 句③中黑体部分是现在分词作补足语,与宾语之间是主动关系。

语法精讲

一、现在分词作宾语补足语

现在分词作宾语补足语时,往往表示正在进行的动作或经常存在的状态,与宾语之间构成主动关系。

1. 现在分词常作以下动词(短语)的宾语补足语。

(1)表示感觉和心理状态的感官动词(短语),如see, hear, feel, smell, find, notice, observe, look at, listen to 等。

I **felt** somebody **standing** behind me.

我感觉有人站在我后面。

I **saw** the little boy **crying** there.

我看到那个小男孩在那里哭。

(2)表示使动意义的动词,如 have, keep, get, leave 等。

We **kept** the fire **burning** all night long.

我们让火整夜燃烧着。

I won't **have** you **running** about in the room.

我不允许你在房间里跑来跑去。

名师点拨

使役动词后接现在分词作宾语补足语,表示"让……一直做某事";当 have/keep/leave 接不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语时,表示"让某人做某事";当 have/keep/leave 后接过去分词作宾语补足语时,表示"使……被完成或遭遇某事"。

Be careful, or you'll **have** your hands **hurt.**

小心一些,否则你会弄伤手的。

2. 用于 with 复合结构中,其中现在分词与前面的名词或代词之间构成主动关系。

I couldn't do my homework **with the noise going on.**

由于噪声不断,我没法做家庭作业。

With so many people looking at her, she felt nervous.

这么多人看着她,她感到紧张。

名师点拨

在 with 复合结构(with+名词/代词+非谓语动词)中,当非谓语动词与前面的名词或代词表示被动关系时,用过去分词;表示主动关系时,用现在分词;表示目的或将来时,用动词不定式。

二、过去分词作宾语补足语

1. 过去分词作宾语补足语时,往往是说明宾语的状态或性质,宾语和过去分词之间是逻辑上的被动关系。

I saw his eyes **fixed** on me with curiosity.

我看见他的眼睛盯着我,充满了好奇。

We want the work **finished** by Saturday.

我们想要这项工作在周六前完成。

We found the house **deserted.**

我们发现这所房子被废弃了。

With the homework **finished**, Tom went out to play with his friends.

家庭作业完成了,汤姆和他的朋友们出去玩了。

2. 能接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词

(1)表示"感觉"或"心理状态"的动词,如 see, hear, feel, watch, notice, think, consider, find 等;

(2)表示"致使"或"保持某状态"意义的动词,如 make, get, have, keep, leave 等;

(3)表示"希望、要求、命令"意义的动词,如 want, wish, like, expect, order 等。

We **saw** the thief **caught** by the police.

我们看见小偷被警察抓住了。

Don't **leave** such an important thing **undone.**

不要留下这么重要的事不完成。

He **had** his hat **blown** away on his way home.

在回家的路上他的帽子被吹掉了。

I **want** the house **whitewashed** before we move in.

我想要房子在我们搬进去之前被粉刷完。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. You will have two minutes to have the answers transferred (transfer) onto the answer sheet.
2. When we saw the road blocked (block) with

snow, we decided to spend the holiday at home.

3. Back from his two-year medical service in Africa, Dr Lee was very happy to see his mother taken (take) good care of at home.

4. (2025 · 全国一卷) More than once, I found myself wondering (wonder) just how my students, who'd created these people, knew their subjects so well.

5. Jenny hopes that Mr Smith will suggest a good way to have her written English improved (improve) in a short period.

6. In order to make the room warm, the old lady had the fire burning (burn) all night.

7. With the exam approaching (approach), it is a good idea to review your class notes.

8. With the development of technology, we can use computers to keep the traffic running (run) smoothly.

9. She looked around and caught a man putting (put) his hand into the pocket of a passenger.

10. I'm afraid I can't make myself understood (understand) due to my poor English.

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. The guests left most of the dishes untouched, because they didn't taste delicious.
大部分的菜客人们动都没动,因为它们不可口。

2. Finding her car stolen, she hurried to ask a policeman for help.
发现她的车被偷了,她赶紧找警察帮忙。

3. We hurriedly ended our meeting, leaving many problems to be settled.
我们匆匆忙忙地结束了会议,留下了很多问题待解决。

4. Unfortunately, she found her ring gone on her way home.
不幸的是,在回家的路上,她发现她的戒指不见了。

5. My mother never allows me to play computer games with my homework unfinished.
我妈妈从来不允许我在作业还没完成的情况下玩电脑游戏。

Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十三)

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 词语填空

establish; severe; damage; lecture; affect; adopt; staff; reduce; devote oneself to; flood; release... from...

1. It's said that this disease affects millions of people in the world every year.

2. In order to reduce pollution, we human beings have no choice but to choose some clean resources.

3. According to the report, the new technology has been more widely adopted.

4. The musician devoted himself to music and won a great success in his career.

5. We have established trade ties with these regions.

6. It's reported that up to one hundred tons of chemicals a year are released from the factory.

7. Drinking and smoking can damage your health.

8. A severe earthquake that happened last night turned the small village down to ground.

9. The book is an expansion of a series of lectures given last year.

10. The town located in the west of the city was destroyed by the floods after the storm.

11. Ten staff members of this company are looking into the matter.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. The nation's fuel supplies (supply) will not last forever.

2. Only if a teacher has given permission (permit) is a student allowed to enter the lab.

3. It was the most extreme example of cruelty (cruel) to animals I had ever seen.

4. If the drought (dry) continues, there's going to be a famine (饥荒).

5. In the last section of the presentation (present), what problems are we focusing on?

6. The earlier (early) you start, the sooner you'll be back.

7. He was so nervous that he could hear his heart beating (beat) wildly.

8. Don't leave the water running (run) all the time while you brush your teeth.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. Wherever we go, we will see this kind of products advertised.
   无论我们到哪里，都会看到这种产品在做广告。
2. I need a new passport, so I will have to have my photograph taken.
   我需要一本新护照，所以我得去拍张照片。
3. If you want to make yourself respected, you are above all to respect yourself.
   如果你想让自己被尊重，你必须首先尊重自己。
4. The Internet keeps us informed of the latest news and also provides entertainment in the house.
   网络使我们了解最新的新闻，而且也在家里为我们提供娱乐(活动)。

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

In the late afternoon, a drone (无人机) lifted gently into the sky. On its screen, elephants moved into sight, while a train could be seen far away travelling along the China-Laos Railway. It was another work day to watch the large species (物种) for Peng Jinfu, a wild elephant monitor (监督员) in Xishuangbanna Dai Autonomous Prefecture.

Wild Asian elephants are a flagship species in China's rainforests. They receive top-level national monitoring and protection and are recognised as "endangered" by the International Union for Conservation of Nature. Thanks to strengthened protection efforts, their population in Yunnan—their primary living areas in China—has grown from 140 in 1976 to over 300 today.

Elephant monitors play a key role in improving the relationship between humans and wildlife. "They track elephant movements, not only warning villagers of likely danger areas but also providing valuable information for scientific research," explained Zhou Chenhao, director of the Xishuangbanna Asian Elephant Protection and Management Centre.

Peng spends his days tracking elephant activities, mapping safe travel areas for people, and creating warning videos shared on the Internet. "I used to track them on foot, but thick forests often prevented me from seeing elephants," he recalled. "Now, drones allow me to watch many groups at the same time."

Xishuangbanna has put many smart monitoring tools into use. Thanks to them, since 2022, over 35,000 warnings have been sent across the area, preventing more than 700 possible human-elephant conflicts. These technologies help scientific research too. X-ray cameras help us to study elephants' movement areas and behaviour, while drones provide information on moving paths. Protection efforts have developed from saving single animals to protecting the whole ecosystems, with cross-country protected areas between China and Laos enlarging habitat spaces.

As researcher Chen Fei noted, "We've turned from saving elephants to protecting more species in the future." This mixture of technology and environmental wisdom is creating a new stage of co-living between humans and wildlife.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲述了无人机等科技手段如何助力亚洲象的保护工作，以及这些努力对人类与野生动物共存关系的积极影响。

1. What does the underlined part "a flagship species" in Paragraph 2 probably refer to?
   A. A species of the largest size.
   B. A species only found in China.
   C. A species most monitored and protected.
   D. A species used for scientific experiments.
   C 词义猜测题。根据画线短语下文的"They receive top-level national monitoring and protection and are recognised as 'endangered' by the International Union for Conservation of Nature."可知，野生亚洲象受到国家最高级别的监测和保护。由此推知，它们是"重点监测和保护的物种"。"a flagship species"与C项"A species most monitored and protected."意思一致。故选C。
2. What is a role of elephant monitors?
   A. Designing smart monitoring tools.
   B. Telling people the possible danger.
   C. Training elephants for performances.
   D. Carrying out scientific research alone.
   B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"They track elephant movements, not only warning villagers of likely danger areas but also providing valuable information for scientific research"可知，大象监测员的一个职责是告知人们可能的危险。故选B。
3. What can be inferred about the future of wildlife protection?
   A. Drones will be the only tool used.
   B. Human-elephant conflicts will increase.
   C. Protection efforts will focus on more species.
   D. Traditional methods will remain the most effective.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“We've turned from saving elephants to protecting more species in the future.”可推知，未来的野生动物保护工作将关注更多物种。故选C。

4. What is the text mainly about?

A. How humans relate to animals.

B. The daily work of elephant monitors.

C. The history of elephant protection in China.

D. How technologies help protect Asian elephants.

D 主旨大意题。通读全文，尤其是第一段的内容和倒数第二段中的“Xishuangbanna has put many smart monitoring tools into use. Thanks to them, since 2022, over 35,000 warnings have been sent across the area, preventing more than 700 possible human-elephant conflicts. These technologies help scientific research too.”可知，文章主要讲述了科技手段，如无人机和智能监测工具，在保护亚洲象方面的应用和作用。故选D。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Find out if the four “green truths” are true or false.

2. Figure out the details about the “green truths”.

3. Think and share what you can do to become “greener”.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **majority** of people interviewed prefer watching TV to listening to the radio. 多数，大多数

2. The **amount** of something is how much there is, or how much you have, need, or get. 数量，数额

3. A **device** is an object that has been invented for a particular purpose. 设备，仪器，装置

4. It's thought a gas **leak** may have caused the explosion. 泄漏

5. The company launched (发起) an advertising **campaign** to improve its image. (宣传)活动

6. The **average** age of the boys in this class is fifteen. 平均(数)的

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
urge *v.* 竭力主张，强烈要求，敦促	urgent *adj.* 紧急的，急迫的
	urgency *n.* 紧急，迫切；紧急的事
remove *v.* 移走，搬走，去掉	removal *n.* 移动；去除；搬迁
contribute *v.* 促成，造成(某事发生)	contribution *n.* 贡献；捐献；稿件
majority *n.* 多数，大多数(人或物)	major *adj.* 主要的 *v.* 主修，专攻
electricity *n.* 电	electric *adj.* 用电的；电动的
concerned *adj.* 焦急的，担忧的	concern *n.* 忧虑，担心 *v.* 使忧虑，使担心
	concerning *prep.* 就……而言，关于；涉及

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. mistake... for ... 把……误看作……

2. break down 分解；发生故障；失败；破裂；垮掉；打破；情绪失控

3. take... into account 把……考虑进去

4. depend on 取决于；依靠；依赖

5. in fact 事实上；实际上

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：which引导非限制性定语从句

Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to wild animals, which mistake them for food.

塑料袋会变成垃圾，对野生动物很危险，因为它们会把塑料袋误认为食物。

2. 句型公式：动词-ing 形式作主语

However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water.

然而，生产纸袋的能耗为塑料袋的四倍，耗水则多达三倍。

3. 句型公式：不定式作目的状语

To make sure your appliance is in fact off, remove the plug from its power supply.

为了确保电器设备彻底关闭，请把插头从电源上拔下来。

4. 句型公式：强调句型

It is the production of food, not its transport, that uses most of the energy and produces most of the greenhouse gases.

消耗大部分能源和产生大部分温室气体的是食品的生产，而不是食品的运输。

5. 句型公式：it 作形式主语

It's not always better to take a shower than a bath.

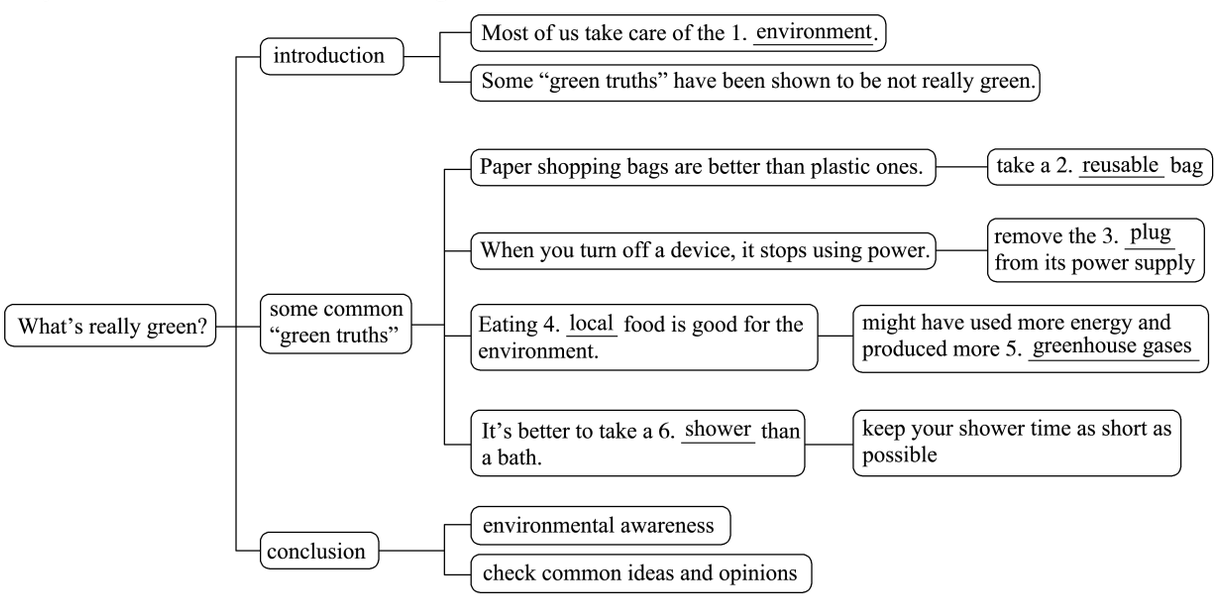
淋浴并不总是比泡澡好。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Which of the following are environmentally friendly?

A. Paper bags.

B. Plastic bags.

C. Reusable bags.

D. Unrecycled bags.

2. What can we know from the text?

A. Paper bags are a great danger to wild animals.

B. Paper bags are better choices than plastic bags.

C. Making plastic bags uses much more energy than making paper bags.

D. Making paper bags uses much more water than making plastic bags.

3. How can we really save power?

A. By turning off a device.

B. By making the device into stand-by mode.

C. By removing the plug from its power supply.

D. By using a device all the time.

4. What's the author's purpose in writing the text?

A. To tell readers the importance of saving energy.

B. To inform readers how to keep the balance of nature.

C. To explain to readers what"the real green" is.

D. To show readers how to choose proper devices.

答案：1～4 CDCC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Most of us are aware that we must take care of the environment, and the majority of us take steps to save energy and reduce waste and pollution.
[句子分析]本句是一个由 and 连接的并列复合句。that 引导的是宾语从句，to save... and reduce... 是两个并列的目的状语。
[尝试翻译]我们大多数人都意识到了我们必须关心环境，而且我们大多数人也采取了措施节约能源，减少浪费和污染。

2. Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to wild animals, which mistake them for food.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。主句中 and 连接并列谓语，逗号后面的 which 引导非限制性定语从句。
[尝试翻译]塑料袋会变成垃圾，对野生动物来说很危险，因为它们会把塑料袋误认为食物。

3. It is the production of food, not its transport, that uses most of the energy and produces most of the greenhouse gases.
[句子分析]本句是一个强调句，强调的是主语 the production of food。
[尝试翻译]消耗大部分能源和产生大部分温室气体的是食品的生产，而不是食品的运输。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What's the main idea of the text?
What's really green in our daily life.

2. Could you share your "green" actions with the class?
略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. majority *n*. 多数，大多数(人或物)

[教材原文]Most of us are aware that we must take care of the environment, and the **majority of** us take steps to save energy and reduce waste and pollution.
我们大多数人都意识到了我们必须关心环境，而且我们大多数人也采取了措施节约能源，减少浪费和污染。

[归纳拓展]
(1)in a/the majority 占大多数
a/the majority of 大多数，大部分(作主语时，谓语动词的单复数取决于 of 后的名词)
(2)major *adj*. 主要的 *v*. 主修，专攻
major in 主修……
(3)minor *adj*. 少数的，较小的；次要的
(4)minority *n*. 少数，少数人

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①(2025·全国一卷) Although these campaigns were widespread, the reality is that the majority of the western cities were (be) completely redesigned around the needs of the motor car.
② As a graduate majoring in the English language, I feel excited to apply for the position.
③I believe that students supporting me are in the majority.
(2)写作微练
(应用文写作之活动报道)有些人中途放弃了，但是**大部分参赛者**都成功跑到了终点。
Some people gave up halfway, but the majority of the participants made it to the finishing line.

2. amount *n*. 数量，数额；金额 *v*. 总计，共达；等于，相当于

[教材原文]However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the **amount** of water.
然而，生产纸袋的能耗为塑料袋的四倍，耗水则多达三倍。

[归纳拓展]
(1)an amount of 许多……(通常修饰不可数名词，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式)
a large/small amount of 大/少量的……(通常修饰不可数名词，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式)
large/small amounts of 大/少量的……(通常修饰不可数名词，作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式)
(2)amount to 达到；等于

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①(2025·全国一卷)This energy transition(变革) is global, and the amount of renewable energy the world will need is (be) "a little bit mind-blowing".
②As far as I know, large amounts of money have been spent (spend) on the construction of the school by now.
③ Keeping what belongs to another person amounts to stealing.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿)每天**都会产生大量垃圾**,这对环境有害。

A large amount of waste is produced every day, which is harmful to the environment.

3. concerned *adj*. 焦急的,担忧的;关心的;相关的,有关的

[**教材原文**]We are **concerned** that...

我们担心……

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)be concerned about/for 担心……

be concerned that... 担心……

be concerned with 与……有关;涉及

as far as sb. be concerned 就某人而言

(2)concern *n*. 忧虑,担心 *v*. 使忧虑,使担心

show/express concern about/for 对……表示关心/担心

concern oneself about/with sb./sth. 关心某人/某事;担心某人/某事

(3)concerning *prep*. 就……而言,关于;涉及

名师点拨

concerned 用作形容词时,意为"焦急的,担忧的;关心的",作前置定语;表示"相关的,有关的",作后置定语。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·浙江1月卷)What is Christina's suggestion concerning (concern) the birds?

②(2026·浙江1月卷)People are increasingly concerned about online security.

③He was concerned (concern) with the murder.

④There's no need to concern yourself with/about this matter.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之慰问信)听说您生病了,我们很**担心**您。

Hearing that you have been ill, we are concerned about/for you.

②**在我看来**,阅读是丰富知识、开阔眼界的好方法。

As far as I am concerned, reading is a good way to enrich knowledge and broaden horizons.

4. contribute *v*. 促成,造成(某事发生);捐献,捐助;投稿

[**教材原文**]Look at the three items that **contribute** to a carbon footprint.

看看造成碳足迹的三类物品。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)contribute to 促成,导致

contribute... to... 向……捐献;向……投稿

(2)contribution *n*. 贡献;捐献;稿件

make a contribution/contributions to 对……做出贡献;向……捐款

(3)contributor *n*. 捐款人;撰稿人;起作用的因素

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① Our teacher has contributed a number of articles to the magazine.

②Loneliness is a serious social problem that can contribute to depression.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之倡议信)我相信,只要我们每个人都**对海洋保护做出贡献**,海洋就会更加干净美丽。

I'm confident that as long as each of us makes a contribution to the ocean protection, the ocean will be cleaner and more beautiful.

②(读后续写之主旨升华)我坚信诚实的重要性,这将**有助于建设一个温暖和谐的社会**。

I'm firmly convinced of the significance of honesty, which will contribute to building a warm and harmonious society.

5. break down 分解;发生故障;失败;破裂;垮掉;打破;情绪失控

[**教材原文**]It takes hundreds of years for plastic to **break down**, but much less time for paper.

塑料需要数百年才能降解,而纸的降解时间要短得多。

[**归纳拓展**]

break out (坏事)突然发生;(战争)爆发

break away (from) 逃脱,挣脱,脱离

break in 闯入;打断谈话;插嘴

break into 强行进入;闯入

break through 冲破,突破

break up (使)分裂,(使)破碎;分手,结束关系;(使)解散

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国二卷)Volunteering can be the first step in breaking down prejudice.

②She had passed a basketball field, breaking up the game and flattening the umpire (裁判) in passing.

③After the storm, the sun broke through the clouds, which was a striking scene.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之情景描写)教授刚一走上讲台,**观众**

就爆发出雷鸣般的掌声。
No sooner had the professor stepped on the stage than the audience broke into thunderous applause.
②(应用文写作之求助信)我能做些什么来帮助他们改善情况、**摆脱困境**呢?
What can I do to help them improve the situation and break away from the difficult position?

6. 倍数表达法

[**教材原文**]However, making a paper bag uses **four times as much** energy **as** making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water.
然而,生产纸袋的能耗为塑料袋的四倍,耗水则多达三倍。

[**归纳拓展**]
常用的倍数表达法:
(1)倍数+as+*adj.*/*adv.* 的原级+as+其他
(2)倍数+*adj.*/*adv.* 的比较级+than+其他
(3)倍数+the+*n.*(size/height/weight/length/width/depth...)+of+其他
(4)倍数+what 从句

名师点拨
(1)上述结构中的"倍数"也可用分数、百分数代替。
(2)表示两倍时,一般用 twice/double;三倍及三倍以上用"基数词+times"。

[**即学即练**]
(1)单句语法填空
①Peter's jacket looked just the same as Jack's, but it cost twice as much as his.
②The electronic waste stream (流) is increasing three times faster (fast) than traditional garbage as a whole.
③Our manager presented a report three times the length (long) of mine.
④The number of students now in this school is four times what it was ten years ago.
(2)写作微练
(应用文写作之投稿)这部短片讲述了我们学校的发展。现在,我们新学校的面积是 10 年前的**三倍大**。
①The short film tells about the development of our school. Now our new school is three times as large as what it was ten years ago.(倍数+as+*adj.*/*adv.*原级+as)
②The short film tells about the development of our school. Now our new school is three times larger than what it was ten years ago.(倍数+*adj.*/*adv.*比较级+than)
③The short film tells about the development of our school. Now our new school is three times the size of what it was ten years ago.(倍数+the+*n.*+of)

多义词汇 专练

1. lecture: A. *n.* 讲座,演讲 B. *n.* 教训 C. *v.* 训斥
①What makes me annoyed is that he is always **lecturing** me about my behaviour. C
②Scottish National Portrait (肖像画) Gallery presents a series of **lectures** for the general public. A
③I know I must stop smoking—don't give me a **lecture** about it. B

2. remove: A. *v.* 脱去 B. *v.* 清除 C. *v.* 免职
①He **removed** his jacket when he arrived home. A
②He was severely criticised and **removed** from his post. C
③The agreement **removes** the last serious obstacle to the signing of the treaty. B

3. break down: A.打破 B.分解 C.(谈判)失败 D.(身体)垮掉
①In other words, your health will **break down** if you work too hard. D
②The two countries are going to meet to **break down** some barriers to trade between them. A
③The peace talks **broke down** with no agreement reached. C
④As is known to all, plastic bags are difficult to **break down**. B

4. I looked down at my book as soon as his eyes **released** me, trying to find my place. A
A. *v.* 放开 B. *v.* 释放,排放
C. *v.* 公布;发行

5. contribute: A. *v.* 发表意见 B. *v.* 促成,导致 C. *v.* 捐献,捐赠 D. *v.* 撰稿,投稿
①(2025·全国二卷)Last month, you kindly agreed to **contribute** an article about sports in Canada, and we're all looking forward to reading it. D
②(2025·浙江1月卷)Ask the audience to **contribute** their ideas or to take a role in explaining new concepts and policies to others. A
③ Many people **contributed** money to the poor children. C
④Diligence and perseverance **contribute** to great achievements. B

Unit 6 课后素养评价（二十四）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. How to use electricity（电）safely has become general knowledge in our village.
2. The Smile Project has grown into a widespread campaign（活动）with one simple task: share joy.
3. His words gave us the false（不正确的）impression that he would lend us money, but he would not.
4. Children nowadays spend more time than ever in front of electronic devices（设备）.
5. To reduce the amount（数量）of rubbish and to protect the environment, more governments are requiring people to recycle materials.
6. The average（平均的）age of the women interviewed was only 21.5.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. Concerned（concern）about his student, the teacher called the student's parents to find out why he was so often absent from class.
2. Teenagers shouldn't be removed from school although they don't do well in studies.
3. The people in the earthquake-stricken area are in urgent（urge）need of food and medicine.
4. Everyone on the team contributed to winning（win）the game.
5. On average, how much time do you spend on sports activities each week?

Ⅲ. 短语填空

take... into account; break down; supply... with; the majority of; call on; turn off; depend on; mistake... for

1. The doctor admitted that he mistook the symptom（症状）for the common cold at first.
2. The project is aimed at calling on people to take effective（有效的）measures to protect polar bears.
3. The majority of students prefer to go cycling to taking a bus.
4. Would you mind if I turn off the radio?
5. The company supplied our school with a lot of advanced teaching equipment.
6. Children depend on their parents for all of their material needs.
7. If Tim carries on working like this, he'll break down sooner or later.
8. A good speaker usually takes the audience into account when making a speech.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. My deskmate devoted three times as much time and energy as she did before.
   我同桌付出的是相比之前三倍的时间和精力。
2. It is because of the delicious local food that she fell in love with the city.
   正是因为当地美味的食物，她才爱上了这座城市。
3. We should take steps to protect the air from being polluted.
   我们应该采取措施保护空气不受污染。
4. It is urgent that the government（should）take immediate measures.
   政府必须立即采取措施。
5. To avoid embarrassment, you'd better learn about Chinese table manners, which are different from yours.
   为了避免尴尬，你最好了解中国的餐桌礼仪，这和你们的不同。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

Plastic garbage is a problem around the world: In Guatemala, in Central America, many towns have trouble **1.** collecting（collect）garbage. So plenty of plastic garbage **2.** is left（leave）in the streets. Susanne Heisse came up with an idea **3.** to help（help）solve this problem.

Her idea is to help communities work together to build plastic-bottle schools. First, people collect plastic bottles, and then they fill the bottle **4.** with plastic garbage. By pushing **5.** a large amount of garbage into the bottle, the bottle, **6.** which becomes strong, can then be used to make walls. **7.** Eventually（eventual）, an entire school can be built.

One group in Guatemala, Hug It Forward, first started using this idea in its projects. Because plastic bottle schools are cheaper than the other schools **8.** built（build）in the traditional way, other groups have also started similar projects around the world.

Now, plastic-bottle schools can be found in **9.** places（place）such as South Africa, Cambodia and the Philippines. Through such projects, garbage is turned into something **10.** useful（use）.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

学校的环保俱乐部(Saving the Environment Club)于上周六开展了一次义务劳动，地点是城市公园。内容包括张贴海报、打扫街道、分发宣传广告、打扫公园等。

假如你是张亚，参加了这次义务劳动，请你给你的朋友 Bruce 写一封电子邮件，向他介绍这次劳动的情况，并谈谈你的看法。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear Bruce，

I'm a volunteer in Saving the Environment Club of my school. Last Saturday, I went to the City Park with some other volunteers. _____

Yours,

Zhang Ya

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Sometimes things may seem beyond our efforts, but keep on and you will find beautiful views in front of you.

I was on my second outdoor experience trip that every student had to go on. That year, we had a choice of what difficulty level we wanted: one through five. My friends and I had agreed that one would make us seem lazy and that challenging ourselves would make for a good story. In choosing level two, we believed that it would still be a fun experience.

We were quickly proven wrong.

The further we drove into the White Mountains, the higher the walls on either side of the winding highway grew. I was still in awe of the mountains I had seen so many times before, but I couldn't help feeling my heart shaking with anxiety. Soon I would have to leave the school bus that brought 50 students out into the wilderness like every year before.

My group consisted of my friends, Riley and Ann, and six extremely athletic boys. We arrived at the base camp lodge（木屋）first. After putting things aside and rearranging our bags, we made our way out into the wilderness.

The three of us girls were questioning if this was really a level two. The path was unbelievably steep（陡峭）and rocky towards the top of the mountain where the first hut was located. We were practically jogging in an attempt to keep up with the boys ahead of us. Before the trip, we were told to take breaks as often as we needed to drink water, but that wasn't helping our pounding hearts and heavy breathing as much as it should have.

Then, 30 minutes into the most difficult hike the three of us had ever done, Riley slipped and landed on her knee. After a few moments, we turned back down the mountain as it was decided that Riley could not make the trip with us. We sat on the grass outside the lodge where we had started while Riley was brought inside to join the level one group. Ann and I exchanged breathless glances, our cheeks red and wet with sweat.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

"Do you think we should ask if we could join the level one group too?" I asked Ann. _____

The next days, although extremely tired, we kept on. _____

【参考范文】

第一节　应用文写作

Dear Bruce,

I'm a volunteer in Saving the Environment Club of my school. Last Saturday, I went to the City Park with some other volunteers.

Some of us put up signs about protecting the environment. It's meaningful to make people know the importance of protecting the environment. Some handed out advertisements. Others cleaned the streets. We also helped clean up the City Park. When we finished all the work, we were very tired. But we felt very happy at the same time.

It's our duty to do something for the environment around us. I think it's fantastic to be a volunteer. What do you think of volunteering? Please write back!

Yours,

Zhang Ya

第二节　读后续写

"Do you think we should ask if we could join the level one group too?" I asked Ann. "I know you won't," she breathed out. "I won't!" I said to myself, looking at the awesome mountains in the distance. Then we started up the steep and rocky path again, attempting to keep up with the boys. Our bags felt heavier; legs burned; backs hurt; tears threatened to spill over our sweat-covered eyes. I wanted nothing more than to turn back and leave right then and there. But, I couldn't; I didn't want to be someone who gave up easily.

The next days, although extremely tired, we kept on. Ann and I still found ourselves lagging behind the boys. Instead of embarrassment, I felt as though I was gaining more out of the trip than anyone else. As the boys ran, Ann and I hung back and took breaks, drinking water and admiring the deep green valleys from high above. Level two was fun, too. And eventually we made it to the destination. Facing the beautiful views in front of us, I exchanged a glance with Ann, both of us beaming.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——倡议信

○写作指导

倡议信属于应用文的一种，提倡或呼吁开展某项有意义的活动，或推行某种行之有效的做法。其格式及写作步骤如下：

(一)格式

通常由称呼、正文、结尾、落款四部分组成。

1. 称呼。写称呼是为了明确倡议的对象，一般要根据倡议的对象而选用适当的称呼，如："Dear friends""Dear schoolmates""Dear editors""Dear students"等。

2. 正文。倡议信意在唤起他人的响应，这就要求倡议者必须清楚说明倡议背景、原因，申明倡议目的，写明倡议内容，让人信服，这样人们才能响应并自觉行动。

3. 结尾。结尾可表明倡议者的决心和希望或者提出某种建议，但是一般不在结尾用表示敬意或祝愿的话。

4. 落款。在倡议信右下方署上倡议发出者的姓名。

(二)写作步骤

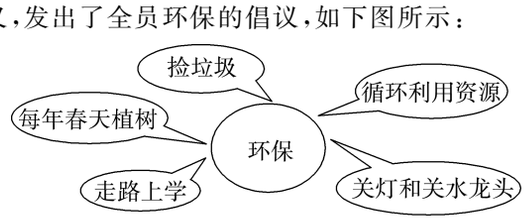
第一步：写明发出倡议的背景、原因和目的。倡议信的发出贵在引起响应，只有交代清楚原因、背景、事实，并申明目的，被呼吁方才会理解和信服，并展开行动。

第二步：写明倡议的具体内容和要求，这是正文的重点部分。内容应具体化，最好分条列举，做到清晰明确，一目了然，这样才能体现它的意义和行动价值。

第三步：结尾要表示倡议者的决心、希望或者给出某种建议。

○典题示例

为了唤起青少年的环保意识，你校就"如何保护环境"发起了建议征集活动。你以学校学生会主席的名义，发出了全员环保的倡议，如下图所示：



请根据倡议内容及以下写作要点写一封倡议信。要点如下：

1. 保护环境是我们中学生的职责；
2. 保护环境的一些具体措施；
3. 让我们都为地球母亲尽一份力。

注意：1. 词数80左右；
2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；
3. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Proposal

Dear friends,

_____

_____

Let's take action to protect our mother— the earth now.

Thank you!

The Students' Union

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 保护环境的原因及目的 2. 保护环境的具体措施 3. 给出建议

Step 2：要点补全

①We're writing this letter to raise your awareness of protecting the earth（加强你们保护地球的意识）.

②First, walking to school is a good way to reduce pollution（一种减少污染的好方式）.

③Second, we should plant trees every spring to protect the soil from being washed away（保护土壤不被冲走）.

④We should keep our school clean by picking up any litter（通过捡垃圾来保持我们的学校干净）.

⑤Finally, remember to turn off（记得关掉）the water taps when you finish washing and turn off the

lights when you leave the classroom（当你们离开教室时）.

⑥In a word（总之），we can make the earth more beautiful（使地球更加美丽）tomorrow only when we form the good habit of environmental protection.

Step 3：句式升级

①用状语从句的省略升级 Step 2 中的句⑤

Finally, remember to turn off the water taps when finishing washing and turn off the lights when leaving the classroom.

②用 only 置于句首引导的状语从句升级 Step 2 中的句⑥

In a word, only when we form the good habit of environmental protection can we make the earth more beautiful tomorrow.

Step 4：连句成篇

Proposal

Dear friends,

We're writing this letter to raise your awareness of protecting the earth. So we propose doing the following things.

First, walking to school is a good way to reduce pollution. Second, we should plant trees every spring to protect the soil from being washed away. Third, it's also important to recycle everything useful. We should keep our school clean by picking up any litter. Finally, remember to turn off the water taps when finishing washing and turn off the lights when leaving the classroom. In a word, only when we form the good habit of environmental protection can we make the earth more beautiful tomorrow.

Let's take action to protect our mother—the earth now.

Thank you!

The Students' Union

○学以致用

为响应"保护环境，低碳生活"的号召，你校正在开展"Power Saving—A Must for Everyone"的主题活动，请你以学生会的名义用英语给全校学生写一封倡议信，内容包括：

1. 节约用电的原因及意义；
2. 节约用电的具体做法；
3. 发起倡议。

注意：词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

Proposal

Dear schoolmates,

As is known to us, without electricity the society cannot run smoothly. But around us, electricity is often regrettably wasted. In contrast, many places have been suffering severe power shortages since this summer. So it's necessary for us to save electricity.

First and foremost, we should make it a habit to save electricity and practise it in our daily life. For example, when leaving the room, we should turn off the lights. Moreover, we should remind more people around us, such as our parents, close relatives and friends, of the importance of saving electricity.

Let's take an active part in the power saving action, start from ourselves, and act from now on.

The Students' Union

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章，完成任务。

It was one of the hottest days of the dry season. We had not seen rain in almost a month. The crops were dying. Cows had stopped giving milk. The creeks and streams were long gone back into the earth. It was a dry season that would bankrupt several farmers before it was through. Every day, my husband and his brothers would go about the tiring process of trying to get water to the farm. If we didn't see some rain soon, we would lose everything.

It was on this day that I learned the true lesson of sharing and witnessed the only miracle I had seen with my own eyes. I was in the kitchen making lunch for my husband and his brothers when I saw my six-year-old son, Billy, walking towards the woods. He wasn't walking with the usual carefree abandon of a youth but with a serious purpose. I could only see his back. He was obviously walking with a great effort trying to be as still as possible. Minutes after he disappeared into the woods, he came running out again towards the house. I went back to make sandwiches, thinking that whatever task he had been doing was completed.

Moments later, however, he was once again walking in that slow purposeful stride towards the woods. This activity went on for over an hour: walking carefully to the woods, and then running back to the house. Finally, my curiosity got the best of me. I crept out of the house and followed him on his journey.

He was cupping both hands in front of him as he walked, very careful not to spill the water he held. Maybe two or three tablespoons were held in his tiny hands. I sneaked closer as he went into the woods. Branches and thorns slapped his little face but he did not try to avoid them. He had a much greater purpose. As I leaned in to spy on him, I saw an amazing sight. A mother deer with a huge pair of deer horns appeared in front of him, with a baby fawn (幼鹿) lying on the dry ground. I almost screamed to get him away.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

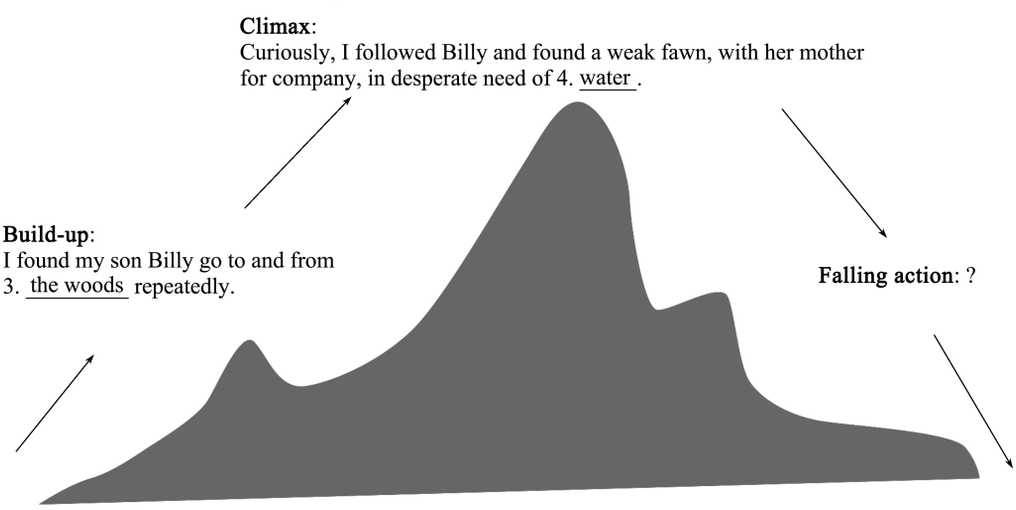
However, Billy walked right up to them. _____

_____

I witnessed the most beautiful heart working hard to save a life. _____

_____

任务一:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务二:根据段落开头提示语,构思故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1: However, Billy walked right up to them. _____ _____ _____ _____	**1.** How did Billy feed the fawn? He knelt by the fawn's side and carefully placed his cupped hands close to its mouth. **2.** How did the baby fawn respond to Billy's actions? The baby fawn lifted its head up and lapped up the water cupped in Billy's hands. **3.** How did the mother deer behave during this interaction? The mother deer stood by, watching over her fawn and Billy.
Paragraph 2: I witnessed the most beautiful heart working hard to save a life. _____ _____	**1.** What did I do after witnessing the whole thing? I strode to Billy and held him tight. **2.** How did Billy react to my sudden appearance? Billy felt very surprised and tried to explain. **3.** What miracle happened? It rained that day.

任务三:细化情节,遣词造句。

1. Cautiously, he knelt down by the weak baby fawn, seemingly familiar with (似乎熟悉) the two creatures.
2. The fawn, suffering from (遭受) dehydration and heat exhaustion, lifted its head up with great efforts (十分费力地抬起头) and eagerly lapped up the water cupped in my beautiful boy's hands.
3. The mother deer stood by as if on guard (仿佛在站岗).
4. Not until (直到) the fawn licked the last drip of water did Billy move a little bit (比利才稍稍动了一下).
5. I contained myself not to make a slightest sound, for fear of scaring them (唯恐吓到它们).
6. With the water gone, Billy jumped to his feet (一跃而起) and met my smiling eyes.
7. Before he tried to explain (他还没来得及解释), I strode to him and held him tight.
8. As the tears that rolled down my face (从我的脸上滚落) began to hit the ground, they were suddenly joined by other drops and more drops and more.
9. I looked up at the sky (抬头看向天空).
10. The rain that came that day was a miracle, saving our farm (拯救了我们的农场), just like my boy saved a life.

任务四:连句成篇,完整呈现。

【参考范文】

However, Billy walked right up to them. Cautiously, he knelt down by the weak baby fawn, seemingly familiar with the two creatures. The fawn, suffering from dehydration and heat exhaustion, lifted its head up with great efforts and eagerly lapped up the water cupped in my beautiful boy's hands. The mother deer stood by as if on guard. Not until the fawn licked the last drip of water did Billy move a little bit. I contained myself not to make a slightest sound, for fear of scaring them.

I witnessed the most beautiful heart working hard to save a life. With the water gone, Billy jumped to his feet and met my smiling eyes. Before he tried to explain, I strode to him and held him tight. As the tears that rolled down my face began to hit the ground, they were suddenly joined by other drops and more drops and more. I looked up at the sky. The rain that came that day was a miracle, saving our farm, just like my boy saved a life.

单元质量评估(六)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Volunteer by Supporting a Local Animal Rescue Centre in Africa!

If you have a passion for animals and a strong interest in environmental conservation, this programme is an ideal fit for you. Your role will involve assisting and supporting a local animal shelter, which not only provides care for homeless animals but also rehabilitates injured wildlife.

In addition to looking after the animals' needs, volunteers also play an important role in welcoming visitors at the entrance and addressing any questions they may have about the shelter or its inhabitants. As you spend more time volunteering, you will gain valuable knowledge and experience in wildlife management.

Requirements

—Applicants must be at least 15 years old and enrolled in high school or above by the programme start date.

—Speaking English is a basic requirement.

—There are no nationality restrictions. Volunteers from both Africa and other countries are welcome.

—You will need to be available to help from 9:00 am to 4:00 pm on Monday, Tuesday,

Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, and Sunday.

Programme Fees

Duration	Programme Fees
1 week (minimum stay)	300 dollars
2 weeks	600 dollars
3 weeks	900 dollars
4 weeks	1,200 dollars
5 weeks	1,500 dollars
50 weeks (maximum stay)	15,000 dollars

* Booking payments (15%): The booking payment is merely to secure the volunteer placement. Payment is made by mobile phone. You can also pay by credit card.

* Final payments (85%): The final payment shall be agreed upon with Volunteer Now Africa during the application process.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了非洲一个动物救助中心的志愿者项目。

1. What can a volunteer do in the rescue centre?

A. In search of homeless animals.

B. Communicate with visitors.

C. Receive training to assist with animal placement.

D. Deliver lectures about animals.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"In addition to looking after the animals' needs, volunteers also play an important role in welcoming visitors at the entrance and addressing any questions they may have about the shelter or its inhabitants."可知,除了照顾动物外,志愿者们还要在入口处欢迎来访者,并回答来访者关于救助中心或那里的动物的任何问题,也就是要和访客沟通。故选B。

2. Who can be a volunteer in the programme?

A. An adult who can only speak German.

B. A college student from Canada.

C. A student in primary school.

D. A local individual free on Saturdays.

B 推理判断题。根据**Requirements**部分中的"Applicants must be at least 15 years old and enrolled in high school or above by the programme start date." "Speaking English is a basic requirement." "There are no nationality restrictions."可知,志愿者无国籍限制,要求年龄在15岁及以上、高中及以上学历且会说英语,由此推知,"来自加拿大的一个大学生"符合要求。故选B。

3. If you want to apply as a volunteer for a duration of 3 weeks, how much should you pay to make a reservation?

A. 45 dollars. B. 90 dollars.

C. 135 dollars. D. 180 dollars.

C 细节理解题。根据**Programme Fees**部分中的表格内容可知,该志愿者项目三周的费用是900美元。再结合表格下文的"Booking payments (15%)"可知,志愿者需要交纳15%的订金。由此可知,申请成为为期三周的志愿者,需要缴纳(900×15%=)135美元。故选C。

B

Nabilah Abdullah has been enthusiastically sculpting with clay for nearly 20 years, from one of a dozen workshops in the Sarawak Pottery Centre, just to the north of Kuching, Malaysia. Nabilah spends each morning making new works and each afternoon selling them from her shop, Ally Clay Crafts, in Kuching's Steamship Building.

Works in progress fill every shelf of Nabilah's workshop. There are containers and pots waiting to be fired, and bowls about to be polished. There are a row of elegant leaf-shaped brooches (胸针), deep green and highly polished. "They're made by pressing real leaves into the clay and making a unique imprint," says Nabilah. "I take inspiration from nature—the rainforest is my supermarket."

But Nabilah's consuming passion is a black pot. Evidence of pots like this has been uncovered in the Niah Caves, an archaeological hot spot in the north of the country where a skull was found that dates back around 60,000 years. Nabilah was inspired to create her own pot, following a visit to the Borneo Cultures Museum. The black pot was used to cook rice—the rounded bottom allowed the fire to heat it evenly. Nabilah travelled three hours into the rainforest to learn how to make these pots from an old man in his house. He showed Nabilah how it was done, pushing a smooth round stone down into a column of clay, then beating its outside with a wooden paddle until it took on the round shape of the stone. He was doing this just as his ancestors did thousands of years ago, following the same process and using the same tools. The only difference is that the pot will be finished in a kiln (窑) rather than an open fire, because the smoke pollution from the open fire is far too great.

"Tradition is so important; it marks where we

are from," Nabilah adds. "Our ancestors were very clever and we mustn't lose that wisdom. If I don't do this and show others how to do it, the art will be lost forever. It's my mission to preserve these skills for future generations."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了Nabilah Abdullah学习制陶的故事。

4. Why does the author mention Nabilah's daily routine in Paragraph 1?

A. To advertise her works.

B. To present her passion for work.

C. To introduce her work environment.

D. To highlight the features of her works.

B　推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知，第一段中提到Nabilah的日常习惯是为了展示她对工作的热情。故选B。

5. What do we know about the brooches made by Nabilah?

A. They wait to be polished.

B. They feature shelf patterns.

C. They sell well in supermarkets.

D. They are based on physical objects.

D　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"'They're made by pressing real leaves into the clay and making a unique imprint,' says Nabilah. 'I take inspiration from nature—the rainforest is my supermarket.'"可知，Nabilah制作的胸针是以实物为基础的。故选D。

6. What does Paragraph 3 mainly tell us about Nabilah?

A. Her show of black pots in a museum.

B. Her discovery of ancient pots in caves.

C. Her journey to learn traditional pot making.

D. Her solution to using a kiln for making pots.

C　段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知，第三段主要讲述了Nabilah学习传统制陶技艺的旅程，她前往雨林向一位老人学习如何制作这些陶器。故选C。

7. Which word can best describe Nabilah?

A. Responsible.　　B. Reserved.

C. Humble.　　D. Humorous.

A　推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知，Nabilah认为传统很重要，她不能让祖先们的智慧丢失，她有责任将这些技能保留下来传给后代。因此，最能描述Nabilah的词是"Responsible(有责任心的)"。故选A。

C

If you were to throw, say, a banana peel out of your car while driving along the motorway, that would be a completely harmless action, due to the fact that it's part of a fruit—right? Actually, no. A banana peel can take up to two years to be naturally processed, and with a third of motorists admitting to littering while driving, that's a whole lot of discarded banana peels. An orange peel and a cigarette butt have a similar biodegrading (生物降解) term to that of a banana peel, but tin cans last up to 100 years; and plastic bottles last forever, so do glass bottles.

Despite the fact that longer-lasting materials will serve to damage the environment and its animals for longer, we can't merely measure the severity of a certain type of rubbish by its lifetime. For example, despite having a fairly short length of biodegrading time, more than 120 tons of cigarette-related litter is discarded in the UK every day.

It's not a cheap habit either: to keep our streets clean annually costs UK taxpayers 500 million pounds, and when you include our green spaces, that goes up to 1 billion pounds. So, it's not surprising that if caught fly-tipping you could face a 20,000-pound fine or even jail time and, if you dispose of something dangerous, the court could give you five years to serve. Regardless of how severe these punishments might seem, however, among the reported cases only 2,000 were found guilty out of 825,000, so we still have some way to go in making sure people obey the rules.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。在我们所扔的垃圾中，不同的垃圾被分解时需要的时间不同，我们也不能仅凭垃圾被分解时需要的时间判断其严重性，我们要爱护环境、合法扔垃圾。

8. What does the underlined word "discarded" in Paragraph 1 mean?

A. Harmless.　　B. Processed.

C. Thrown.　　D. Long-lasting.

C　词义猜测题。根据画线词前的"admitting to littering"可知，此处表示被丢弃的香蕉皮。故选C。

9. Which of the following has the longest biodegrading term?

A. Glass bottles.　　B. Tin cans.

C. Cigarette butts.　　D. Banana peels.

A　推理判断题。根据第一段最后一句可知，塑料瓶和玻璃瓶的生物降解时间最长。故选A。

10. What can be inferred from the passage?

A. The severity of rubbish can be measured only

by its lifetime.

B. Quite a few people were found guilty of illegally littering.

C. Every year UK taxpayers spend 500 million pounds keeping streets free of dirt.

D. Cigarette-related litter and peels can be ignored for their fairly short lifetime.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"to keep our streets clean annually costs UK taxpayers 500 million pounds"可知，每年英国纳税人需花费5亿英镑来保持街道干净。故选C。

11. What is the purpose of the passage?

A. To inform readers of different biodegrading terms.

B. To call for people not to litter illegally.

C. To encourage people to use fewer plastic bags.

D. To stress the importance of good behaviour.

B 写作意图题。通读全文可知，在我们所扔的垃圾中，不同的垃圾被分解所需要的时间不同，我们也不能仅凭垃圾被分解所需要的时间判断其严重性。由此可知，文章旨在号召大家合法扔垃圾。故选B。

D

Trees, parks, wetlands and green roofs can no longer be seen as a "nice-to-have" aesthetic enhancement (美学提升) but an important part for creating climate-resilient (气候适应性强的), and healthier cities, according to an international paper. The research—which involved experts from 11 countries—found that urban (都市的) greening has many benefits, including cooler streets, cleaner air and water, and improved health.

Global case studies in the paper show how different cities are making nature-based solutions work in practice. Singapore's "City in Nature" has seen major success with its green corridors and vertical gardens that help reduce heat and support biodiversity (生物多样性). In Cardiff, more than 80,000 trees have been planted as part of the city's One Planet Strategy, while Copenhagen has integrated (结合) green roofs and climate-resilient neighbourhoods to manage flood risk and improve liveability.

According to Professor Prashant Kumar, lead author of the paper, urban greening can be a cost-effective solution to some of our most pressing challenges—from climate change to improving health. Cities like Singapore have shown what's possible. To help cities achieve urban greening, experts are calling for integrated action that includes nature in every step of planning.

Tools like AI, and Geographic Information Systems (GIS) are increasingly enabling cities to map environmental risks, inform smarter design and record the long-term impact of city green space. These technological advancements can help support the delivery of urban greening.

Professor Veronica Soebarto, Initiative Lead in Green Urban Futures at the University of Adelaide's Environment Institute, said, "Considering the many benefits of greening, there is no reason not to include it within city planning, designs and developments. With warming climates taking place around the world, urban greening is important in providing relief by cooling the outdoor environment and reducing heat that enters buildings. At the same time, it is a solution that brings nature to cities, positively influencing health, and improving liveability."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了城市绿化所带来的好处。

12. What is the main purpose of the new research?

A. To stress the great benefits of urban greening.

B. To set aesthetic standards for urban greening.

C. To compare the green plans of different cities.

D. To discuss the challenges of building green cities.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"The research—which involved experts from 11 countries—found that urban (都市的) greening has many benefits, including cooler streets, cleaner air and water, and improved health."可知，这项研究的主要目的是强调城市绿化的巨大益处。故选A。

13. How does the author develop Paragraph 2?

A. By listing numbers.

B. By showing the study results.

C. By giving examples.

D. By using an expert's words.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知，第二段通过列举新加坡、加的夫和哥本哈根三个城市的做法来展开。故选C。

14. What is the experts' suggestion on urban greening?

A. Ask city developers for help.

B. Learn from Singapore's model.
C. Think about its cost when planning.
D. Consider it at every step of city planning.

D　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"To help cities achieve urban greening, experts are calling for integrated action that includes nature in every step of planning."可知，专家建议将绿化纳入城市规划的每一步。故选D。

15. What is Professor Veronica Soebarto's attitude to urban greening?
A. Thankful.　　B. Doubtful.
C. Supportive.　　D. Uninterested.

C　观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知，Veronica Soebarto教授认为城市绿化有很多好处，因此对城市绿化持支持的态度。故选C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Simple Steps to a More Sustainable Lifestyle

Living sustainably means making choices that are better for our planet. Everything we buy has an influence on the environment—from what it's made of to the pollution created when it's made. **16** Here are a few easy but helpful steps you can take to make a difference.

Think before you shop. Before buying something new, ask yourself if you really need it. If you do, try buying it second-hand instead of new. **17** This not only saves resources but also cuts down on waste and saves you money.

Avoid single-use plastic. Plastic doesn't disappear. Every year millions of tons end up in the ocean. This hurts many sea animals each year. You can start by bringing your own shopping bags, using a reusable water bottle, and choosing products with less plastic packaging. **18**

Eat more sustainably. Producing meat has a big effect on the environment. **19** Also, try not to waste food. In the United States, almost 40% of food is thrown away. You can prevent this by planning your meals and eating what you buy.

20 Getting involved can make a real difference. Ask leaders to make stronger rules to protect nature. Talk to friends and family about protecting our planet. Small actions, when millions of people do them, can change the world.

A. Use your voice.
B. Join environmental clubs.
C. It uses a lot of water and causes pollution.
D. Always try to recycle plastic when you can.
E. So, it's important to think about what we use.
F. Choosing items with less packaging also helps.
G. Every time you avoid plastic, you help the earth.

答案：16～20　EFGCA

Ⅲ. 完形填空

I didn't use to understand why everyone liked pandas so much. I thought they only got so much attention because they were __21__. But my trip with the Chinese Felid Conservation Alliance（中国猫科动物保护联盟）__22__ changed my opinion.

Our destination was the Baishuihe National Nature Reserve in Sichuan Province. The reserve used to have a panda __23__, but since the earthquake in 2008, no pandas had been __24__. The goal of our __25__ was to go deep into the reserve and set up a wildlife camera there.

On our first day, we set out in the morning and climbed until 4 in the afternoon. Upon setting up our camp, I unrolled my sleeping bag and was so __26__ as to fall asleep immediately. The rest of the team was still busy making a __27__, but I was already dead to the world, only __28__ that the fire's heat made it nice and warm. Carrying our sleeping bags, we hiked along a(n) __29__ path in the deep mountains for two more __30__.

During that trip, I learned a lot about pandas. It __31__ that pandas aren't the way they appear in zoos. Instead, they have a(n) __32__ ability to survive and can live comfortably in those __33__ conditions, where I thought I was going to fall over and die.

The __34__ has been doing its job this whole time. Although we didn't get any panda pictures the first year, we did __35__ in the second year. That was the first time since the earthquake that pandas had been seen in the reserve.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者跟随中国猫科动物保护联盟，为了收集野生大熊猫的图片资料，到自然保护区安装野外摄像机的故事。

21. A. cute　　B. wild
C. dangerous　　D. extinct

A　根据常识可知，大熊猫是可爱的，所以作者猜想大家喜欢大熊猫是因为它们可爱。故选A。

22. A. creatively　　B. totally
C. formally　　D. equally

B　根据上文的"But"及下文的"changed my opinion"可知，这里表示改变想法的程度，totally

意为“完全地”，符合语境。故选B。

23. A. competition　　B. population
C. organisation　　D. destination
B　根据下文的“but”及“no pandas”可知，以前这里是有大熊猫的。故选B。

24. A. buried　　B. injured
C. described　　D. sighted
D　根据语境可知，2008年以后，在这片区域再没有看到过大熊猫。故选D。

25. A. trip　　B. programme
C. struggle　　D. life
A　根据上文的“my trip with the Chinese Felid Conservation Alliance”可知，此处应用trip，原词复现。故选A。

26. A. absorbed　　B. annoyed
C. bored　　D. tired
D　根据上文的“On our first day, we set out in the morning and climbed until 4 in the afternoon.”可知，作者爬了一天的山，很累。故选D。

27. A. fire　　B. hole
C. difference　　D. proposal
A　根据下文的“fire's heat”可知，他们在生火。故选A。

28. A. protesting　　B. assuming
C. noticing　　D. proving
C　根据下文的“the fire's heat made it nice and warm”可知，只有noticing“意识到”符合语境。故选C。

29. A. flat　　B. straight
C. challenging　　D. amazing
C　根据下文的“in the deep mountains”可知，这条小路并不好走，充满挑战。故选C。

30. A. hours　　B. days
C. weeks　　D. months
B　根据上文的“On our first day...”可知，作者一行人又走了两天。故选B。

31. A. matters　　B. happens
C. comes about　　D. turns out
D　根据下文的“that pandas aren't the way they appear in zoos”可知，作者通过这次旅程发现了大熊猫真实的生活方式。故选D。

32. A. amazing　　B. similar
C. limited　　D. false
A　根据下文的“survive and can live comfortably”及“where I thought I was going to fall over and die”可知，野外的生存环境很不好，但是大熊猫依然舒适地生活着，这说明它们有惊人的生存能力。故选A。

33. A. economic　　B. terrible
C. common　　D. suitable
B　根据下文的“where I thought I was going to fall over and die”可知，大熊猫的野外生活环境很不好。故选B。

34. A. panda　　B. camp
C. camera　　D. zoo
C　根据上文的“set up a wildlife camera”可知，摄像机安装好后一直在进行摄像工作。下文的“Although we didn't get any panda pictures”也是提示。故选C。

35. A. relax　　B. retire
C. survive　　D. succeed
D　根据上文的“Although we didn't get any panda pictures the first year...”可知，尽管摄像机第一年没拍到大熊猫，但第二年成功拍到了照片。故选D。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

36. Located (locate) about 200 kilometres south of Beijing, the Nandagang Migratory Bird Habitat in Cangzhou, Hebei Province, is now welcoming the autumn and winter migration (迁徙) season. This area is **37.** an important stop for many migratory birds travelling along the East Asia-Australasia Flyway.

In recent years, the Nandagang Wetland and Bird Nature Reserve **38.** has built (build) a system for scientific research and monitoring. This has helped people learn more about different bird species, their numbers, and where they live, while also making protection and rescue efforts **39.** more effective (effect). In July, Nandagang was recognised **40.** as a World Natural Heritage Site, becoming the first natural heritage site in Hebei Province.

41. However, in the past, the habitat had problems because of pond aquaculture (池塘养殖) in some areas. This caused blocked waterways, poor water quality, and a smaller wetland area, **42.** which hurt the birds' living space. Since 2020, projects to restore the environment have been started, **43.** including (include) removing aquaculture and restoring wetlands. As a result, the number and **44.** variety (vary) of bird species in Nandagang have been increasing each year, reaching a total of 269 species. This includes 16 species of national first-class **45.** protected (protect) birds, such as the Red-

crowned Crane and the Mandarin Duck.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

为了增强绿色消费意识，你校将举办英文演讲比赛，请你以“How to Live Green”为题写一篇英语演讲稿参赛。内容包括：

1. 你对绿色生活的理解；

2. 你的建议。

注意：词数 80 左右。

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was the middle of the day with a bright sun, a blue sky, green grass, and a soft breeze (微风). It was a great day to play outside and the best day of my life because I got a new ball and a new bike as my sixth birthday presents, and I was visiting my cousin, Kristy, at her house.

“Here I go!” shouted David while kicking my new ball. David lived next door and was older than me. I thought he was a wild child, but he was actually very kind. The ball went flying as if it were going to space. “That was high!” Kristy said in surprise and we went after the ball. We all had a great time.

Later, we had supper and the food my aunt made was good. While Kristy was helping do the dishes, David and I ran outside to play. We started taking turns riding my bike. David suggested that we ride it to the forest. And I agreed. David and I got on the bike and David started going fast.

As we rode through the forest, I felt the wind brushing my face. It felt so great and free. Suddenly, the bike hit a fallen branch and we went flying off the bike. Lying on the ground, I felt dizzy (眩晕的). I checked myself for injuries and saw some, but they didn't bother me.

“David!” I shouted out loudly and anxiously.

“Hey,” said a voice. I turned my head and it was David, who was standing behind me, holding my broken bike. At the sight of my disabled bike, I was so sad that I couldn't hold back my tears. It took David some time to calm me down.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

When we realised it was time to walk home, we found ourselves lost. _____

It was completely dark when we saw fireworks being set off in the distance. _____

【参考范文】

第一节　应用文写作

How to Live Green

Good morning, everyone. It is my honour to talk about how to live green here. Green life is a lifestyle of minimising energy consumption, thereby reducing carbon dioxide emissions. For ordinary people, we can do a lot of small things to live a green life.

First of all, we can give something a second life. For instance, the water which has been used to wash rice can be used to clean furniture, water the flowers and so on. In addition, we must pay attention to energy saving. For instance, we can go to school by cycling, using public transport or an electric car, rather than driving gas-guzzling vehicles. Last but not least, we are supposed to broadcast the awareness of green life and call on people around us to live a green life.

That's all. Thanks for your listening.

第二节　读后续写

When we realised it was time to walk home, we found ourselves lost. It was getting darker and darker. I felt so scared that tears rolled down my face again. David attempted to comfort me. He told me that he once made some marks on the trees in the forest, which might help us find the way home. Therefore, we made efforts to look for the marks but in vain. Having walked anxiously for about an hour in the forest, we failed to find our way out.

It was completely dark when we saw fireworks being set off in the distance. We ran excitedly in that direction as fast as possible. Soon, we found my aunt's house, in front of which my cousin Kristy was holding some fireworks and lighting them. Seeing us back safe, Kristy cheerfully hugged us. She told us that when noticing we had been away for long, she was concerned about our safety. She set off fireworks to draw our attention and guide us. It was an unforgettable experience. Without David's comfort and Kristy's fireworks, I would have been lost in the forest forever.

模块质量评估

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Rock climbing, one of the fastest growing sports, not only builds physical strength and mental focus, but also leads you to some beautiful places. Here are some climbing spots for climbers.

Acadia National Park, Maine

This popular New England park is one of the few places where you can climb seaside rocks. The granite (花岗岩) is good for climbing. In some areas, you need to start when the sea is at its lowest level. The area has guides, instructors and climbing schools, making it particularly welcoming for beginners.

City of Rocks National Reserve, Idaho

This national reserve near the Utah border is worth a trip for the scenery alone. Named by gold miners heading to California in 1849, its granite looks like skyscrapers, towering 600 feet above the ground. It's a fascinating area from the geologic and geographic angles. Many visitors come for August's Idaho Mountain Festival, a celebration of climbing with top athletes in attendance.

Earth Treks Englewood, Colorado

While you can find climbing gyms across the country, this one just in the south of Denver is worth a special trip. With more than 53,000 square feet, the massive facility has a special rock climbing area, a group of guides and even extras like childcare and yoga.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。攀岩越来越受人们青睐,文章主要介绍了攀岩的几个去处。

1. What is special about Acadia National Park?

A. It has good climbing routes.

B. It's located in a coastal area.

C. It provides a free guided trip.

D. It's intended for beginners.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Acadia National Park, Maine** 部分中的"This popular New England park is one of the few places where you can climb seaside rocks."及"when the sea is at its lowest level"可知,阿卡迪亚国家公园是为数不多的临海的可攀岩之处,这是其特别之处。故选 B。

2. What can you do in City of Rocks National Reserve?

A. Meet many gold miners.

B. Enjoy the view from a tower.

C. Go to enjoy a festival in August.

D. Get trained in a climbing gym.

C 细节理解题。根据 **City of Rocks National Reserve, Idaho** 部分中的"Many visitors come for August's Idaho Mountain Festival, a celebration of climbing with top athletes in attendance."可知,游客在爱达荷州的岩石之城国家自然保护区可以参加爱达荷山脉节。故选 C。

3. Which of the following favours a parent with a child?

A. Acadia National Park.

B. Idaho Mountain.

C. City of Rocks National Reserve.

D. Earth Treks Englewood.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Earth Treks Englewood, Colorado** 部分中的"the massive facility has a special rock climbing area, a group of guides and even extras like childcare and yoga"可知,带小孩的家长适合去 Earth Treks Englewood。故选 D。

B

Banana bread has always been my favourite, especially the ones my mum made. The crispy brown top and the mouth-watering smell could turn our home into a heaven. The key wasn't the flour or sugar—it was the bananas. To me, fresh, yellow bananas seemed perfect, but Mum always said, "They're not ready yet." Her insistence (坚持) on waiting for bananas to fully ripen (成熟) before baking always annoyed me. Later, I learned that the gas released (释放) by bananas makes them sweeter and softer, and ripe bananas make better bread. So, I guess my mum was right. I had to let them be. They were just not ready yet.

I considered this lesson relatively unimportant until recently. Years later, as a teacher candidate in the Stanford Teacher Education Program (STEP), I faced a similar struggle in teaching. I worried, "What if students aren't ready for exams? Shouldn't I push them harder?" Firstly, I thought I was just learning

how to teach chemistry. However, my professors guided me to an eye-opening realisation: I was not teaching chemistry, I was teaching students.

That slight distinction over what I was teaching will change how I see teaching forever. Beyond teaching the chemistry knowledge, I am also teaching students about community, determination and how to fit into the challenging education system. Indeed, every student comes to school with different challenges—some struggle with complex terms like "financial aid", while others face unspoken expectations from peers and teachers. Whether in high school or college, students need time to learn knowledge and develop abilities.

Like the bananas before banana bread, I need to let my students be and support them until they are ready, no matter whether I am a professor or a teaching assistant. Being patient, knowing that it takes time to make progress and that do not push someone until they are ready, is a practice that can be learned and does not take an advanced degree in chemistry to do so.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章通过作者母亲坚持使用熟透了的香蕉制作美味面包的故事,类比其在教师培训中的领悟:真正的教学不是灌输知识,而是像等待果实成熟一样,给予学生成长所需的时间。

4. What made Mum's banana bread special?

A. Her knowledge of food chemistry.

B. Her insistence on the condition of bananas.

C. Her choice of good flour and sugar.

D. Her experience in making the bananas ripen.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"To me, fresh, yellow bananas seemed perfect, but Mum always said, 'They're not ready yet.' Her insistence (坚持) on waiting for bananas to fully ripen (成熟) before baking always annoyed me. Later, I learned that the gas released (释放) by bananas makes them sweeter and softer, and ripe bananas make better bread."可知,妈妈的香蕉面包的特别之处在于她坚持使用特定条件(完全熟透)的香蕉。故选 B。

5. What did the author realise during STEP?

A. Pushing students harder could help them learn better.

B. Students' readiness for exams required urgent attention.

C. Chemistry teaching was more important than other subjects.

D. She was teaching individuals rather than chemistry knowledge.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Firstly, I thought I was just learning how to teach chemistry. However, my professors guided me to an eye-opening realisation: I was not teaching chemistry, I was teaching students."可知,作者在斯坦福教师教育项目期间意识到,她是在教学生个体而非仅仅是化学知识。故选 D。

6. Why does the author mention students' different challenges in Paragraph 3?

A. To show need for learning time.

B. To advocate peers' immediate help.

C. To praise students' constant efforts.

D. To analyse causes of academic pressure.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Indeed, every student comes to school with different challenges—some struggle with complex terms like 'financial aid', while others face unspoken expectations from peers and teachers. Whether in high school or college, students need time to learn knowledge and develop abilities."可知,作者列举学生遇到的不同挑战后,用总结句点明学生需要时间学习知识并培养能力。由此可知,作者提到这些挑战是为了表明学生需要学习时间。故选 A。

7. Which is the most suitable title for the text?

A. Waiting for Ripening

B. Making Banana Bread

C. Learning to Teach Chemistry

D. Overcoming Learning Challenges

A 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的"Like the bananas before banana bread, I need to let my students be and support them until they are ready, no matter whether I am a professor or a teaching assistant."可知,文章采用类比的方式,前半部分用等待香蕉成熟才能做出美味面包的经历,引出后半部分在教学中的核心感悟:教育如同等待果实成熟,需要耐心给予学生时间,等待他们准备好。因此,A 项"等待成熟"最适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

C

A new study in *Annals of Internal Medicine* says that going for one longer walk every day may be better for your heart health than going for many short walks. This is especially true for people who don't do much physical activity. Walking continuously for around 10 to 15 minutes, or roughly 1,000 to 1,500 steps, allows the heart to work harder and gain greater health benefits.

Although the popular goal of 10,000 steps a day is widely accepted, it actually came from a marketing campaign rather than scientific research. While experts agree that walking more is good for health, this study highlights that the pattern of walking is just as important as the total number of steps taken.

Researchers from the University of Sydney analysed data from 33,560 adults in the UK aged 40 to 79 who walked fewer than 8,000 steps per day. Participants were divided into groups based on the length of their walking sessions, from under five minutes to 15 minutes or more. Their health was then monitored over an eight-year period.

The findings showed that those who walked for longer periods of time without stopping had a lower risk of heart disease and death than those who only walked for short periods of time. This benefit was especially noticeable among the least active individuals, including people who walked fewer than 5,000 steps daily. It's not clear if these people were healthier to begin with, but the researchers took into account things like smoking, being overweight, and having high cholesterol (胆固醇).

The study highlights that simple changes, such as setting aside time for a longer daily walk, can make a meaningful difference to heart health. Experts warn that the results only show an association rather than direct cause and effect, but current guidelines still recommend regular moderate exercise. Overall, consistent physical activity, especially walking in longer sessions, plays an important role in maintaining heart health and overall well-being.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了一项新的研究,该研究表明,每天一次长时间散步比多次短时间散步对心脏健康更有益。

8. What does the study mainly suggest in Paragraph 1?

A. Inactive people should avoid physical exercise.

B. Walking speed matters more than walking time.

C. Short walks are enough to improve heart health.

D. Longer continuous walks benefit the heart more.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"A new study in *Annals of Internal Medicine* says that going for one longer walk every day may be better for your heart health than going for many short walks."可知,该研究主要表明持续的长时间散步对心脏更有益。故选D。

9. What can be inferred about the goal of walking 10,000 steps a day?

A. It was created for commercial purposes.

B. It encourages people to walk too much.

C. It ignores differences between age groups.

D. It is too difficult for most people to achieve.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Although the popular goal of 10,000 steps a day is widely accepted, it actually came from a marketing campaign rather than scientific research."可知,每天走10 000步的目标是出于商业目的而创造的。故选A。

10. What can be inferred about the least active participants in the study?

A. They preferred short walks to longer ones.

B. They showed no improvement in heart health.

C. They benefited a lot from longer walking sessions.

D. They were healthier than other participants at the start.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的"This benefit was especially noticeable among the least active individuals, including people who walked fewer than 5,000 steps daily."可知,研究中最不爱活动的参与者从长时间散步中获益良多。故选C。

11. What does the underlined word "moderate" in the last paragraph probably mean?

A. Very slow. B. Not extreme.

C. Quite intense. D. Highly irregular.

B 词义猜测题。根据最后一段中的"Experts warn that the results only show an association rather than direct cause and effect, but current guidelines still recommend regular moderate exercise."可知,专家建议进行适度的运动。由此可推断,moderate意为"适度的,不极端的"。故选B。

D

In an era where city streets are expected to do more than just move cars, city planners are turning to a simple concept with significant benefits: the road diet.

Actually, a road diet is a redesign of a roadway that reduces the number of car lanes (车道).

Typically, this means changing a four-lane road into three lanes—two for through traffic and one centre lane for shared left turns. The space saved is then repurposed for other uses, such as bike lanes, wider sidewalks, bus-only lanes or green space.

The idea isn't new. The first road diet in the United States was introduced in 1979 in Billings, Montana. Since then, more cities have all adopted the model. But it's not just a design fashion—road diets are backed by powerful data and safety results. Consider the case of Ocean Park Boulevard in Santa Monica. After being changed from four lanes to three, with the addition of bike lanes, the city saw a 65% reduction in crashes and no major increase in traffic on nearby streets.

There's another bonus: a reduced carbon footprint. By reusing road space for cars and encouraging walking and biking, road diets reduce overall Vehicle Miles Travelled (车辆行驶里程). This directly cuts greenhouse gas output, helping cities meet their climate targets.

Despite the successes, road diets often face pushback. Residents worry about longer travel times, emergency vehicle delays, or reduced access to local businesses. But if we plan with data and work with the locals, many of these concerns can be solved. In fact, safer streets often support local businesses by attracting more foot traffic and cyclists. Emergency response times can remain unchanged if planners work with local services to ensure backup paths.

The road diet isn't about punishing drivers. It's about creating streets that work better for all—parents with strollers, teenagers on bikes, seniors walking to the store. It's not just about losing a lane, but about gaining a better future for city mobility.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲述了"道路瘦身"这一城市道路重新设计的理念,包括其定义、成功案例、环保效益以及应对公众担忧的建议。

12. What is a road diet?

A. Designing a shared lane for left turns.

B. Reducing car lanes for better uses.

C. Expanding roadways for heavy traffic.

D. Sparing green areas for enjoyment.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Actually, a road diet is a redesign of a roadway that reduces the number of car lanes (车道)."可知,"道路瘦身"是通过减少车道来实现更好的利用。故选B。

13. Why does the author mention Billings and Ocean Park Boulevard in Paragraph 3?

A. To define a concept.

B. To provide historical data.

C. To support his argument.

D. To compare different cities.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"The first road diet in the United States was introduced in 1979 in Billings, Montana. Since then, more cities have all adopted the model. But it's not just a design fashion—road diets are backed by powerful data and safety results. Consider the case of Ocean Park Boulevard in Santa Monica."可知,作者提到比林斯和海洋公园大道是为了支持自己的论点,即"道路瘦身"是有效的。故选C。

14. Which of the following can best describe road diets?

A. Practical and car-centred.

B. Fashionable and space-saving.

C. Successful and eco-friendly.

D. Costly and technology-driven.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"But it's not just a design fashion—road diets are backed by powerful data and safety results."以及第四段中的"There's another bonus: a reduced carbon footprint."可知,"道路瘦身"是成功的且环保的。故选C。

15. What does the author suggest for dealing with the public's concerns about road diets?

A. Punishing drivers for breaking traffic rules.

B. Giving financial support to local businesses.

C. Creating lanes reserved for emergency vehicles.

D. Planning with data and involving the community.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"But if we plan with data and work with the locals, many of these concerns can be solved."可知,作者建议用数据规划并让社区参与进来,以应对公众对"道路瘦身"的担忧。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Whether your friends live a long way away or you're just not able to hang out in person right now, it can be difficult to come up with fun things to do together. Here are some ideas for online fun with friends.

Collaborate (合作) on a project.

16 You might have a good time exercising

your creativity together. Some things you can do as a group include: Brainstorming ideas or writing together in a cloud-based application.

Listen to music.

Music is a great way to bond with friends, whether you all like the same bands or want to share new songs with each other. **17** If you and your friends all have the music listening app, use Group Sessions on your phone's to listen together.

Read together.

Book clubs are classic. You and your friends can pick a new book for everyone, or make recommendations for each other. Whether you read the books on a call together, or on your own time, it'll give you a new piece of literature to discuss together. **18** You may be able to get access to free eBooks through a library's website or app.

Do group workouts.

Even if it's okay to go to the gym, sometimes, the weather or traffic doesn't allow it. **19** You can also try yoga or meditation (冥想) sessions together, too, as a less-intense choice.

Learn or practise skills together.

Building a skill with friends might appeal to you. If one of your friends has a hobby that you'd like to pick up, or vice versa, you can try mentoring each other online. **20**

A. There are also online tours of famous landmarks.
B. The simplest way is to send the songs to each other.
C. Creating something together can be a fun experience.
D. Don't panic if you don't have the money for new books.
E. You can also practise that you're both learning together.
F. The health benefits of working out in the gym are countless.
G. You and your friends can schedule a time to work out together.

答案:16～20 CBDGE

Ⅲ. 完形填空

We had just come back home after a big trip. My 5-year-old boy, Baldwin, couldn't 21 to share our stories with his grandmother. Our final 22 was the Appalachian Trail, one of the longest footpaths in the world. We finished the route without any 23 in 209 days. The 24 was really hard work, but full of fun. The landscape along the way was 25, with green woods and wild animals like kangaroos. My husband and I had little time to 26 our own physical pain from walking so many kilometres, but tried hard to keep our little boy happy and excited. When we were tired, we got to eat Skittles, a colourful sweet treat, to make my son 27. We slept in a tent, 28 at 5:30 in the morning and walking all day. Talking with other hikers along the way prevented 29 and brought extra joy.

My son was even several months 30 than "Buddy Backpacker", a boy who once held the record for the youngest person for the route. We had been hiking 31 my son was two years old. We took every opportunity to go outside and 32 the world. It may seem like an impossible activity for a child. However, it turned out that he was strong enough to 33 it. My son's trip earned 34 from Dale, the oldest person to hike the route. He said, "It's going to change his life forever. Baldwin has gone through some hardships, making him stronger. This challenge contributes to his social and 35 development. He will smile through his life."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者从儿子两岁起就带着他徒步旅行,探索世界,助力孩子成长的故事。

21. A. regret B. wait
C. promise D. decide
B can't wait to do sth. 意为"迫不及待地做某事"。这里指孩子旅行回来很兴奋,特别急切地想要讲给祖母听。故选B。

22. A. agreement B. edge
C. movement D. destination
D 根据上文的"a big trip"可知,他们刚刚旅行回来;下文的Appalachian Trail是一个地名,是旅行所去的地方,即目的地。故选D。

23. A. vehicle B. direction
C. luggage D. supply
A 根据上文的"one of the longest footpaths"可知,他们去的是步行道;下文也多次提到hiking,没有使用车辆等交通工具,完全徒步完成。故选A。

24. A. jogging B. surfing
C. hiking D. hunting
C 根据上文的"one of the longest footpaths"及下文的"our own physical pain from walking so many kilometres"可知,此次旅行是徒步旅行。故选C。

25. A. available B. normal
C. awful D. dramatic

D　下文描述了路途中看到的绿色树林、袋鼠等野生动物，这说明沿途风景引人注目。故选D。

26. A. pay attention to　B. put on
C. add to　D. live up to
A　作者和丈夫徒步很远的路之后，身体疼痛，可是为了让孩子开心，他们没有时间和精力去顾及自己的身体劳累或疼痛，pay attention to符合语境。故选A。

27. A. brave　B. concerned
C. grateful　D. energetic
D　孩子累了，让孩子吃些糖果应该是为了让孩子精力充沛。故选D。

28. A. lying　B. waking
C. talking　D. settling
B　上文提到睡觉，下文的早上五点半是醒来的时间。故选B。

29. A. laziness　B. sadness
C. boredom　D. injury
C　根据下文的“brought extra joy”可知，跟别人聊天是为了避免无聊。故选C。

30. A. shorter　B. younger
C. earlier　D. quicker
B　根据上文的“even”可知，“Buddy Backpacker”曾经是年龄最小的纪录保持者，作者的儿子比纪录保持者甚至更小，younger符合语境。故选B。

31. A. if　B. since
C. until　D. because
B　根据上下文内容可知，儿子现在五岁，儿子两岁时应用一般过去时，主句为完成时。由此可知，儿子两岁至最近五岁期间，作者一直坚持有时间就带孩子进行徒步旅行。两岁是开始的时间，所以since符合语境。故选B。

32. A. change　B. recognise
C. explore　D. photograph
C　带孩子外出徒步旅行，目的是让孩子探索世界、探索未知。故选C。

33. A. make　B. feel
C. know　D. find
A　make it意为“获得成功”。这里指孩子成功地完成了远足。故选A。

34. A. prize　B. lesson
C. praise　D. harvest
C　根据语境可知，作者的儿子赢得了Dale的赞扬，他是这条路线上年纪最大的徒步旅行者。故选C。

35. A. emotional　B. intellectual
C. imaginative　D. magical
A　作者的儿子这么小就完成了如此大的挑战，一方面有助于他社交能力的发展，另一方面他的精神情感方面也应该会受到积极的影响，让他变得更坚强，能更好地体验人生。故选A。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Imagine having everything you need: health-centres, stores, parks—just a few **36.** steps (step) from home. It could make you healthier and build stronger connections between you and your neighbours.

This is the idea behind the 15-minute city. Here, people can get all the services they need within 15 minutes of home, either on foot **37.** or by bike. This model is being developed in cities around the world, from Paris to Portland. Carlos Moreno is a scientific **38.** director (direct) at France's IAE Paris Sorbonne Business School. He is also a key theorist (理论家) behind the 15-minute city plan for Paris. "My idea is to create a livable city **39.** which/that can increase the quality of life," Moreno says.

15 minutes' cities were inspired by the need **40.** to fight (fight) climate change. In a 15-minute city, the focus is on **41.** building (build) more sidewalks and bike lanes. Moreno says walking or biking across the city **42.** is (be) a good way to greatly reduce CO_2 emissions (排放物).

Joe Zehnder, chief planner for the city of Portland, Oregon, is developing "20-minute neighbourhoods". "Having stores close **43.** to home gives people more chances to choose healthy foods," Zehnder says.

As a neighbourhood becomes more convenient, housing costs can increase. This **44.** certainly (certain) leaves a lot of people out. Zehnder says his approach is "to try to create more housing and more types of housing, so that families in **45.** different (difference) economic situations have an opportunity to live there".

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华，本周日下午你市大剧院有川剧变脸演出(Sichuan Opera face-changing performance)，请用英语给你校外籍教师Smith写一封邮件，内容包括：

1. 邀请他观看演出；
2. 演出信息：时间、地点和表演者等；
3. 期待回复。

注意：词数80左右。

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

A light rain was falling as my sister Jill and I ran out of the shop. Across the street from the shop was a gas station where the Greyhound bus stopped, which was closed for New Year, but I saw a family standing outside the locked door, gathering closely together under the narrow overhang in an attempt to keep dry.

Once we got home, there was barely time to enjoy our presents. We had to go off to our grandparents' house for our annual family dinner. As we drove down the highway through town, I noticed that the family was still there, standing outside the closed gas station.

My father was driving very slowly down the highway. The closer we got to the turnoff (岔道) for my grandparents' house, the slower the car went. Suddenly, my father made a U-turn in the middle of the road and said that he couldn't stand it. "What?" asked my mother. "It's those people back there at the station, standing in the rain. They've got children. It's New Year. I can't stand it."

When my father pulled into the service station, I saw that there were five of them: the parents and three children—two girls and a small boy, who were getting wet standing there. My father rolled down his window. "Happy New Year," he said.

"Thanks. You, too," the man replied. He was very tall and had to bend slightly to look into the car.

"Are you waiting for the bus?" my father asked. The man said that they were. Knowing the bus wouldn't come along for several hours, my father invited them to our home to shelter from the rain.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

The man thought about it for a moment, but then refused. _____

_____

_____

When we got out of the car at our house, the three children ran through the front door happily.

_____

_____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Mr Smith,

How's everything going recently? I'm writing to invite you to enjoy a Sichuan Opera face-changing performance this Sunday!

This performance will start at 3 pm and last about 3 hours at the City Theatre. A famous master of Sichuan Opera will perform this unique form of traditional Chinese art for the audience. I know you're interested in Chinese opera so I believe it's a valuable chance for you to enjoy it in person.

I'm looking forward to your early reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

The man thought about it for a moment, but then refused. He said he didn't want to put us to any bother. My father explained that the rain would last long and our house was near the station. After my parents' strong persuasion, he finally agreed and thanked us all the time. They climbed into the car. They had no luggage, only the clothes they were wearing. Once they settled in, my father looked back over his shoulder handing them some tissues to wipe the rainwater from their faces.

When we got out of the car at our house, the three children ran through the front door happily. My mother noticed all their clothes were wet, so she found some of ours for them to change. Jill and I decided to share our New Year presents with the children. One of the girls chose Jill's doll and immediately hugged it to her breast. When the rain stopped, my father drove them to the station. As they drove away, I watched out the window as long as I could, looking back at their happy faces. That was the day when Jill and I learned the joy of making others happy.